



HAL
open science

STochastic OPTimization library in C++

Hugo Gevret, Nicolas Langrené, Jérôme Lelong, Rafael D Lobato, Thomas Ouillon, Xavier Warin, Aditya Maheshwari

► **To cite this version:**

Hugo Gevret, Nicolas Langrené, Jérôme Lelong, Rafael D Lobato, Thomas Ouillon, et al.. STochastic OPTimization library in C++. [Research Report] EDF Lab. 2018. hal-01361291v9

HAL Id: hal-01361291

<https://hal.science/hal-01361291v9>

Submitted on 19 Jun 2020 (v9), last revised 7 Jul 2022 (v11)

HAL is a multi-disciplinary open access archive for the deposit and dissemination of scientific research documents, whether they are published or not. The documents may come from teaching and research institutions in France or abroad, or from public or private research centers.

L'archive ouverte pluridisciplinaire **HAL**, est destinée au dépôt et à la diffusion de documents scientifiques de niveau recherche, publiés ou non, émanant des établissements d'enseignement et de recherche français ou étrangers, des laboratoires publics ou privés.

STochastic OPTimization library in C++

Hugo Gevret ¹ Nicolas Langrené ² Jerome Lelong ³
Rafael D. Lobato ⁴ Thomas Ouillon ⁵ Xavier Warin ⁶
Aditya Maheshwari ⁷

¹EDF R&D, Hugo.Gevret@edf.fr

²data61 CSIRO, locked bag 38004 docklands vic 8012 Australia,
Nicolas.Langrene@data61.csiro.au

³Ensimag, Laboratoire Jean Kuntzmann, 700 avenue Centrale Domaine Universitaire - 38401
St Martin d'Hres

⁴Department of Computer Science, University of Pisa, Italy, Rafael.Lobato@di.unipi.it

⁵EDF R&D, Thomas.Ouillon@edf.fr

⁶EDF R&D & FiME, Laboratoire de Finance des Marchés de l'Energie, ANR PROJECT CAE-
SARS, Xavier.Warin@edf.fr

⁷University of California, Santa Barbara, USA, aditya_maheshwari@umail.ucsb.edu

Contents

I	Introduction	6
1	General context	7
2	General mathematical setting	10
II	Useful tools for stochastic control	13
3	The grids and their interpolators	14
3.1	Linear grids	18
3.1.1	Definition and C++ API	18
3.1.2	The python API	20
3.2	Legendre grids	21
3.2.1	Approximation of a function in 1 dimension	22
3.2.2	Extension in dimension d	25
3.2.3	Troncature	26
3.2.4	The C++ API	27
3.2.5	The python API	29
3.3	Sparse grids	30
3.3.1	The sparse linear grid method	30
3.4	High order sparse grid methods	34
3.5	Anisotropy	36
3.6	Adaptation	37
3.7	C++ API	38
3.8	Python API	43
4	Introducing regression resolution	46
4.1	C++ global API	47
4.2	Adapted local polynomial basis with same probability	52
4.2.1	Description of the method	52
4.2.2	C++ API	53
4.2.3	Python API	56
4.3	Adapted local basis by K-Means clustering methods	56
4.3.1	C++ API	58
4.3.2	Python api	59
4.4	Local polynomial basis with meshes of same size	59

4.4.1	C++ API	59
4.4.2	An example in the linear case	60
4.4.3	Python API	61
4.5	Sparse grid regressor	61
4.5.1	C++ API	61
4.5.2	Python API	62
4.6	Global polynomial basis	62
4.6.1	Description of the method	62
4.6.2	C++ API	63
4.6.3	Python API	64
4.7	Kernel regression with Epanechnikov kernel	64
4.7.1	The univariate case	65
4.7.2	The multivariate case	66
4.7.3	C++ API	71
4.7.4	Python API	71
4.8	Kernel regression with Laplacian kernels	72
4.8.1	Reducing the problem to empirical CDF calculations	72
4.8.2	Effective ECDF calculations	73
4.8.3	Divide and conquere approach	76
4.8.4	C++ API for fast summation method	76
4.8.5	Python API for fast summation method	77
4.8.6	C++ API for exact divid and conquer method	77
4.8.7	Python API for exact divid and conquer method	78
5	Calculating conditional expectation by trees	79
5.0.1	C++ API	80
6	Continuation values objects and similar ones	82
6.1	Continuation values objects with regression methods	82
6.1.1	Continuation values object	82
6.1.2	The GridAndRegressedValue object	86
6.1.3	The continuation cut object	87
6.2	Continuation objects and associated with trees	91
6.2.1	Continuation object	91
6.2.2	GridTreeValues	93
6.2.3	Continuation Cut with trees	93
III Solving optimization problems with dynamic programming methods		96
7	Creating simulators	97
7.1	Simulators for regression methods	97
7.2	Simulators for trees	99

8	Using conditional expectation to solve simple problems	103
8.1	American option by regression	103
8.1.1	The American option valuing by Longstaff–Schwartz	103
8.2	American options by tree	105
8.2.1	The American option by tree	105
8.2.2	Python API	105
9	Using the general framework to manage stock problems	107
9.1	General requirement about business object	108
9.2	Solving the problem using conditional expectation calculated by regressions .	110
9.2.1	Requirement to use the framework	110
9.2.2	Classical regression	111
9.2.3	Regressions and cuts for linear continuous transition problems with some concavity, convexity features	123
9.3	Solving the problem for $X_2^{x,t}$ stochastic	130
9.3.1	Requirement to use the framework	130
9.3.2	The framework in optimization	132
9.3.3	The framework in simulation	135
9.4	Solving stock problems with trees	135
9.4.1	Solving dynamic programming problems with control discretization .	135
9.4.2	Solving Dynamic Programming by solving LP problems	141
10	The Python API	148
10.1	Mapping to the framework	148
10.2	Special python binding	153
10.2.1	A first binding to use the framework	153
10.2.2	Binding to store/read a regressor and some two dimensional array . .	156
11	Using the C++ framework to solve some hedging problem	158
11.1	The problem	158
11.2	Theoretical algorithm	159
11.3	Practical algorithm based on Algorithm 10	162
IV	Semi-Lagrangian methods	165
12	Theoretical background	167
12.1	Notation and regularity results	167
12.2	Time discretization for HJB equation	168
12.3	Space interpolation	168
13	C++ API	170
13.1	PDE resolution	176
13.2	Simulation framework	178

V	An example with both dynamic programming with regression and PDE	184
13.3	The dynamic programming with regression approach	186
13.4	The PDE approach	189
VI	Stochastic Dual Dynamic Programming	192
14	SDDP algorithm	193
14.1	Some general points about SDDP	193
14.2	A method, different algorithms	195
14.2.1	The basic case	195
14.2.2	Dependence of the random quantities	197
14.2.3	Non-convexity and conditional cuts	199
14.3	C++ API	205
14.3.1	Inputs	205
14.3.2	Architecture	210
14.3.3	Implement your problem	210
14.3.4	Set of parameters	215
14.3.5	The black box	217
14.3.6	Outputs	217
14.4	Python API (only for regression based methods)	218
VII	Nesting Monte Carlo for general non linear PDEs	223
VIII	Some test cases description	229
15	Some test cases description in C++	230
15.1	American option	230
15.1.1	testAmerican	230
15.1.2	testAmericanConvex	232
15.1.3	testAmericanForSparse	233
15.1.4	testAmericanOptionCorrel	233
15.1.5	testAmericanOptionTree	233
15.2	testSwingOption	234
15.2.1	testSwingOption2D	234
15.2.2	testSwingOption3	235
15.2.3	testSwingOptimSimu / testSwingOptimSimuMpi	235
15.2.4	testSwingOptimSimuWithHedge	235
15.2.5	testSwingOptimSimuND / testSwingOptimSimuNDMpi	235

15.3	Gas Storage	236
15.3.1	testGasStorage / testGasStorageMpi	236
15.3.2	testGasStorageCut / testGasStorageCutMpi	237
15.3.3	testGasStorageTree/testGasStorageTreeMpi	237
15.3.4	testGasStorageTreeCut/testGasStorageTreeCutMpi	237
15.3.5	testGasStorageKernel	238
15.3.6	testGasStorageLaplacianLinearKernel	238
15.3.7	testGasStorageLaplacianConstKernel	238
15.3.8	testGasStorageLaplacianGridKernel	238
15.3.9	testGasStorageVaryingCavity	239
15.3.10	testGasStorageSwitchingCostMpi	239
15.3.11	testGasStorageSDDP	239
15.3.12	testGasStorageSDDPTree	240
15.4	testLake / testLakeMpi	240
15.5	testOptionNIGL2	241
15.6	testDemandSDDP	241
15.7	Reservoir variations with SDDP	241
15.7.1	testReservoirWithInflowsSDDP	241
15.7.2	testStorageWithInflowsSDDP	242
15.7.3	testStorageWithInflowsAndMarketSDDP	243
15.8	Semi-Lagrangian	244
15.8.1	testSemiLagrangCase1/testSemiLagrangCase1	244
15.8.2	testSemiLagrangCase2/testSemiLagrangCase2	244
15.8.3	testSemiLagrangCase2/testSemiLagrangCase2	245
15.9	Non emissive test case	245
15.9.1	testDPNonEmissive	245
15.9.2	testSLNonEmissive	245
15.10	Nesting for Non Linear PDE's	246
15.10.1	Some HJB test	246
15.10.2	Some Toy example: testUD2UTou	246
15.10.3	Some Portfolio optimization	247
16	Some python test cases description	249
16.1	Microgrid Management	249
16.1.1	testMicrogridBangBang	249
16.1.2	testMicrogrid	249
16.2	Dynamic Emulation Algorithm (DEA)	250
16.2.1	testMicrogridDEA	250

Part I

Introduction

Chapter 1

General context

Optimizing while dealing with uncertainties is a shared goal by many sectors in the industry. For example in the banking system:

- Some options such as American options need, in order to be valuated, to find an optimal exercise strategy to maximize the gain on average.
- When dealing with assets management, a fund manager may want to find a strategy to optimize his gains by investing in different assets while trying to satisfy some risk constraints.
- When dealing with credit risk in the case of option selling, some CVA modelization necessitates to solve some high dimensional problem in order to evaluate the option value.

In the energy financial sector, many problems involve stochastic optimization:

- some options, known as swing options, permit the owner to get some energy at some chosen dates with constraints on volumes. The price paid is either deterministic such as in the electricity market or can be an index which is an average of some commodity prices such as in the gas market.
- When some batteries are installed on a network, the battery has to be filled in or discharged optimally in order to avoid the use of some expensive thermal units.
- The optimal management of certain gas storage or certain thermal assets taking into account the prices of raw materials is a goal shared by all asset owners in the sector.
- Even in regulated energy market, when water is used to generate electricity, a common target consists in finding an optimal water management in order to maximize the profit on average.

A goal shared by many industries is the problem of risk management: which financial assets to buy to guarantee a given gain by immunizing a financial portfolio against certain uncertainties.

All these problems and many more require:

- either to resolve certain PDEs when the control must be evaluated continuously,
- or to calculate a certain conditional expectation in the event that control must be taken on certain discrete dates. The problem is then solved by a dynamic programming method.

The STochastic OPTimization library (StOpt)

<https://gitlab.com/stochastic-control/StOpt>

aims to provide tools to solve certain stochastic optimization problems encountered in finance or in industry. This library is a toolbox used to facilitate the work of developers wishing to solve certain stochastic optimization problems by providing a general framework and some objects commonly used in stochastic programming. Many effective methods are implemented and the toolkit must be flexible enough to use the library at different levels being either an expert or only wishing to use the general framework.

The python interface allows you to use the library at a low level. The test cases are either in C++ , or in python or in the both language.

The user is invited to consult the different test cases proposed in order to have global view of the resolution methods. All the test cases are described in the last section of the documentation and deal with problems encountered in the banking system or the energy sector.

- The American options are solved by a part of dynamic programming III in python or C++ using regression (section 4) or using a scenario tree 5.

Regression are achieved:

1. either by local polynomials or with base support of the same size (subsection 4.4) or with an adapted size of the support (subsection 4.2) ,
2. either by global polynomials (section 4.6)
3. either by sparse grid regression (section 4.5) useful in high dimension
4. or by kernel regression (section4.7)

In the test, a trinomial tree is developed as an example and the valorisation of an American option for the Black-Scholes model is given using this tree.

- Gas storage problems are solved
 - either by dynamic programming (part III) in python or C++ using regression (section 4) or tree (section 5) and stock interpolation (chapter 3).

Regression are achieved:

1. either by Local polynomials with an adapted size of the support (subsection 4.2) ,
2. either by global polynomials (section 4.6)
3. or kernel regression (section 4.7)

As before the trinomial tree developed in tests is used in the tree methods.

The interpolation between stock points is either linear or quadratic.

- either by the SDDP method (chapter 14) in C++ using both regression and tree methods.
- The swing options are solved by dynamic programming (part III) in python or C++ using regression with local polynomials with a suitable size of the support (subsection 4.2)
- The optimal management of a lake with stochastic inflows is solved by dynamic programming (part III) in python or C++ using local polynomials with an adapted support size (subsection 4.2)
- The optimal hedging of an option using a average variance criterion of the hedged portfolio is resolved in C++ by dynamic programming (part III) using the methodology in chapter 11.
- A certain management of the reservoirs is solved by the SDDP method (chapter 14) in C++ trying to minimize the cost of the energy supply to satisfy a given demand with the possibility of buying energy at a price that can be stochastic.
- The continuous optimization of a portfolio made up of a few assets following a Heston model is achieved by solving C++ the corresponding PDE with the Monte Carlo nesting method (part VII).
- Some microgrid problems in the energy sector are solved using the python interface by dynamic programming methods (part III) using grids with linear interpolation (subsection 3.1.1) to discretize the energy level in the battery and the different regressors using:
 1. either local polynomials with an suitable support size (subsection 4.2) ,
 2. either global polynomials (section 4.6)
 3. or kernel regression (section 4.7)

Chapter 2

General mathematical setting

In a continuous frame, the controlled state is given by a stochastic differential equation

$$\begin{cases} dX_s^{x,t} &= b_a(t, X_s^{x,t})ds + \sigma_a(s, X_s^{x,t})dW_s \\ X_t^{x,t} &= x \end{cases}$$

where

- W_t is a d three-dimensional Brownian motion on a probability space $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathbb{P})$ endowed with the natural (complete and continuous line) filtration $\mathbb{F} = (\mathcal{F}_t)_{t \leq T}$ generated by W up to a fixed time horizon $T > 0$,
- σ_a is a Lipschitz continuous function of (t, x, a) defined on $[0, T] \times \mathbb{R}^d \times \mathbb{R}^n$ and taking values in the set of d -dimensional square matrices,
- b_a is a Lipschitz continuous function of (t, x, a) defined on $[0, T] \times \mathbb{R}^d \times \mathbb{R}^n$ and taking values in \mathbb{R}^d ,
- a a control adapted to the filtration taking values in \mathbb{R}^n .

Suppose we want to minimize a cost function $J(t, x, a) = \mathbb{E}[\int_t^T f_a(s, X_s^{x,t})e^{\int_t^s c_a(u, X_u^{x,t})du} ds + e^{\int_t^T c_a(u, X_u^{x,t})} g(X_T^{x,t})]$ compared to the a control. It is well known [16] that the optimal value $\hat{J}(t, x) = \inf_a J(T - t, x, a)$ is a viscosity solution of the equation

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial v}{\partial t}(t, x) - \inf_{a \in A} \left(\frac{1}{2} \text{tr}(\sigma_a(t, x)\sigma_a(t, x)^T D^2 v(t, x)) + b_a(t, x) Dv(t, x) \right. \\ \left. + c_a(t, x)v(t, x) + f_a(t, x) \right) = 0 \text{ in } \mathbb{R}^d \\ v(0, x) = g(x) \text{ in } \mathbb{R}^d \end{aligned} \tag{2.1}$$

According to certain classical hypotheses on the coefficients [16], the previous equation known as the Hamilton Jacobi Bellman equation admits a solution of unique viscosity ([25]). Solving the previous equation is quite difficult, especially in dimensions larger than 3 or 4. The library provides tools to solve this equation and simplified versions of it.

- a first method supposes that $X_s^{x,t} = (X_{1,s}^{x,t}, X_{2,s}^{x,t})$ where $X_{1,s}^{x,t}$ is not controlled

$$\begin{cases} dX_{1,s}^{x,t} &= b(t, X_{1,s}^{x,t})ds + \sigma(s, X_{1,s}^{x,t})dW_s \\ X_{1,t}^{x,t} &= x \end{cases} \quad (2.2)$$

and $X_{2,s}^{x,t}$ has no diffusion term

$$\begin{cases} dX_{2,s}^{x,t} &= b_a(t, X_{2,s}^{x,t})ds \\ X_{2,t}^{x,t} &= x \end{cases}$$

In this case, we can use Monte Carlo methods based on regression to solve the problem. The method is based on the principle of dynamic programming and can be used even if the uncontrolled SDE is controlled by a general Levy process. This method can be used even if the controlled state takes only a few discrete values.

A second approach based on dynamic programming uses scenario trees: in this case, the uncertainties evolve on a tree taking only discrete values.

- The second case is a special case of the previous one when the problem to be solved is linear and the controlled state takes values at continuous intervals. The value function must be convex or concave with respect to the controlled variables. This method, the SDDP method, is used when the dimension of the controlled state is large, which prevents the use of the dynamic programming method. As before, the uncertainties can be described either by scenarios or by a scenario tree.

Remark 1 *The use of this method requires other assumptions which will be described in the dedicated chapter.*

- A third method solves the Monte Carlo problem when a process is controlled but by an uncontrolled process. this is generally the optimization of a portfolio:
 - The value of the portfolio is deterministically controlled and discretized on a network,
 - The evolution of the portfolio is driven by an uncontrolled exogenous process: market prices.
- In the fourth method, we will assume that the state takes continuous values, we will solve equation (2.1) using semi-Lagrangian methods discretizing the Brownian motion with two values and using some interpolations on grids.
- Finally, we present a general pure Monte Carlo method based on automatic differentiation and randomization of the time step to solve general non-linear equations and which can be used to solve certain control problems.

In what follows, we assume that a temporal discretization is given for the resolution of the optimization problem. We assume that the step discretization is constant and equal to h such that $t_i = ih$. First, we describe some useful tools developed in the library for stochastic control. Then, we explain how to solve certain optimization problems using these developed tools.

Remark 2 *In the library, we rely a lot on the Eigen library: `ArrayXd` which represents a double vector, `ArrayXXd` for a double matrix and `ArrayXi` for a vector of integer.*

Part II

Useful tools for stochastic control

Chapter 3

The grids and their interpolators

In this chapter we develop the tools used to interpolate a discretized function on a given grid. A grid is a set of point in \mathbb{R}^d defining meshes which can be used to interpolate a function on an open set in \mathbb{R}^d . These tools are used to interpolate a given function, for example at certain stock points, when it comes to storage. These are also useful for semi-Lagrangian methods, which require efficient interpolation methods. In StOpt four types of grids are currently available:

- the first and second are grids used to interpolate a function linearly on a grid;
- the third type of grid, starting from a regular grid, makes it possible to interpolate on a grid at Gauss - Lobatto points on each mesh;
- the last grid allows to interpolate a function in high dimension using the sparse grid-method. The approximation is linear, quadratic, or cubic in each direction.

Each type of grid is associated with iterators. An iterator on a grid makes it possible to iterate on all the points of the grids. All iterators derive from abstract class `GridIterator`

```
1 // Copyright (C) 2016 EDF
2 // All Rights Reserved
3 // This code is published under the GNU Lesser General Public License (GNU LGPL)
4 #ifndef GRIDITERATOR_H
5 #define GRIDITERATOR_H
6 #include <Eigen/Dense>
7
8 /** \file GridIterator.h
9  * \brief Defines an iterator on the points of a grid
10 * \author Xavier Warin
11 */
12 namespace StOpt
13 {
14
15 /// \class GridIterator GridIterator.h
16 /// Iterator on a given grid
17 class GridIterator
18 {
19
20 public :
21
22     /// \brief Constructor
23     GridIterator() {}
24
25     /// \brief Destructor
```



```

26     virtual ~GridIterator() {}
27
28     /// \brief get current coordinates
29     virtual Eigen::ArrayXd getCoordinate() const = 0 ;
30
31     /// \brief Check if the iterator is valid
32     virtual bool isValid(void) const = 0;
33
34     /// \brief iterate on point
35     virtual void next() = 0;
36
37     /// \brief iterate jumping some point
38     /// \param p_incr increment in the jump
39     virtual void nextInc(const int &p_incr) = 0;
40
41     /// \brief get counter : the integer associated the current point
42     virtual int getCount() const = 0;
43
44     /// \brief Permits to jump to a given place given the number of processors (permits to
45     use MPI and openmp)
46     /// \param p_rank processor rank
47     /// \param p_nbProc number of processor
48     /// \param p_jump increment jump for iterator
49     virtual void jumpToAndInc(const int &p_rank, const int &p_nbProc, const int &p_jump) =
50     0;
51
52     /// \brief return relative position
53     virtual int getRelativePosition() const = 0 ;
54
55     /// \brief return number of points treated
56     virtual int getNbPointRelative() const = 0 ;
57
58     /// \brief Reset the interpolator
59     virtual void reset() = 0 ;
60 };
61 #endif /* GRIDITERATOR_H */

```

All iterators share some common characteristics:

- the `getCount` method provides the number associated with the current grid point,
- the `next` method allows you to go to the next point, while the `nextInc` method allows you to go to the point `p_incr`,
- the `isValid` method checks that we are still on a grid point,
- the `getNbPointRelative` allows to get the number of points on which a given iterator can iterate,
- the `getRelativePosition` retrieves the number of points already iterated by the iterator.

In addition, we can go directly to a given point: this functionality is useful for "mpi" when some calculations on the grid are distributed on some processors and threads. This possibility is given by the method `jumpToAndInc`.

Using a grid `regGrid` the following source code makes it possible to iterate over the points of the grids and obtain coordinates. For each coordinate, a function f is used to fill an array of values. As mentioned earlier, each type of grid has its own grid iterator which can be obtained by the `getGridIterator` method.

```

1   ArrayXd data(regGrid.getNbPoints()); // create an array to store the values of the
    function f
2   shared_ptr<GridIterator> iterRegGrid = regGrid.getGridIterator();
3   while (iterRegGrid->isValid())
4   {
5       ArrayXd pointCoord = iterRegGrid->getCoordinate(); // store the coordinates of the
    point
6       data(iterRegGrid->getCount()) = f(pointCoord); // the value is stored in data at
    place iterRegGrid->getCount()
7       iterRegGrid->next(); // go to next point
8   }

```

It is also possible to “skip” certain points and repeat for the ”p” points afterwards. This possibility is useful for multithreaded tasks on points.

For each type of grid, an interpolator is provided to interpolate a given function on a grid. Note that the interpolator is created **for a given point** where we want to interpolate. All interpolators (which are not spectral interpolators) derive from `Interpolator` whose source code is given below.

```

1 // Copyright (C) 2016 EDF
2 // All Rights Reserved
3 // This code is published under the GNU Lesser General Public License (GNU LGPL)
4 #ifndef INTERPOLATOR_H
5 #define INTERPOLATOR_H
6 #include <vector>
7 #include <Eigen/Dense>
8 /** \file Interpolator.h
9  * \brief Defines a interpolator on a full grid
10 * \author Xavier Warin
11 */
12 namespace StOpt
13 {
14
15 /// \class Interpolator Interpolator.h
16 /// Interpolation base class
17 class Interpolator
18 {
19 public :
20
21     /// \brief Default constructor
22     Interpolator() {}
23
24     /// \brief Default Destructor
25     virtual ~Interpolator() {}
26
27     /** \brief interpolate
28      * \param p_dataValues Values of the data on the grid
29      * \return interpolated value
30      */
31     virtual double apply(const Eigen::Ref< const Eigen::ArrayXd > &p_dataValues) const =
        0;
32
33     /** \brief interpolate and use vectorization
34      * \param p_dataValues Values of the data on the grid. Interpolation is achieved for
        all values in the first dimension
35      * \return interpolated value
36      */
37     virtual Eigen::ArrayXd applyVec(const Eigen::ArrayXXd &p_dataValues) const = 0;
38
39     /** \brief Same as above but avoids copy for Numpy eigen mapping due to storage
        conventions
40      * \param p_dataValues Values of the data on the grid. Interpolation is achieved
        for all values in the first dimension
41      * \return interpolated value
42      */

```

```

43     virtual Eigen::ArrayXd applyVecPy(Eigen::Ref< Eigen::ArrayXXd, 0, Eigen::Stride<Eigen
      ::Dynamic, Eigen::Dynamic> > p_dataValues) const = 0;
44
45 };
46 }
47 #endif

```

All interpolators provide a constructor specifying the point where the interpolation is carried out and the two functions `apply` and `applyVec` interpolating either a function (and returning a value) or an array of functions returning an array of interpolated values.

All grid classes derive from an abstract class `SpaceGrid` below allowing to retrieve an iterator associated with the points of the grid (with possible jumps) and to create an interpolator associated with the grid.

```

1 // Copyright (C) 2016 EDF
2 // All Rights Reserved
3 // This code is published under the GNU Lesser General Public License (GNU LGPL)
4 #ifndef SPACEGRID_H
5 #define SPACEGRID_H
6 #include <array>
7 #include <memory>
8 #include <Eigen/Dense>
9 #include "StOpt/core/grids/GridIterator.h"
10 #include "StOpt/core/grids/Interpolator.h"
11 #include "StOpt/core/grids/InterpolatorSpectral.h"
12
13 /** \file SpaceGrid.h
14  * \brief Defines a base class for all the grids
15  * \author Xavier Warin
16  */
17 namespace StOpt
18 {
19
20 /// \class SpaceGrid SpaceGrid.h
21 /// Defines a base class for grids
22 class SpaceGrid
23 {
24 public :
25     /// \brief Default constructor
26     SpaceGrid() {}
27
28     /// \brief Default destructor
29     virtual ~SpaceGrid() {}
30
31     /// \brief Number of points of the grid
32     virtual size_t getNbPoints() const = 0;
33
34     /// \brief get back iterator associated to the grid
35     virtual std::shared_ptr< GridIterator> getGridIterator() const = 0;
36
37     /// \brief get back iterator associated to the grid (multi thread)
38     virtual std::shared_ptr< GridIterator> getGridIteratorInc(const int &p_iThread) const =
39         0;
40
41     /// \brief Get back interpolator at a point Interpolate on the grid
42     /// \param p_coord coordinate of the point for interpolation
43     /// \return interpolator at the point coordinates on the grid
44     virtual std::shared_ptr<Interpolator> createInterpolator(const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_coord)
45         const = 0;
46
47     /// \brief Get back a spectral operator associated to a whole function
48     /// \param p_values Function value at the grids points
49     /// \return the whole interpolated value function
50     virtual std::shared_ptr<InterpolatorSpectral> createInterpolatorSpectral(const Eigen::
51         ArrayXd &p_values) const = 0;

```

```

49
50     /// \brief Dimension of the grid
51     virtual int getDimension() const = 0 ;
52
53     /// \brief get back bounds associated to the grid
54     /// \return in each dimension give the extreme values (min, max) of the domain
55     virtual std::vector <std::array< double, 2> > getExtremeValues() const = 0;
56
57     /// \brief test if the point is strictly inside the domain
58     /// \param p_point point to test
59     /// \return true if the point is strictly inside the open domain
60     virtual bool isStrictlyInside(const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_point) const = 0 ;
61
62     /// \brief test if a point is inside the grid (boundary include)
63     /// \param p_point point to test
64     /// \return true if the point is inside the open domain
65     virtual bool isInside(const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_point) const = 0 ;
66
67     /// \brief truncate a point so that it stays inside the domain
68     /// \param p_point point to truncate
69     virtual void truncatePoint(Eigen::ArrayXd &p_point) const = 0 ;
70
71 };
72 }
73 #endif /* SPACEGRID.H */

```

All the grids objects, interpolators and iterators on grids point are in

StOpt/core/grids

Grid objects are mapped to python, giving the possibility of retrieving the iterators and interpolators associated with a grid. Examples of Python can be found in

test/python/unit/grids

3.1 Linear grids

3.1.1 Definition and C++ API

Two kinds of grids are developed:

- the first one is the `GeneralSpaceGrid` with Constructor

```

1 GeneralSpaceGrid(const std::vector<shared_ptr<Eigen::ArrayXd> > &p_meshPerDimension
)

```

where `std::vector<shared_ptr<Eigen::ArrayXd>>` is a vector of (pointer to) arrays defining the grid points in each dimension. In this case the grid is not regular and the mesh varies in space (see figure 3.1).

- the second one is the `RegularSpaceGrid` with Constructor

```

1 RegularSpaceGrid(const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_lowValues, const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_step,
const Eigen::ArrayXi &p_nbStep)

```

The `p_lowValues` corresponds to the bottom of the grid, `p_step` the size of each mesh, `p_nbStep` the number of steps in each direction (see figure 3.2)

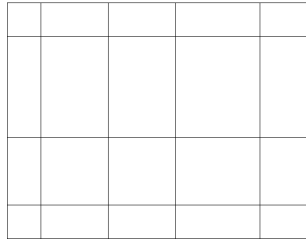


Figure 3.1: 2D general grid

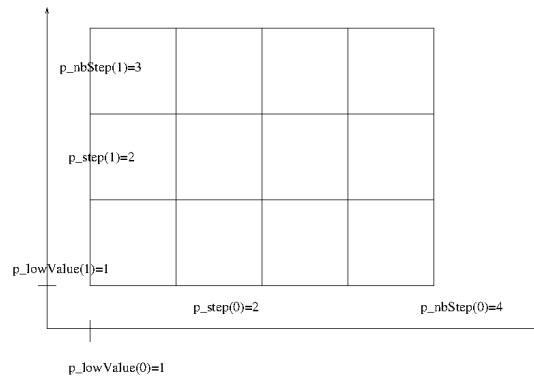


Figure 3.2: 2D regular grid

For each grid, a linear interpolator can be generated by calling the `createInterpolator` method or by directly creating the interpolator:

```

1  /** \brief Constructor
2  * \param p_grid is the grid used to interpolate
3  * \param p_point is the coordinates of the points used for interpolation
4  */
5  LinearInterpolator( const FullGrid * p_grid , const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_point):

```

Its construction from a grid (`regLin`) and from an array data containing the values of the function at the points of the grid is given below (taking an example above for fill in the table `data`)

```

1  ArrayXd data(regGrid.getNbPoints()); // create an array to store the values of the
   function f
2  shared_ptr<GridIterator> iterRegGrid = regGrid.getGridIterator();
3  while (iterRegGrid->isValid())
4  {
5      ArrayXd pointCoord = iterRegGrid->getCoordinate(); // store the coordinate of the
   point
6      data(iterRegGrid->getCount()) = f(pointCoord); // the value is stored in the data
   at location iterRegGrid->getCount()
7      iterRegGrid->next(); // go to next point
8  }
9  // point where to interpolate
10 ArrayXd point = ArrayXd::Constant(nDim, 1. / 3.);
11 // create the interpolator
12 LinearInterpolator regLin(&regGrid, point);
13 // get back the interpolated value
14 double interpReg = regLin.apply(data);

```

Let $I_{1,\Delta x}$ be the linear interpolator where the mesh is $\Delta x = (\Delta x^1, \dots, \Delta x^d)$. We obtain for a function f in $C^{k+1}(\mathbb{R}^d)$ with $k \leq 1$

$$\|f - I_{1,\Delta x}f\|_\infty \leq c \sum_{i=1}^d \Delta x_i^{k+1} \sup_{x \in [-1,1]^d} \left| \frac{\partial^{k+1} f}{\partial x_i^{k+1}} \right| \quad (3.1)$$

In particular if f is only Lipschitz

$$\|f - I_{1,\Delta x}f\|_\infty \leq K \sup_i \Delta x_i.$$

3.1.2 The python API

The python API allows you to use grids with a syntax similar to the C++ API. Here, we give an example with a regular grid

```

1 # Copyright (C) 2016 EDF
2 # All Rights Reserved
3 # This code is published under the GNU Lesser General Public License (GNU LGPL)
4 import numpy as np
5 import unittest
6 import random
7 import math
8 import StOptGrids
9
10 # unit test for regular grids
11 #####
12
13 class testGrids(unittest.TestCase):
14
15     # 3 dimensional test for linear interpolation on regular grids
16     def testRegularGrids(self):
17         # low value for the meshes
18         lowValues = np.array([1.,2.,3.], dtype=np.float)
19         # size of the meshes
20         step = np.array([0.7,2.3,1.9], dtype=np.float)
21         # number of steps
22         nbStep = np.array([4,5,6], dtype=np.int32)
23         # create the regular grid
24         grid = StOptGrids.RegularSpaceGrid(lowValues, step, nbStep)
25         iterGrid = grid.getGridIterator()
26         # array to store
27         data = np.empty(grid.getNbPoints())
28         # iterates on points and store values
29         while( iterGrid.isValid()):
30             #get coordinates of the point
31             pointCoord = iterGrid.getCoordinate()
32             data[iterGrid.getCount()] = math.log(1. + pointCoord.sum())
33             iterGrid.next()
34         # get back an interpolator
35         ptInterp = np.array([2.3,3.2,5.9], dtype=np.float)
36         interpol = grid.createInterpolator(ptInterp)
37         # calculate interpolated value
38         interpValue = interpol.apply(data)
39         print("Interpolated value" , interpValue))
40         # test grids function
41         iDim = grid.getDimension()
42         pt = grid.getExtremeValues()
43
44 if __name__ == '__main__':
45     unittest.main()

```

A similar example can be given for a general grid with linear interpolation

```

1 # Copyright (C) 2017 EDF
2 # All Rights Reserved
3 # This code is published under the GNU Lesser General Public License (GNU LGPL)
4 import numpy as np
5 import unittest
6 import random
7 import math
8 import StOptGrids
9
10 # unit test for general grids
11 #####
12
13 class testGrids(unittest.TestCase):
14
15
16     # test general grids
17     def testGeneralGrids(self):
18         # low value for the mesh
19         lowValues =np.array([1.,2.,3.],dtype=np.float)
20         # size of the mesh
21         step = np.array([0.7,2.3,1.9],dtype=np.float)
22         # number of step
23         nbStep = np.array([4,5,6], dtype=np.int32)
24         # degree of the polynomial in each direction
25         degree = np.array([2,1,3], dtype=np.int32)
26
27         # list of mesh
28         mesh1= np.array([1. + 0.7*i for i in np.arange(5)] ,dtype=np.float)
29         mesh2= np.array([2.+2.3*i for i in np.arange(6)],dtype=np.float)
30         mesh3= np.array([3.+1.9*i for i in np.arange(7)],dtype=np.float)
31
32         # create the general grid
33         grid = StOptGrids.GeneralSpaceGrid([mesh1,mesh2,mesh3] )
34
35         iterGrid = grid.getGridIterator()
36         # array to store
37         data = np.empty(grid.getNbPoints())
38         # iterates on point
39         while( iterGrid.isValid()):
40             #get coordinates of the point
41             pointCoord = iterGrid.getCoordinate()
42             data[iterGrid.getCount()] = math.log(1. + pointCoord.sum())
43             iterGrid.next()
44         # get back an interpolator
45         ptInterp = np.array([2.3,3.2,5.9],dtype=np.float)
46         interpol = grid.createInterpolator(ptInterp)
47         # calculate interpolated value
48         interpValue = interpol.apply(data)
49         # test grids function
50         iDim = grid.getDimension()
51         pt = grid.getExtremeValues()
52
53
54 if __name__ == '__main__':
55     unittest.main()

```

3.2 Legendre grids

With linear interpolation, to obtain a precise solution, it is necessary to refine the mesh so that Δx goes to zero. Another approach consists in trying to fit a polynomial on each mesh using a high degree interpolator.

3.2.1 Approximation of a function in 1 dimension

From now on, by resizing we assume that we want to interpolate a function f on $[-1, 1]$. All the following results can be extended by tensorization in dimension greater than 1. P_N is the set of polynomials of total degree less than or equal to N . The minmax approximation of f of degree N is the polynomial $P_N^*(f)$ such that:

$$\|f - P_N^*(f)\|_\infty = \min_{p \in P_N} \|f - p\|_\infty$$

We call I_N^X interpolator from f on a grid of $N + 1$ points of $[-1, 1]$ $X = (x_0, \dots, x_N)$, the unique polynomial of degree N such that

$$I_N^X(f)(x_i) = f(x_i), 0 \leq i \leq N$$

This polynomial can be expressed in terms of the Lagrange polynomial $l_i^X, 0 \leq i \leq N$ associated with the grid (l_i^X is the unique polynomial of degree N taking a value equal to 1 at the point i and 0 at the other interpolation points).

$$I_N^X(f)(x) = \sum_{i=0}^N f(x_i) l_i^X(x)$$

The interpolation error can be expressed in terms of interpolation points:

$$\|I_N^X(f)(x) - f\|_\infty \leq (1 + \lambda_N(X)) \|f - P_N^*(f)\|_\infty$$

where $\lambda_N(X)$ is the Lebesgue constant associated with the Lagrange quadrature on the grid:

$$\lambda_N(X) = \max_{x \in [-1, 1]} \sum_{i=0}^N |l_i^X(x)|.$$

We have the following bound

$$\|I_N^X(f)(x)\|_\infty \leq \lambda_N(X) \sup_{x_i \in X} |f(x_i)| \leq \lambda_N(X) \|f\|_\infty$$

and the Erdős theorem states that

$$\lambda_N(X) > \frac{2}{\Pi} \log(N + 1) - C$$

It is well-known that the use of a uniform grid X_u is not optimal, because like $N \rightarrow \infty$, the Lebesgue constant satisfies

$$\lambda_N(X_u) \simeq \frac{2^{N+1}}{eN \ln N}$$

and the quadrature error in L_∞ increases a lot with N . Its use brings some oscillations giving the Runge effect. On Figures 3.3a, 3.3b, 3.3c, 3.3d, we trace the function Runge $\frac{1}{1+25x^2}$ against its interpolation with polynomial with equidistant interpolation. We therefore wish to have a quadrature with a "optimal" Lebesgue constant. For example

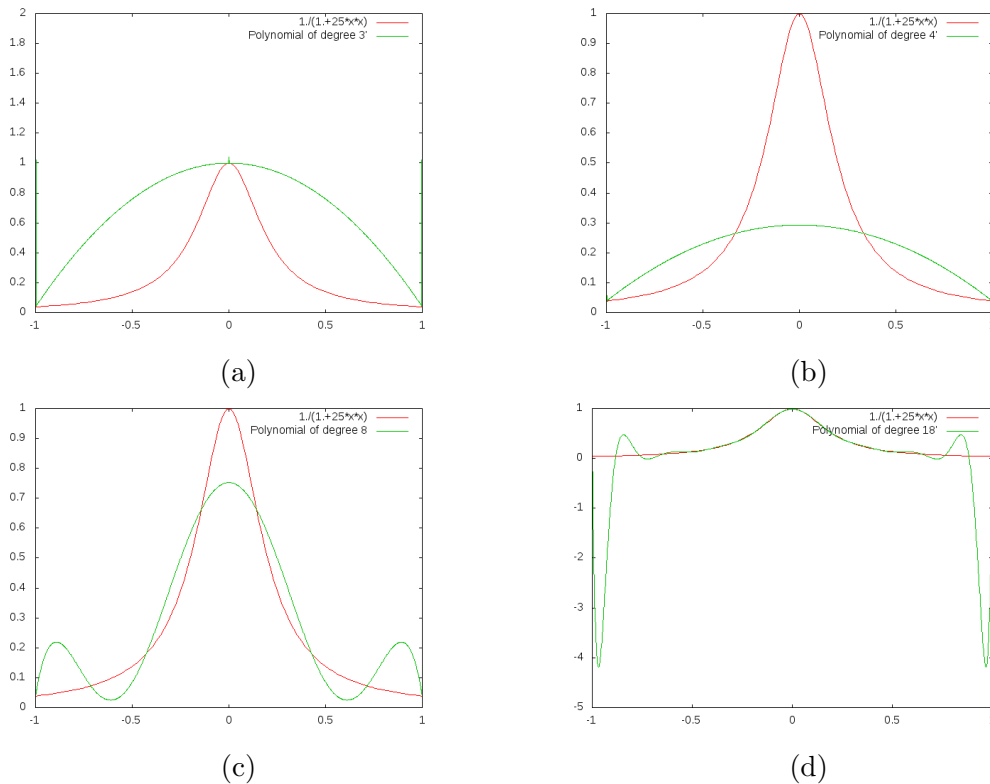


Figure 3.3: Runge function $\frac{1}{1+25x^2}$ and its polynomial interpolations at degrees 3, 4, 8, and 18.

Gauss–Chebyshev interpolation points (corresponding to the 0 of the polynomial $T_{N+1}(x) = \cos((N + 1) \arccos(x))$) give a Lebesgue constant $\lambda_N(X_{GC})$ equal to

$$\lambda_N(X_{GC}) \simeq \frac{2}{\Pi} \ln(N + 1)$$

For our problem, we want to interpolate a function on meshes with great precision on the mesh while respecting the continuity of the function between the meshes. In order to ensure this continuity we want the extreme points of the resized mesh $[-1, -1]$ (therefore $-1, 1$) to be on the interpolation grid. This leads to the Gauss–Lobatto–Chebyshev interpolation grid.

In the library we choose to use the Gauss–Lobatto–Legendre interpolation grids which are as efficient as the Gauss–Lobatto–Chebyshev grids (in term of Lebesgue constant) but less costly in calculation due to the absence of trigonometric function. We recall that the Legendre polynomial satisfies the recurrence

$$(N + 1)L_{N+1}(x) = (2N + 1)xL_N(x) - NL_{N-1}(x)$$

with $L_0 = 1$, $L_1(x) = x$.

These polynomials are orthogonal with the scalar product $(f, g) = \int_{-1}^1 f(x)g(x)dx$. We are interested in the derivatives of these polynomials L'_N which satisfy the recurrence

$$NL'_{N+1}(x) = (2N + 1)xL'_N(x) - (N + 1)L'_{N-1}(x)$$

These polynomials are orthogonal with the scalar product $(f, g) = \int_{-1}^1 f(x)g(x)(1 - x^2)dx$. The Gauss–Lobatto–Legendre grids points for a grid with $N+1$ points are $\eta_1 = -1, \eta_{N+1} = 1$ and the η_i ($i = 2, \dots, N$) zeros of L'_N . The η_i ($i = 2, \dots, N$) are eigenvalues of the matrix P

$$P = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \gamma_1 & \dots & 0 & 0 \\ \gamma_1 & 0 & \dots & 0 & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & \dots & 0 & \gamma_{N-2} \\ 0 & 0 & \dots & \gamma_{N-2} & 0 \end{pmatrix},$$

$$\gamma_n = \frac{1}{2} \sqrt{\frac{n(n+2)}{(n+\frac{1}{2})(n+\frac{3}{2})}}, 1 \leq n \leq N-2,$$

The interpolation $I_N(f)$ is expressed in terms of Legendre polynomials by

$$I_N(f) = \sum_{k=0}^N \tilde{f}_k L_k(x),$$

$$\tilde{f}_k = \frac{1}{\gamma_k} \sum_{i=0}^N \rho_i f(\eta_i) L_k(\eta_i),$$

$$\gamma_k = \sum_{i=0}^N L_k(\eta_i)^2 \rho_i,$$

and the weights satisfy

$$\rho_i = \frac{2}{(M+1)ML_M^2(\eta_i)}, 1 \leq i \leq N+1.$$

More details can be found in [2]. In the figure 3.4, we give the interpolation obtained with the Gauss–Lobatto–Legendre quadrature with two degrees of approximation.

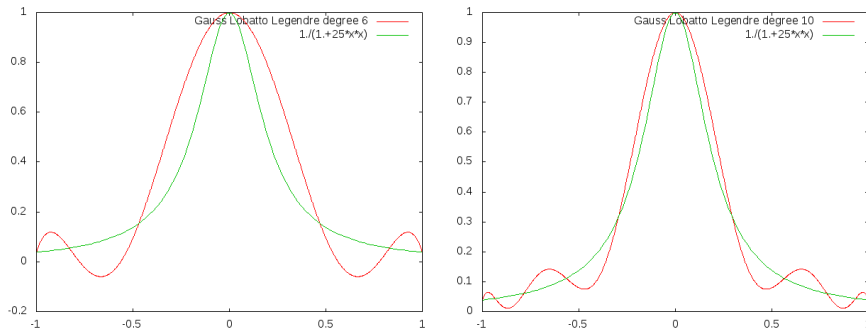


Figure 3.4: Interpolation with Gauss–Legendre–Lobatto grids

- When the function is not regular we introduce a weaker notion than the notion of derivative. We denote $w(f, \delta)$ The modulus of continuity on $[-1, 1]$ of a function f as

$$w(f, \delta) = \sup_{\substack{x_1, x_2 \in [-1, 1] \\ |x_1 - x_2| < \delta}} |f(x_1) - f(x_2)|$$

The modulus of continuity makes it possible to express the best approximation of a function by a polynomial with the Jackson theorem:

Theorem 1 *For a continuous function f on $[-1, 1]$*

$$\|f - P_N^*(f)\|_\infty \leq Kw(f, \frac{1}{N})$$

and we deduce that for an interpolation grid X

$$\begin{aligned} \|I_N^X(f)(x) - f\|_\infty &\leq M(N) \\ M(N) &\simeq Kw(f, \frac{1}{N})\lambda_N(X) \end{aligned}$$

a function is Dini–Lipschitz continues if $w(f, \delta)\log(\delta) \rightarrow 0$ as $\delta \rightarrow 0$. It is clear that the functions of Lipschitz are Dini–Lipschitz continuously because $w(f, \delta)\log(\delta) \leq K\log(\delta)\delta$.

- When the solution is more regular, we can express the interpolation error as a function of its derivatives and we obtain the following Cauchy theorem for an interpolation grid X (see [41])

Theorem 2 *If f is C^{N+1} , and X an interpolation grid with $N + 1$ points, the interpolation error checks*

$$E(x) = f(x) - I_N^X(f)(x) = \frac{f^{N+1}(\eta)}{(N + 1)!} W_{N+1}^X(x) \quad (3.2)$$

where $\eta \in [-1, 1]$ and $W_{N+1}^X(x)$ is the nodal polynomial of degree $N + 1$ (the polynomial with the monomial of the highest degree with coefficient 1 being zero at all points $N + 1$ of X)

If we partition a domain $I = [a, b]$ into a few meshes of size h and we use a Lagrange interpolator for the function $f \in C^{k+1}$, $k \leq N$ we obtain

$$\|f - I_{N,\Delta x}^X f\|_\infty \leq ch^{k+1} \|f^{(k+1)}\|_\infty$$

3.2.2 Extension in dimension d

In the dimension d , we denote P_N^* the best multivariate polynomial approximation of f of total degree less than N on $[-1, 1]^d$. On a d multidimensional grid $X = X_N^d$, we define the multivariate interpolator as the composition of one-dimensional interpolator $I_N^X(f)(x) = I_N^{X_N,1} \times I_N^{X_N,2} \dots \times I_N^{X_N,d}(f)(x)$ where $I_N^{X_N,i}$ represents for the interpolator in dimension i . We get the following interpolation error

$$\|I_N^X(f) - f\|_\infty \leq (1 + \lambda_N(X_N))^d \|f - P_N^*(f)\|_\infty,$$

The error associated with the min max approximation is given by Feinerman and Newman [15], Soardi [44]

$$\|f - P_N^*(f)\|_\infty \leq \left(1 + \frac{\pi^2}{4}\sqrt{d}\right)w(f, \frac{1}{N+2})$$

We deduce that if f is only Lipschitz

$$\|I_N^X(f)(x) - f\|_\infty \leq C\sqrt{d}\frac{(1 + \lambda_N(X))^d}{N+2}$$

If the function is regular (in $C^{k+1}([-1, 1]^d)$, $k < N$) we get

$$\|f - P_N^*(f)\|_\infty \leq \frac{C_k}{N^k} \sum_{i=1}^d \sup_{x \in [-1, 1]^d} \left| \frac{\partial^{k+1} f}{\partial x_i^{k+1}} \right|$$

If we partition the domain $I = [a_1, b_1] \times \dots \times [a_d, b_d]$ in meshes of size $\Delta x = (\Delta x_1, \Delta x_2, \dots, \Delta x_d)$ and use a Lagrange interpolation on each mesh we obtain

$$\|f - I_{N, \Delta x}^X f\|_\infty \leq c \frac{(1 + \lambda_N(X))^d}{N^k} \sum_{i=1}^d \Delta x_i^{k+1} \sup_{x \in [-1, 1]^d} \left| \frac{\partial^{k+1} f}{\partial x_i^{k+1}} \right|$$

On figure 3.5 we give the Gauss–Legendre–Lobatto points in 2D for 2×2 meshes and a polynomial of degree 8 in each direction

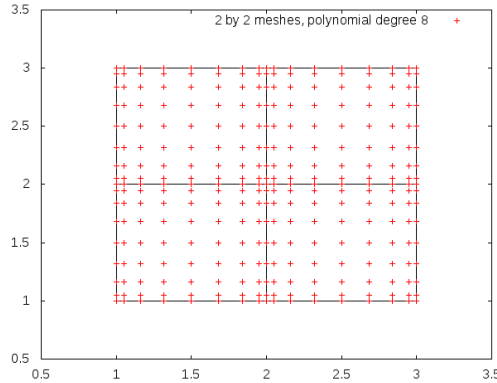


Figure 3.5: Gauss–Legendre–Lobatto points on 2×2 meshes.

3.2.3 Troncature

In order to avoid oscillations during the interpolation, a truncation is used on each mesh so that the modified interpolator $\hat{I}_{N, \Delta x}^X$ checks:

$$\hat{I}_{N, \Delta x}^X f(x) = \min_{x_i \in M} f(x_i) \wedge I_{N, \Delta x}^X f(x) \vee \max_{x_i \in M} f(x_i) \quad (3.3)$$

where the x_i are the interpolation points on the mesh M containing the point x . For all the characteristics of this modified operator, we can see [49].

3.2.4 The C++ API

The grid using Gauss–Legendre–Lobatto points can be created using this constructor:

```
1 RegularLegendreGrid(const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_lowValues, const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_step,
2                   const Eigen::ArrayXi &p_nbStep, const Eigen::ArrayXi &p_poly);
```

The `p_lowValues` corresponds to the bottom of the grid, `p_step` the size of each mesh, `p_nbStep` the number of steps in each direction (see figure 3.2). On each mesh the polynomial approximation in each dimension is specified by the table `p_poly`.

Remark 3 *If we take a polynomial of degree 1 in each direction this interpolator is equivalent to the linear interpolator. Its sort of less efficient than the linear interpolator on a Regular grid described in the section above.*

We illustrate the use of the grid, its iterator and its interpolator used to draw the figures 3.4.

```
1
2 ArrayXd lowValues = ArrayXd::Constant(1,-1.); // corner point
3 ArrayXd step= ArrayXd::Constant(1,2.); // mesh size
4 ArrayXi nbStep = ArrayXi::Constant(1,1); // number of meshes in each direction
5 ArrayXi nPol = ArrayXi::Constant(1,p_nPol); // polynomial approximation
6 // regular Legendre
7 RegularLegendreGrid regGrid(lowValues, step, nbStep, nPol);
8
9 // Data table to store values on the grid points
10 ArrayXd data(regGrid.getNbPoints());
11 shared_ptr<GridIterator> iterRegGrid = regGrid.getGridIterator();
12 while (iterRegGrid->isValid())
13 {
14     ArrayXd pointCoord = iterRegGrid->getCoordinate();
15     data(iterRegGrid->getCount()) = 1./(1.+25*pointCoord(0)*pointCoord(0)); // runge
16     // storage function
17     iterRegGrid->next();
18 }
19 // point
20 ArrayXd point(1);
21 int nbp = 1000;
22 double dx = 2./nbp;
23 for (int ip =0; ip<= nbp; ++ip)
24 {
25     point(0)= -1+ ip* dx;
26 // create interpolator
27     shared_ptr<Interpolator> interp = regGrid.createInterpolator( point);
28     double interpReg = interp->apply(data); // interpolated value
29 }
```

The operator defined above is more efficient when we interpolate several functions at the same point. Its is the case for example for the valuation of a storage with regression where one wishes to interpolate all the simulations at the same level of stock.

In some cases it is more practical to build an interpolator acting on a global function. This is the case when you have only one function and you want to interpolate at several points for this function. In this specific case an interpolator deriving from the class `InterpolatorSpectral` can be constructed:

```
1 // Copyright (C) 2016 EDF
2 // All Rights Reserved
3 // This code is published under the GNU Lesser General Public License (GNU LGPL)
4 #ifndef INTERPOLATORSPECTRAL_H
```

```

5 #define INTERPOLATORSPECTRAL_H
6 #include <Eigen/Dense>
7 // #include "StOpt/core/grids/SpaceGrid.h"
8
9 /** \file InterpolatorSpectral.h
10 * \brief Defines an interpolator for a grid : here is a global interpolator, storing the
11 * representation of the function
12 * to interpolate : this interpolation is effective when interpolating the same
13 * function many times at different points
14 * Here it is an abstract class
15 * \author Xavier Warin
16 */
17 namespace StOpt
18 {
19 /// forward declaration
20 class SpaceGrid ;
21
22 /// \class InterpolatorSpectral InterpolatorSpectral.h
23 /// Abstract class for spectral operator
24 class InterpolatorSpectral
25 {
26 public :
27     virtual ~InterpolatorSpectral() {}
28
29     /** \brief interpolate
30     * \param p_point coordinates of the point for interpolation
31     * \return interpolated value
32     */
33     virtual double apply(const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_point) const = 0;
34
35     /** \brief Affect the grid
36     * \param p_grid the grid to affect
37     */
38     virtual void setGrid(const StOpt::SpaceGrid *p_grid) = 0 ;
39
40     /** \brief Get back grid associated to operator
41     */
42     virtual const StOpt::SpaceGrid *getGrid() = 0;
43 };
44 }
45 #endif

```

Its constructor is given by:

```

1 /** \brief Constructor taking values on the grid
2 * \param p_grid is the grid used to interpolate
3 * \param p_values Value of the function at the points of the grid.
4 */
5 LegendreInterpolatorSpectral(const shared_ptr< RegularLegendreGrid> &p_grid , const
    Eigen::ArrayXd &p_values) ;

```

This class has a member allowing to interpolate at a given point:

```

1 /** \brief interpolate
2 * \param p_point coordinates of the point for interpolation
3 * \return interpolated value
4 */
5 inline double apply(const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_point) const

```

We give an example of using this class, by interpolating a function f function in dimension 2.

```

1 ArrayXd lowValues = ArrayXd::Constant(2,1.); // bottom of the domain
2 ArrayXd step = ArrayXd::Constant(2,1.); // mesh size
3 ArrayXi nbStep = ArrayXi::Constant(2,5); // number of meshes in each direction

```

```

4  ArrayXi nPol = ArrayXi::Constant(2,2) ; // polynomial of degree 2 in each direction
5  // regular
6  shared_ptr<RegularLegendreGrid> regGrid(new RegularLegendreGrid(lowValues, step, nbStep
7  , nPol));
8  ArrayXd data(regGrid->getNbPoints()); // Data table
9  shared_ptr<GridIterator> iterRegGrid = regGrid->getGridIterator(); // iterator on the
10 grid points
11 while (iterRegGrid->isValid())
12 {
13     ArrayXd pointCoord = iterRegGrid->getCoordinate();
14     data(iterRegGrid->getCount()) = f(pointCoord);
15     iterRegGrid->next();
16 }
17 // spectral interpolator
18 LegendreInterpolatorSpectral interpolator(regGrid,data);
19 // interpolation point
20 ArrayXd pointCoord(2, 5.2);
21 // interpolated value
22 double vInterp = interpolator.apply(pointCoord);

```

3.2.5 The python API

Here is an example using Legendre grids:

```

1  # Copyright (C) 2016 EDF
2  # All Rights Reserved
3  # This code is published under the GNU Lesser General Public License (GNU LGPL)
4  import numpy as np
5  import unittest
6  import random
7  import math
8  import StOptGrids
9
10 # unit test for Legendre grids
11 #####
12
13 class testGrids(unittest.TestCase):
14
15
16     # test Legendre grids
17     def testLegendreGrids(self):
18         # low value for the mesh
19         lowValues = np.array([1.,2.,3.], dtype=np.float)
20         # size of the mesh
21         step = np.array([0.7,2.3,1.9], dtype=np.float)
22         # number of step
23         nbStep = np.array([4,5,6], dtype=np.int32)
24         # degree of the polynomial in each direction
25         degree = np.array([2,1,3], dtype=np.int32)
26         # create the Legendre grid
27         grid = StOptGrids.RegularLegendreGrid(lowValues, step, nbStep, degree )
28         iterGrid = grid.getGridIterator()
29         # array to store
30         data = np.empty(grid.getNbPoints())
31         # iterates on point
32         while( iterGrid.isValid()):
33             #get coordinates of the point
34             pointCoord = iterGrid.getCoordinate()
35             data[iterGrid.getCount()] = math.log(1. + pointCoord.sum())
36             iterGrid.next()
37         # get back an interpolator
38         ptInterp = np.array([2.3,3.2,5.9], dtype=np.float)
39         interpol = grid.createInterpolator(ptInterp)
40         # calculate interpolated value
41         interpValue = interpol.apply(data)

```

```

42     print(("Interpolated value Legendre" , interpValue))
43     # test grids function
44     iDim = grid.getDimension()
45     pt = grid.getExtremeValues()
46
47
48 if __name__ == '__main__':
49     unittest.main()

```

3.3 Sparse grids

A representation of a function of dimension d for d small (less than 4) is obtained by tensorization in the preceding methods of interpolation. When the function is smooth and its cross derivatives are bounded, the function can be represented using the sparse grid methods. This method makes it possible to represent the function with much less points than the traditional one without losing too much by interpolating. The sparse grid method was used for the first time by assuming that the function f to be represented is zero at the boundary Γ of the domain. This assumption is important because it makes it possible to limit the explosion of the number of points to the dimension of the problem. In many application this assumption is not realistic or it is impossible to work on $f - f|_{\Gamma}$. In this library we will assume that the function is not zero at the border and provide grid object, iterators and interpolators to interpolate certain functions depicted on the sparse grid. However, for the sake of clarity of presentation, we will start with the case of a function disappearing on the border.

3.3.1 The sparse linear grid method

We recall some classic results on sparse grids which can be found in [40]. We first assume that the function we are interpolating is zero at the border. By a change of coordinates a hyper-cube domain can be changed to a domain $\omega = [0, 1]^d$. By introducing the hat function $\phi^{(L)}(x) = \max(1 - |x|, 0)$ (where (L) means linear), we obtain the following 1D local hat function by translation and dilation

$$\phi_{l,i}^{(L)}(x) = \phi^{(L)}(2^l x - i)$$

according to the level l and the index i , $0 < i < 2^l$. The grid points used for the interpolation are noted $x_{l,i} = 2^{-l}i$. In the dimension d , we introduce the basic functions

$$\phi_{\underline{l},\underline{i}}^{(L)}(x) = \prod_{j=1}^d \phi_{l_j,i_j}^{(L)}(x_j)$$

via a tensorial approach for a point $\underline{x} = (x_1, \dots, x_d)$, a multi-level $\underline{l} := (l_1, \dots, l_d)$ and a multi-index $\underline{i} := (i_1, \dots, i_d)$. The grid points used for interpolation are noted $x_{\underline{l},\underline{i}} := (x_{l_1,i_1}, \dots, x_{l_d,i_d})$.

We then present the index set

$$B_{\underline{l}} := \{\underline{i} : 1 \leq i_j \leq 2^{l_j} - 1, i_j \text{ odd}, 1 \leq j \leq d\}$$

and the hierarchical base space.

$$W_{\underline{l}}^{(L)} := \text{span} \left\{ \phi_{\underline{l}, \underline{i}}^{(L)}(\underline{x}) : \underline{i} \in B_{\underline{l}} \right\}$$

A representation of the space $W_{\underline{l}}^{(L)}$ is given in dimension 1 on the figure 3.6. The sparse

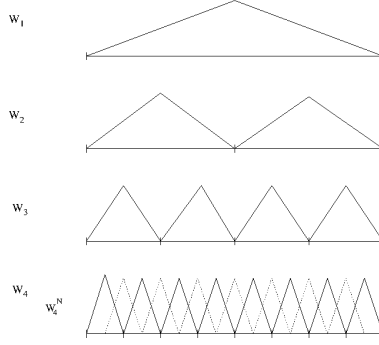


Figure 3.6: One dimensional $W_{\underline{l}}^{(L)}$ spaces: $W_1^{(L)}$, $W_2^{(L)}$, $W_3^{(L)}$, $W_4^{(L)}$ and the nodal representation $W_4^{(L,N)}$

mesh space is defined as follows:

$$V_n = \bigoplus_{|\underline{l}|_1 \leq n+d-1} W_{\underline{l}}^{(L)} \quad (3.4)$$

Remark 4 The conventional full grid space is defined as $V_n^F = \bigoplus_{|\underline{l}|_{\infty} \leq n} W_{\underline{l}}^{(L)}$.

At hierarchical increment space $W_{\underline{l}}^{(L)}$ corresponds to a nodal function space $W_{\underline{l}}^{(L,N)}$ such that

$$W_{\underline{l}}^{(L,N)} := \text{span} \left\{ \phi_{\underline{l}, \underline{i}}^{(L)}(\underline{x}) : \underline{i} \in B_{\underline{l}}^N \right\}$$

with

$$B_{\underline{l}}^N := \left\{ \underline{i} : 1 \leq i_j \leq 2^{l_j} - 1, 1 \leq j \leq d \right\}.$$

In the figure 3.6 the one-dimensional nodal base $W_4^{(L,N)}$ is generated by $W_4^{(L)}$ and the dotted base function. The space V_n can be represented as the space spanned by the $W_{\underline{l}}^{(L,N)}$ such that $|\underline{l}|_1 = n + d - 1$:

$$V_n = \text{span} \left\{ \phi_{\underline{l}, \underline{i}}^{(L)}(\underline{x}) : \underline{i} \in B_{\underline{l}}^N, |\underline{l}|_1 = n + d - 1 \right\} \quad (3.5)$$

A function f is interpolated on the hierarchical basis like

$$I^{(L)}(f) = \sum_{|\underline{l}|_1 \leq n+d-1, \underline{i} \in B_{\underline{l}}} \alpha_{\underline{l}, \underline{i}}^{(L)} \phi_{\underline{l}, \underline{i}}^{(L)}$$

where $\alpha_{\underline{l}, \underline{i}}^{(L)}$ are called the surplus (we give on the figure 3.7 a representation of these coefficients). These surpluses associated with a function f are calculated in the one-dimensional

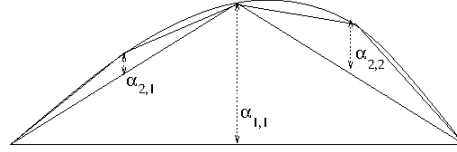


Figure 3.7: Example of hierarchical coefficients

case for a node $m = x_{l,i}$ as the difference of the value of the function at the node and the linear representation of the calculated function with neighboring nodes. For example in figure 3.8, the hierarchical value is given by the relation:

$$\alpha^{(L)}(m) := \alpha_{l,i}^{(L)} = f(m) - 0.5(f(e(m)) + f(w(m)))$$

where $e(m)$ is the east neighbor of m and $w(m)$ the west one. The procedure is generalized in dimension d by successive hierarchy in all directions. On figure 3.9, we give a representation

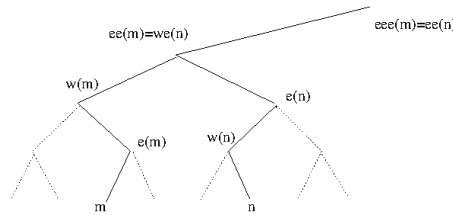


Figure 3.8: Node involved in the linear, quadratic and cubic representation of a function at the node m and n

of the subspace W for $l \leq 3$ in dimension 2.

In order to deal with functions non-zero at the boundary, two more basis are added to the

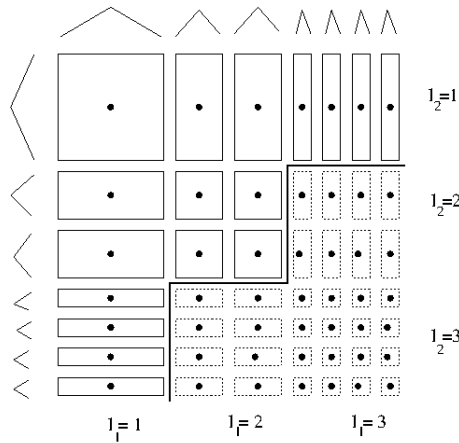


Figure 3.9: The two-dimensional subspace $W_l^{(L)}$ up to $l = 3$ in each dimension. Additional hierarchical functions corresponding to an approximation on the complete grid are indicated by dotted lines.

first level as shown on figure 3.10. This approach leads to many more points than the one

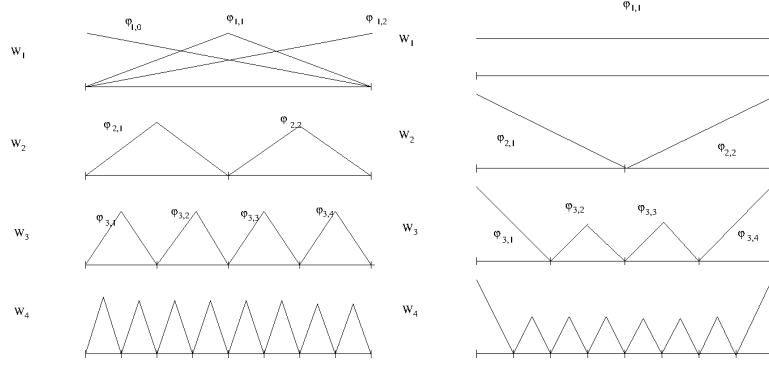


Figure 3.10: One dimensional $W^{(L)}$ spaces with linear functions with “exact” boundary (left) and “modified” boundary (right): $W_1^{(L)}$, $W_2^{(L)}$, $W_3^{(L)}$, $W_4^{(L)}$

without the border. As indicated in [40] for $n = 5$, in dimension 8 have almost 2.8 million points in this approximation but only 6401 inside the domain. On the figure 3.11 we give the points of the grids including boundary points in dimension 2 and 3 for a level 5 of the sparse grid.

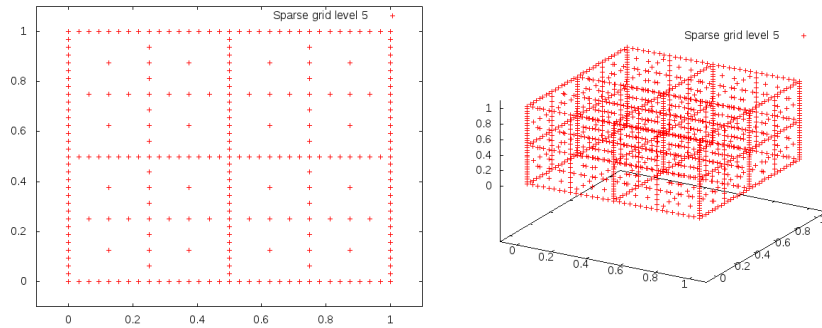


Figure 3.11: Sparse grid in dimension 2 and 3 with boundary points

If the boundary conditions are not important (infinite truncated domain in finance for example) the hat functions near the borders are modified by extrapolation (see figure 3.10) as explained in [40]. At level 1, we have only one degree of freedom assuming that the function is constant on the domain. At all the other levels, we extrapolate linearly towards the boundary the basic functions left and right, the other functions remaining unchanged. So the new function base in 1D $\tilde{\phi}$ becomes

$$\tilde{\phi}_{l,i}^{(L)}(x) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } l = 1 \text{ and } i = 1 \\ \left\{ \begin{array}{l} 2 - 2^l x & \text{if } x \in [0, 2^{-l+1}] \\ 0 & \text{else} \end{array} \right\} & \text{if } l > 1 \text{ and } i = 1 \\ \left\{ \begin{array}{l} 2^l(x - 1) + 2 & \text{if } x \in [1 - 2^{-l+1}, 1] \\ 0 & \text{else} \end{array} \right\} & \text{if } l > 1 \text{ and } i = 2^l - 1 \\ \phi_{l,i}^{(L)}(x) & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

On the figure 3.12 we give the grid points by eliminating the boundary points in dimension 2 and 3 for a level 5 of the sparse grid.

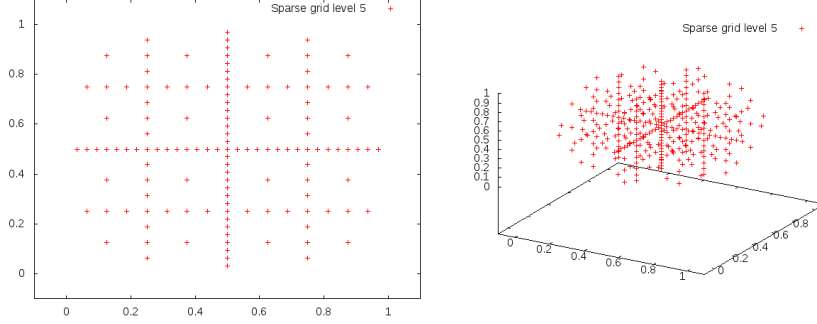


Figure 3.12: Sparse grid in dimensions 2 and 3 without boundary points

The interpolation error associated with the linear operator $I^1 := I^{(L)}$ is related to the regularity of the crossed derivatives of the function [10, 11, 12]. If f is zero at the boundary and admits derivatives such as $\|\frac{\partial^{2d}u}{\partial x_1^2 \dots \partial x_d^2}\|_\infty < \infty$ then

$$\|f - I^1(f)\|_\infty = O(N^{-2} \log(N)^{d-1}), \quad (3.6)$$

with N the number of points per dimension.

3.4 High order sparse grid methods

Changing the interpolator allows us to obtain a higher convergence rate mainly in the region where the solution is smooth. By following [11] and [12], it is possible to obtain higher order interpolators. Using a quadratic interpolator, the reconstruction on the nodal base gives a quadratic function on the support of the hat function previously defined and a continuous function of the whole domain. The polynomial quadratic base is defined on $[2^{-l}(i-1), 2^{-l}(i+1)]$ by

$$\phi_{i,i}^{(Q)}(x) = \phi^{(Q)}(2^l x - i)$$

with $\phi^{(Q)}(x) = 1 - x^2$.

The hierarchical surplus (coefficient on the basis) in a dimension is the difference between the value function at the node and the quadratic representation of the function using nodes available at the previous level. With the notation of figure 3.8

$$\begin{aligned} \alpha(m)^{(Q)} &= f(m) - \left(\frac{3}{8}f(w(m)) + \frac{3}{4}f(e(m)) - \frac{1}{8}f(ee(m))\right) \\ &= \alpha(m)^{(L)}(m) - \frac{1}{4}\alpha(m)^{(L)}(e(m)) \\ &= \alpha(m)^{(L)}(m) - \frac{1}{4}\alpha(m)^{(L)}(df(m)) \end{aligned}$$

where $df(m)$ is the direct father of the node m in the tree structure.

Once again, the quadratic surplus of dimension d is obtained by successive hierarchization in the different dimensions.

In order to take into account the boundary conditions, two linear functions $1 - x$ and x are

added at the first level (see figure 3.13).

A version with modified boundary conditions can be derived for example by using linear interpolation at the boundary so that

$$\tilde{\phi}_{l,i}^{(Q)}(x) = \begin{cases} \tilde{\phi}_{l,i}^{(L)} & \text{if } i = 1 \text{ or } i = 2^l - 1, \\ \phi_{l,i}^{(Q)}(x) & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

In the case of the cubic representation, on figure 3.8 we need 4 points to define a function

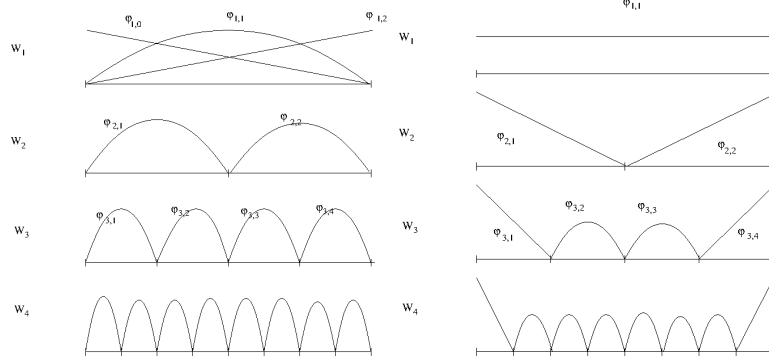


Figure 3.13: One dimensional $W^{(Q)}$ spaces with quadratic with “exact” boundary (left) and “modified” boundary (right): $W_1^{(Q)}$, $W_2^{(Q)}$, $W_3^{(Q)}$, $W_4^{(Q)}$

basis. In order to keep the same data structure, we use a cubic function base at node m with value 1 at this node and 0 at the node $e(m)$, $w(m)$ and $ee(m)$ and we keep only the basic function between $w(m)$ and $e(m)$ [11].

Note that there are two basic types of function depending on the position in the tree. The basic functions are given on $[2^{-l+1}i, 2^{-l+1}(i+1)]$ by

$$\begin{aligned} \phi_{l,2i+1}^{(C)}(x) &= \phi^{(C),1}(2^l x - (2i+1)), \text{ if } i \text{ even} \\ &= \phi^{(C),2}(2^l x - (2i+1)), \text{ if } i \text{ odd} \end{aligned}$$

with $\phi^{(C),1}(x) = \frac{(x^2-1)(x-3)}{3}$, $\phi^{(C),2}(x) = \frac{(1-x^2)(x+3)}{3}$.

The surplus coefficient can be defined as above as the difference between the value function at the node and the cubic representation of the function at the parent node. Due to the two basic functions involved there are two types of cubic coefficient.

- For a node $m = x_{l,8i+1}$ or $m = x_{l,8i+7}$, $\alpha^{(C)}(m) = \alpha^{(C,1)}(m)$, with

$$\alpha^{(C,1)}(m) = \alpha^{(Q)}(m) - \frac{1}{8}\alpha^{(Q)}(df(m))$$

- For a node $m = x_{l,8i+3}$ or $m = x_{l,8i+5}$, $\alpha^{(C)}(m) = \alpha^{(C,2)}(m)$, with

$$\alpha^{(C,2)}(m) = \alpha^{(Q)}(m) + \frac{1}{8}\alpha^{(Q)}(df(m))$$

Note that a cubic representation is not available for $l = 1$ so a quadratic approximation is used. As before, the boundary conditions are treated by adding two linear basis functions at the first level and a modified version is available. We choose the following basic functions as defined in figure 3.14:

$$\tilde{\phi}_{l,i}^{(C)}(x) = \begin{cases} \tilde{\phi}_{l,i}^{(Q)} & \text{if } i \in \{1, 3, 2^l - 3, 2^l - 1\}, \\ \phi_{l,i}^{(C)}(x) & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

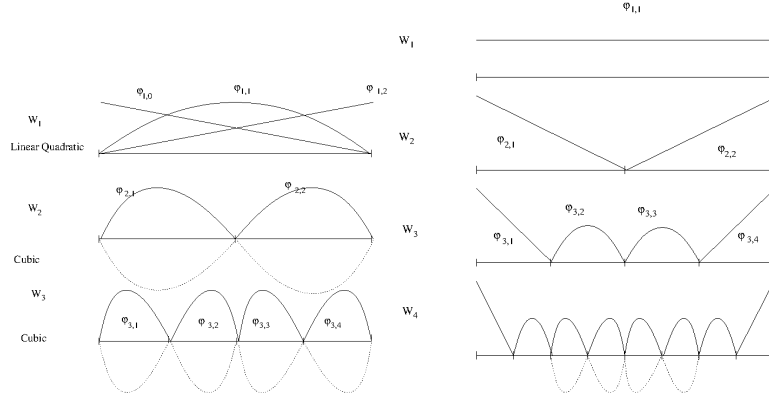


Figure 3.14: One dimensional $W^{(C)}$ spaces with cubic and “exact” boundary (left) and “modified” boundary (right): $W_1^{(C)}$, $W_2^{(C)}$, $W_3^{(C)}$, $W_4^{(C)}$

According to [10, 11, 12], if the function f is zero at the boundary and admits derivatives such as $\sup_{\alpha_i \in \{2, \dots, p+1\}} \left\{ \left\| \frac{\partial^{\alpha_1 + \dots + \alpha_d} u}{\partial x_1^{\alpha_1} \dots \partial x_d^{\alpha_d}} \right\|_{\infty} \right\} < \infty$ then the interpolation error can be generalized for $I^2 := I^{(Q)}$, $I^3 := I^{(C)}$ by:

$$\|f - I^p(f)\|_{\infty} = O(N^{-(p+1)} \log(N)^{d-1}), \quad p = 2, 3$$

with N the number of points per dimension.

3.5 Anisotropy

In many situations, there is no point in refining as much in each direction. For example, when we process multidimensional storage, we expect the mesh to be the same order in each direction. When the different storages have very different sizes, we want to further refine the storage with the largest capacity. In order to treat this anisotropy, an extension of the sparse grids can be obtained by defining the weight w in each direction. The definition 3.4 is replaced by:

$$V_n = \bigoplus_{\sum_{i=1}^d l_i w(i) \leq n+d-1} W_l^{(L)} \tag{3.7}$$

3.6 Adaptation

When the solution is not smooth, typically Lipschitz, there is no hope of obtaining convergence results for the classical rare grids (see above the interpolation error linked to crossed derivatives of the function). The classic sparse grids must therefore be adapted so that the solution is refined near the singularities. In all adaptation methods, the hierarchical surplus $\alpha_{l,i}$ is used to obtain an estimate of the local error. These coefficients give an estimate of the regularity of the value of the function at the discrete points by representing the second derivative of the discrete mixture of the function. There are mainly two types of adaptation used:

- the first performs a local adaptation and only adds points locally [13, 20, 21, 32],
- the second performs the adaptation at the level of the hierarchical space $W_{\underline{l}}$ (anisotropic sparse grid). This approach detects the important dimensions that need to be refined and refines all the points of that dimension [17]. This refinement is also achieved in areas where the solution can be smooth. A more local version has been developed in [27].

In the current version of the library, only the dimension adaptation is available. Details of the algorithm can be linked in [17]. After a first initialization with a first initialization with a space

$$V_n = \bigoplus_{\sum_{i=1}^d l_i \leq n+d-1} W_{\underline{l}}^{(L)} \quad (3.8)$$

An active level set \mathcal{A} is created grouping all the levels \underline{l} so that $\sum_{i=1}^d l_i = n + d - 1$. All the other levels are grouped into a set \mathcal{O} . At each level \underline{l} in \mathcal{A} an error is estimated $e_{\underline{l}}$ and with any local error $e_{\underline{l}}$ a global error E is calculated. Then the refinement algorithm 1 is used by noting \mathbf{e}_k the canonical basis in the dimension k . Sometimes, using sparse grids during time

Algorithm 1 Dimension refinement for a given tolerance η

```

1: while  $E > \eta$  do
2:   select  $\underline{l}$  with the highest local error  $e_{\underline{l}}$ 
3:    $\mathcal{A} = \mathcal{A} \setminus \{\underline{l}\}$ 
4:    $\mathcal{O} = \mathcal{O} \cup \{\underline{l}\}$ 
5:   for  $k = 1$  to  $d$  do
6:      $\underline{m} = \underline{l} + \mathbf{e}_k$ 
7:     if  $\underline{m} - \mathbf{e}_q \in \mathcal{O}$  for  $q \in [1, d]$  then
8:        $\mathcal{A} = \mathcal{A} \cup \{\underline{m}\}$ 
9:       Hierarchize all points belonging to  $\underline{m}$ 
10:      calculate  $e_{\underline{m}}$ 
11:      update  $E$ 
12:     end if
13:   end for
14: end while

```

iterations, it can be interesting to enlarge the meshes. A similar algorithm 2 can be used to eliminate the levels with a very small local error.

Algorithm 2 Dimension coarsening for a given tolerance η

\mathcal{B} all elements of \mathcal{A} with a local error below η
while \mathcal{B} non nonempty **do**
 select $\underline{l} \in \mathcal{B}$ with the lowest local error $e_{\underline{l}}$
 for $k = 1$ to d **do**
 $\underline{m} = \underline{l} - \mathbf{e}_k$
 if $m_k > 0$ **then**
 if $\underline{m} + \mathbf{e}_q \in \mathcal{B}$ for $q \in [1, d]$ **then**
 $\mathcal{A} = \mathcal{A} \setminus \{\underline{m} + \mathbf{e}_q, q \in [1, d]\}$
 $\mathcal{B} = \mathcal{B} \setminus \{\underline{m} + \mathbf{e}_q, q \in [1, d]\}$
 $\mathcal{A} = \mathcal{A} \cup \{\underline{m}\}$
 Add \underline{m} to \mathcal{B} if local error below η
 $\mathcal{O} = \mathcal{O} \setminus \{\underline{m}\}$
 Break
 end if
 end if
 end for
 if $\underline{l} \in \mathcal{B}$ **then**
 $\mathcal{B} = \mathcal{B} \setminus \{\underline{l}\}$
 end if
end while

3.7 C++ API

The construction of the sparse grid, including the boundary points is carried out by the following constructor

```
1 SparseSpaceGridBound(const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_lowValues, const Eigen::ArrayXd &
  p_sizeDomain, const int &p_levelMax, const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_weight,
2 const size_t &p_degree)
```

with

- `p_lowValues` corresponds to the bottom of the grid,
- `p_sizeDomain` corresponds to the size of the resolution domain in each dimension,
- `p_levelMax` is the level of the sparse grids, the n in the equation 3.7,
- `p_weight` the weight of anisotropic sparse grids, the equation w 3.7,
- `p_degree` is equal to 1 (linear interpolator), or 2 (quadratic interpolator) or 3 (for cubic interpolator),

With the same notations the construction eliminating boundary points is carried out by the following constructor

```
1 SparseSpaceGridNoBound(const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_lowValues, const Eigen::ArrayXd &
  p_sizeDomain, const int &p_levelMax, const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_weight,
2 const size_t &p_degree)
```


The data structure of type `SparseSet` to store the sparse grid is defined by a map with keys an array A storing a multiple level and values a map with keys an array B storing the multi index associated with a point (A,B) and values the number of points (A,B):

```
1  #define SparseSet std::map< Eigen::Array<char,Eigen::Dynamic,1 > , std::map< Eigen
   ::Array<unsigned int,Eigen::Dynamic,1> , size_t, OrderTinyVector< unsigned int > > ,
   OrderTinyVector< char > >
```

It is sometimes convenient to retrieve this data structure from the `SparseGrid` object: this is done by the following method:

```
1  std::shared_ptr<SparseSet> getDataSet() const ;
```

The two preceding classes have two specific member functions for hierarchizing (see the section above) the known value function at the points of the grid for the entire grid.

- the first work on a single function:

```
1  /// \brief Hierarchize a function defined on the grid
2  /// \param p_toHierarchize function to hierarchize
3  void toHierarchize( Eigen::ArrayXd & p_toHierarchize );
```

- the second work on a matrix, allowing to hierarchize several functions in a single call (each row corresponds to a function representation)

```
1
2  /// \brief Hierarchize a set of functions defined on the grid
3  /// \param p_toHierarchize function to hierarchize
4  void toHierarchizeVec( Eigen::ArrayXXd & p_toHierarchize )
```

The two classes have two specific member functions to hierarchize point by point a value function at given points in the sparse grid:

- the first work on a single function:

```
1  /// \brief Hierarchize certain points defined on sparse grids
2  /// Hierarchization is carried out point by point
3  /// \param p_nodalValues function to hierarchize
4  /// \param p_sparsePoints vector of sparse points to hierarchize (all
5  points must belong to the structure of the dataset)
6  /// \param p_hierarchized array of all hierarchical values (it is updated)
virtual void toHierarchizePByP(const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_nodalValues, const std::
vector<SparsePoint> &p_sparsePoints, Eigen::ArrayXd &p_hierarchized) const
```

- the second work on a matrix, allowing to hierarchize several functions in a single call (each row corresponds to a function representation)

```
1  /// \brief Hierarchize certain points defined on the sparse grids for a set of
   functions
2  /// The hierarchy is carried out point by point
3  /// \param p_nodalValues functions to hierarchize (the row corresponds to
   the function number)
4  /// \param p_sparsePoints vector of sparse points to hierarchize (all
   points must belong to the structure of the dataset)
5  /// \param p_hierarchized array of all hierarchized values (it is updated)
6  virtual void toHierarchizePByPVec(const Eigen::ArrayXXd &p_nodalValues, const std
   ::vector<SparsePoint> &p_sparsePoints, Eigen::ArrayXXd &p_hierarchized) const
```

The `SparsePoint` object is only a "typedef":

```

1 #define SparsePoint std::pair< Eigen::Array<char, Eigen::Dynamic, 1> , Eigen::Array<
  unsigned int, Eigen::Dynamic, 1> >

```

where the first array allows to store the multi-level associated with the point and the second the associated multi-index .

It is finally possible to hierarchize all the points associated with a multi level. As before, two methods are available:

- a first makes it possible to hierarchize all the points associated with a given level. The hierarchical values are updated with these new values.

```

1     /// \brief Hierarchize all points defined at a given level of the sparse grids
2     ///     Hierarchization is carried out point by point
3     /// \param p_nodalValues      function to hierarchize
4     /// \param p_iterLevel        iterator on the level of the point to
  hierarchize
5     /// \param p_hierarchized     array of all hierarchized values (it is updated)
6     virtual void toHierarchizePByPLevel(const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_nodalValues, const
  SparseSet::const_iterator &p_iterLevel, Eigen::ArrayXd &p_hierarchized) const

```

- the second permits to hierarchize different functions together

```

1     /// \brief Hierarchize all points defined on a given level of the sparse grids for
  a set of functions
2     ///     Hierarchization is performed point by point
3     /// \param p_nodalValues      function to hierarchize (the row corresponds to
  the function number)
4     /// \param p_iterLevel        iterator on the level of the point to hierarchize
5     /// \param p_hierarchized     array of all hierarchized values (it is updated)
6     virtual void toHierarchizePByPLevelVec(const Eigen::ArrayXXd &p_nodalValues, const
  SparseSet::const_iterator &p_iterLevel, Eigen::ArrayXXd &p_hierarchized)
  const

```

In the following example, sparse grids with boundary points is constructed. The values of a function f at each coordinates are stored in an array `valuesFunction`, storing the functions 2 to be interpolated. The 2 global functions are hierarchized (see the section above) in the array `hierarValues`, and then the interpolation can be performed using these hierarchized values.

```

1     ArrayXd lowValues = ArrayXd::Zero(5); // bottom of the grid
2     ArrayXd sizeDomain = ArrayXd::Constant(5,1.); // size of the grid
3     ArrayXd weight = ArrayXd::Constant(5,1.); // weights
4     int degree =1 ; // linear interpolator
5     bool bPrepInterp = true; // precalculate neighbors of nodes
6     level = 4 ; // level of the sparse grid
7
8     // sparse grid generation
9     SparseSpaceGridBound sparseGrid(lowValues, sizeDomain, level, weight, degree,
  bPrepInterp);
10
11    // grid iterators
12    shared_ptr<GridIterator > iterGrid = sparseGrid.getGridIterator();
13    ArrayXXd valuesFunction(1,sparseGrid.getNbPoints());
14    while (iterGrid->isValid())
15    {
16        ArrayXd pointCoord = iterGrid->getCoordinate();
17        valuesFunction(0,iterGrid->getCount()) = f(pointCoord) ;
18        valuesFunction(1,iterGrid->getCount()) = f(pointCoord)+1 ;
19        iterGrid->next();
20    }
21

```

```

22 // Hierarchize
23 ArrayXXd hieraValues = valuesFunction;
24 sparseGrid.toHierarchizeVec(hieraValues);
25
26 // interpolate
27 ArrayXd pointCoord = ArrayXd::Constant(5,0.66);
28 shared_ptr<Interpolator > interpolator = sparseGrid.createInterpolator(pointCoord);
29 ArrayXd interVal = interpolator->applyVec(hieraValues);

```

Remark 5 *The Point-by-point hierarchization on the global grid could have been calculated as below*

```

1  std::vector<SparsePoint> sparsePoints(sparseGrid.getNbPoints());
2  std::shared_ptr<SparseSet> dataSet = sparseGrid.getDataSet();
3  // iterate on points
4  for (typename SparseSet::const_iterator iterLevel = dataSet->begin(); iterLevel !=
5     dataSet->end(); ++iterLevel)
6     for (typename SparseLevel::const_iterator iterPosition = iterLevel->second.begin();
7        iterPosition != iterLevel->second.end(); ++iterPosition)
8     {
9         sparsePoints[iterPosition->second] = make_pair(iterLevel->first, iterPosition->
10            first);
11    }
12    ArrayXXd hieraValues = sparseGrid.toHierarchizePByPVec(valuesFunction, sparsePoints)
13    ;

```

In some cases, it is more convenient to build an interpolator acting on a global function. This is the case when you have only one function and you want to interpolate at several points for this function. In this specific case an interpolator deriving from the class `InterpolatorSpectral` (similarly to Legendre grid interpolators) can be constructed:

```

1  /** \brief Constructor taking in values on the grid
2   * \param p_grid is the sparse grid used to interpolate
3   * \param p_values Function values on the sparse grid
4   */
5  SparseInterpolatorSpectral(const shared_ptr< SparseSpaceGrid> &p_grid , const Eigen::
6     ArrayXd &p_values)

```

This class has a member to interpolate at a given point:

```

1  /** \brief interpolate
2   * \param p_point coordinates of the point for interpolation
3   * \return interpolated value
4   */
5  inline double apply(const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_point) const

```

See the 3.2 section for an example (similar but with Legendre grids) to use this object. Sometimes, we want to iterate on points on a given level. In the example below , for each level an iterator over all points belonging to a given level is retrieved and the values of a function f at each point are calculated and stored.

```

1  // sparse grid generation
2  SparseSpaceGridNoBound sparseGrid(lowValues, sizeDomain, p_level, p_weight, p_degree,
3     bPrepInterp);
4
5  // test iterator on each level
6  ArrayXd valuesFunctionTest(sparseGrid.getNbPoints());
7  std::shared_ptr<SparseSet> dataSet = sparseGrid.getDataSet();
8  for (SparseSet::const_iterator iterLevel = dataSet->begin(); iterLevel != dataSet->end
9     (); ++iterLevel)
10     {
11         // get back iterator on this level

```

```

10 shared_ptr<SparseGridIterator> iterGridLevel = sparseGrid.getLevelGridIterator(iterLevel
    );
11 while(iterGridLevel->isValid())
12     {
13         Eigen::ArrayXd pointCoord = iterGridLevel->getCoordinate();
14         valuesFunctionTest(iterGridLevel->getCount()) = f(pointCoord);
15         iterGridLevel->next();
16     }
17 }

```

Finally, adaptation can be realized with two member functions:

- A first one permits to refine adding points where the error is important. Note that a function is provided to calculate from hierarchical values the error at each level of the sparse grid and that a second one is provided to get a global error from the error calculated at each level. This makes it possible to specialize the refining depending, for example, whether the calculation is achieved for integration or interpolation purpose.

```

1     /// \brief Dimension adaptation nest
2     /// \param p_precision      precision required for adaptation
3     /// \param p_fInterpol     function to interpolate
4     /// \param p_phi           function for the error on a given level in the
5     /// \param p_phiMult       from an error defined at different levels, return a
6     /// \param p_valuesFunction an array storing the nodal values
7     /// \param p_hierarValues  an array storing hierarchized values (updated)
8     void refine(const double &p_precision, const std::function<double(const Eigen::
9         ArrayXd &p_x)> &p_fInterpol,
10                const std::function< double(const SparseSet::const_iterator &, const
11                Eigen::ArrayXd &)> &p_phi,
12                const std::function< double(const std::vector< double> &) > &p_phiMult
13                ,
14                Eigen::ArrayXd &p_valuesFunction,
15                Eigen::ArrayXd &p_hierarValues);

```

with

- `p_precision` the η tolerance in the algorithm,
 - `p_fInterpol` the function permitting to calculate the nodal values,
 - `p_phi` function permitting to calculate e_l the local error for a given l ,
 - `p_phiMult` a function taking as argument all the e_l (local errors) and giving back the global error E ,
 - `p_valuesFunction` an array storing the nodal values (updated during refinement)
 - `p_hierarValues` an array storing the hierarchized values (updated during refinement)
- A second one enlarges the mesh, eliminating the point where the error is too small

```

1     /// \brief Dimension adaptation coarsening: modify the structure of the data by
2     ///     trying to delete al thel levels with local error
3     ///     below a local precision
4     /// \param p_precision      Precision under which coarsening will be realized
5     /// \param p_phi           function for the error on a given level in the
6     /// \param p_valuesFunction an array storing the nodal values (modified on the
7     /// \param p_hierarValues  an array storing hierarchized values (updated)
8     void coarsen(const double &p_precision, const std::function<double(const Eigen::
9         ArrayXd &p_x)> &p_phi,
10                Eigen::ArrayXd &p_valuesFunction,
11                Eigen::ArrayXd &p_hierarValues);

```

```

6     /// \param p_hierarValues Hierarchical values on a data structure (modified on
    the new structure)
7     void coarsen(const double &p_precision, const std::function< double(const
    SparseSet::const_iterator &, const Eigen::ArrayXd &)> &p_phi,
8             Eigen::ArrayXd &p_valuesFunction,
9             Eigen::ArrayXd &p_hierarValues);

```

with arguments similar to the previous function.

3.8 Python API

Here is an example of the python API used for interpolation with Sparse grids with boundary points and without boundary points. Adaptation and coarsening is available with an error calculated for interpolation only.

```

1 # Copyright (C) 2016 EDF
2 # All Rights Reserved
3 # This code is published under the GNU Lesser General Public License (GNU LGPL)
4 import numpy as np
5 import unittest
6 import random
7 import math
8 import StOptGrids
9
10 # function used
11 def funcToInterpolate( x):
12     return math.log(1. + x.sum())
13
14 # unit test for sparse grids
15 #####
16
17 class testGrids(unittest.TestCase):
18
19
20     # test sparse grids with boundaries
21     def testSparseGridsBounds(self):
22         # low values
23         lowValues =np.array([1.,2.,3.])
24         # size of the domain
25         sizeDomValues = np.array([3.,4.,3.])
26         # anisotropic weights
27         weights = np.array([1.,1.,1.])
28         # level of the sparse grid
29         level =3
30         # create the sparse grid with linear interpolator
31         sparseGridLin = StOptGrids.SparseSpaceGridBound(lowValues ,sizeDomValues , level ,
    weights,1)
32         iterGrid = sparseGridLin.getGridIterator()
33         # array to store
34         data = np.empty(sparseGridLin.getNbPoints())
35         # iterates on point
36         while( iterGrid.isValid()):
37             data[iterGrid.getCount()] = funcToInterpolate(iterGrid.getCoordinate())
38             iterGrid.next()
39         # Hierarchize the data
40         hierarData = sparseGridLin.toHierarchize(data)
41         # get back an interpolator
42         ptInterp = np.array([2.3,3.2,5.9], dtype=np.float)
43         interpol = sparseGridLin.createInterpolator(ptInterp)
44         # calculate interpolated value
45         interpValue = interpol.apply(hierarData)
46         print(("Interpolated value sparse linear" , interpValue))
47         # create the sparse grid with quadratic interpolator

```

```

48     sparseGridQuad = StOptGrids.SparseSpaceGridBound(lowValues ,sizeDomValues , level ,
49         weights ,2)
50     # Hierarchize the data
51     hierarData = sparseGridQuad.toHierarchize(data)
52     # get back an interpolator
53     ptInterp = np.array([2.3,3.2,5.9],dtype=np.float)
54     interpol = sparseGridQuad.createInterpolator(ptInterp)
55     # calculate interpolated value
56     interpValue = interpol.apply(hierarData)
57     print(("Interpolated value sparse quadratic " , interpValue))
58     # now refine
59     precision = 1e-6
60     print(("Size of hierarchical array " , len(hierarData)))
61     valueAndHierar = sparseGridQuad.refine(precision,funcToInterpolate ,data,hierarData)
62     print(("Size of hierarchical array after refinement " , len(valueAndHierar[0])))
63     # calculate interpolated value
64     interpol1 = sparseGridQuad.createInterpolator(ptInterp)
65     interpValue = interpol1.apply(valueAndHierar[1])
66     print(("Interpolated value sparse quadratic after refinement " , interpValue))
67     # coarsen the grid
68     precision = 1e-4
69     valueAndHierarCoarsen = sparseGridQuad.coarsen(precision,valueAndHierar[0] ,
70         valueAndHierar[1])
71     print(("Size of hierarchical array after coarsening " , len(valueAndHierarCoarsen
72         [0])))
73     # calculate interpolated value
74     interpol2 = sparseGridQuad.createInterpolator(ptInterp)
75     interpValue = interpol2.apply(valueAndHierarCoarsen[1])
76     print(("Interpolated value sparse quadratic after refinement " , interpValue))
77
78 # test sparse grids eliminating boundaries
79 def testSparseGridsNoBounds(self):
80     # low values
81     lowValues =np.array([1.,2.,3.],dtype=np.float)
82     # size of the domain
83     sizeDomValues = np.array([3.,4.,3.],dtype=np.float)
84     # anisotropic weights
85     weights = np.array([1.,1.,1.])
86     # level of the sparse grid
87     level =3
88     # create the sparse grid with linear interpolator
89     sparseGridLin = StOptGrids.SparseSpaceGridNoBound(lowValues ,sizeDomValues , level ,
90         weights ,1)
91     iterGrid = sparseGridLin.getGridIterator()
92     # array to store
93     data = np.empty(sparseGridLin.getNbPoints())
94     # iterates on point
95     while( iterGrid.isValid()):
96         data[iterGrid.getCount()] = funcToInterpolate(iterGrid.getCoordinate())
97         iterGrid.next()
98     # Hierarchize the data
99     hierarData = sparseGridLin.toHierarchize(data)
100    # get back an interpolator
101    ptInterp = np.array([2.3,3.2,5.9],dtype=np.float)
102    interpol = sparseGridLin.createInterpolator(ptInterp)
103    # calculate interpolated value
104    interpValue = interpol.apply(hierarData)
105    print(("Interpolated value sparse linear" , interpValue))
106    # create the sparse grid with quadratic interpolator
107    sparseGridQuad = StOptGrids.SparseSpaceGridNoBound(lowValues ,sizeDomValues , level ,
108        weights ,2)
109    # Hierarchize the data
110    hierarData = sparseGridQuad.toHierarchize(data)
111    # get back an interpolator
112    ptInterp = np.array([2.3,3.2,5.9],dtype=np.float)
113    interpol = sparseGridQuad.createInterpolator(ptInterp)
114    # calculate interpolated value
115    interpValue = interpol.apply(hierarData)

```

```

112     print(("Interpolated value sparse quadratic " , interpValue))
113     # test grids function
114     iDim = sparseGridQuad.getDimension()
115     pt = sparseGridQuad.getExtremeValues()
116     # now refine
117     precision = 1e-6
118     print(("Size of hierarchical array " , len(hierarData)))
119     valueAndHierar = sparseGridQuad.refine(precision,funcToInterpolate,data,hierarData)
120     print(("Size of hierarchical array after refinement " , len(valueAndHierar[0])))
121     # calculate interpolated value
122     interp01 = sparseGridQuad.createInterpolator(ptInterp)
123     interpValue = interp01.apply(valueAndHierar[1])
124     print(("Interpolated value sparse quadratic after coarsening " , interpValue))
125     # coarsen the grid
126     precision = 1e-4
127     valueAndHierarCoarsen = sparseGridQuad.coarsen(precision,valueAndHierar[0],
128                                                    valueAndHierar[1])
129     print(("Size of hierarchical array after coarsening " , len(valueAndHierarCoarsen
130                                                                    [0])))
131     # calculate interpolated value
132     interp02 = sparseGridQuad.createInterpolator(ptInterp)
133     interpValue = interp02.apply(valueAndHierarCoarsen[1])
134     print(("Interpolated value sparse quadratic after coarsening " , interpValue))
135
136 if __name__ == '__main__':
137     unittest.main()

```

Chapter 4

Introducing regression resolution

Suppose the the stochastic differential equation in the optimization problem is not controlled:

$$dX^{x,t} = b(t, X_s^{x,t})ds + \sigma(s, X_s^{x,t})dW_s$$

This case is for example encountered during the valuation of American options in finance, when an arbitration is carried out between the pay-off and the expected future gain if it is not exercised right now. In order to estimate this conditional expectation (according of Markov state), first suppose that a set of N Monte Carlo Simulation is available at dates t_i for a process $X_t := X_t^{0,x}$ where x is the initial state at date $t = 0$ and that we want to estimate $f(x) := \mathbb{E}[g(t+h, X_{t+h}) | X_t = x]$ for a given x and a given function g . This function f is located in the infinite dimensional space of the functions L_2 . In order to approximate it, we try to find it in a finite dimensional space. By choosing a set of basis functions ψ_k for $k = 1$ to M , the conditional expectation can be approximated by

$$f(x) \simeq \sum_{k=1}^M \alpha_k \psi_k(X_t) \quad (4.1)$$

where $(\hat{\alpha}_k^{t_i, N})_{k \leq M}$ minimizes

$$\sum_{\ell=1}^N \left| g(X_{t+h}^\ell) - \sum_{k=1}^M \alpha_k \psi_k(X_t^\ell) \right|^2 \quad (4.2)$$

over $(\alpha_k)_{k \leq M} \in \mathbb{R}^M$. We have to solve a quadratic optimization problem of the form

$$\min_{\alpha \in \mathbb{R}^M} \|A\alpha - B\|^2 \quad (4.3)$$

Classically the previous equation is reduced to the normal equation

$$A' A \alpha = A' B, \quad (4.4)$$

which is solved by a Cholesky-type approach when the matrix $A'A$ is defined otherwise the solution with the standard L_2 minimum can be calculated using the pseudo-inverse of $A'A$. When the different components of $X^{x,t}$ are strongly correlated it can be convenient to rotate

the dataset on its main components using the PCA method. Rotating the dataset before performing a regression has been recommended in [46] and [43] for example. The right-hand side of Figure 4.1 illustrates the new evaluation grid obtained on the same dataset. We can observe better coverage and fewer empty areas when using local regression that we will detail in this section.

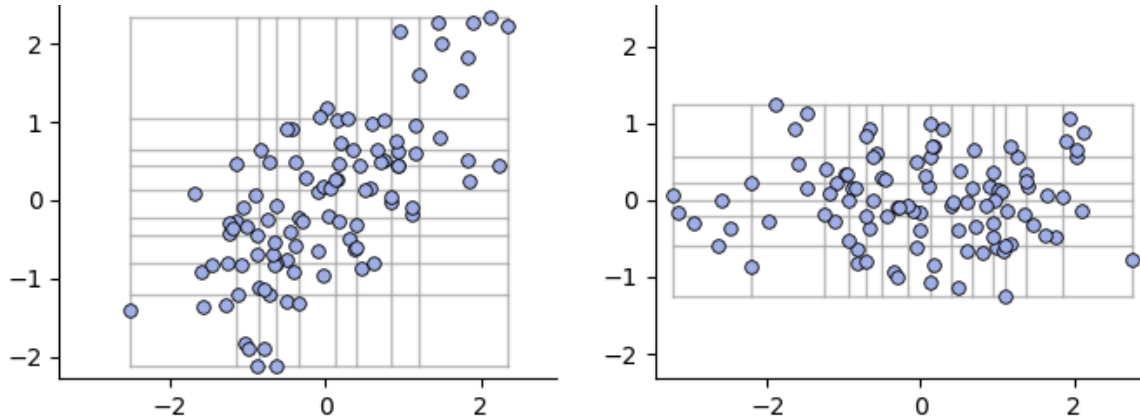


Figure 4.1: Evaluation grid: rotation

4.1 C++ global API

All regression classes are derived from the `BaseRegression` abstract class, which stores a pointer to the “particles” (a matrix storing the simulations of $X^{x,t}$: the first dimension of the matrix corresponds to the dimension of $X^{x,t}$, and the second dimension corresponds to the number of particle), and stores if the current date t is 0 (then the conditional expectation is only an expectation).

```

1 // Copyright (C) 2016, 2017 EDF
2 // All Rights Reserved
3 // This code is published under the GNU Lesser General Public License (GNU LGPL)
4 #ifndef BASEREGRESSION_H
5 #define BASEREGRESSION_H
6 #include <memory>
7 #include <vector>
8 #include <iostream>
9 #include <Eigen/Dense>
10 #include <Eigen/SVD>
11 #include "StOpt/core/grids/InterpolatorSpectral.h"
12
13 /** \file BaseRegression.h
14  * \brief Base class to define regressor for stochastic optimization by Monte Carlo
15  * \author Xavier Warin
16  */
17 namespace StOpt
18 {
19   /// \class BaseRegression BaseRegression.h
20   /// Base class for regression
21   class BaseRegression
22   {
23   protected :
24
25     bool m_bZeroDate ; //< Is the regression date zero ?

```

```

26     bool m_bRotationAndRescale ; ///< do we rescale particles and do a rotation with SVD on
        data
27     Eigen::ArrayXd m_meanX ; ///< store scaled factor in each direction (average of
        particles values in each direction)
28     Eigen::ArrayXd m_etypX ; ///< store scaled factor in each direction (standard
        deviation of particles in each direction)
29     Eigen::MatrixXd m_svdMatrix ; ///< svd matrix transposed used to transform particles
30     Eigen::ArrayXd m_sing ; ///< singular values associated to SVD
31     Eigen::ArrayXXd m_particles ; ///< Particles used to regress: first dimension :
        dimension of the problem , second dimension : the number of particles. These
        particles are rescaled and a rotation with SVD is achieved to avoid degeneracy in
        case of high correlations
32
33     // rotation for data and rescaling
34     void preProcessData();
35
36 public :
37
38     ///< \brief Default constructor
39     BaseRegression();
40
41     ///< \brief Default destructor
42     virtual ~BaseRegression() {}
43
44     ///< \brief Default constructor
45     BaseRegression(const bool &p_bRotationAndRescale);
46
47     ///< \brief Constructor storing the particles
48     ///< \param p_bZeroDate first date is 0?
49     ///< \param p_particles particles used for the meshes.
50     ///< First dimension : dimension of the problem,
51     ///< second dimension : the number of particles
52     ///< \param p_bRotationAndRescale do we rescale particle
53     BaseRegression(const bool &p_bZeroDate, const Eigen::ArrayXXd &p_particles, const bool
        &p_bRotationAndRescale);
54
55     ///< \brief Constructor used in simulation, no rotation
56     ///< \param p_bZeroDate first date is 0?
57     ///< \param p_bRotationAndRescale do we rescale particle
58     BaseRegression(const bool &p_bZeroDate, const bool &p_bRotationAndRescale);
59
60
61     ///< \brief Last constructor used in simulation
62     ///< \param p_bZeroDate first date is 0?
63     ///< \param p_meanX scaled factor in each direction (average of particles
        values in each direction)
64     ///< \param p_etypX scaled factor in each direction (standard deviation of
        particles in each direction)
65     ///< \param p_svdMatrix svd matrix transposed used to transform particles
66     ///< \param p_bRotationAndRescale do we rescale particle
67
68     BaseRegression(const bool &p_bZeroDate, const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_meanX, const Eigen
        ::ArrayXd &p_etypX, const Eigen::MatrixXd &p_svdMatrix, const bool &
        p_bRotationAndRescale);
69
70     ///< \brief Copy constructor
71     ///< \param p_object object to copy
72     BaseRegression(const BaseRegression &p_object);
73
74     ///< \brief update the particles used in regression and construct the matrices
75     ///< \param p_bZeroDate first date is 0?
76     ///< \param p_particles particles used for the meshes.
77     ///< First dimension : dimension of the problem,
78     ///< second dimension : the number of particles
79     void updateSimulationsBase(const bool &p_bZeroDate, const Eigen::ArrayXXd &p_particles)
        ;
80
81     ///< \brief Get some local accessors
82     ///<@{

```

```

83 virtual inline Eigen::ArrayXXd getParticles() const
84 {
85     return m_particles ;
86 }
87
88 /// \brief Get bRotationAndRescale
89 virtual inline bool getBRotationAndRescale() const
90 {
91     return m_bRotationAndRescale ;
92 }
93
94 /// \brief Get average of simulation per dimension
95 virtual inline Eigen::ArrayXd getMeanX() const
96 {
97     return m_meanX;
98 }
99
100 /// \brief get standard deviation per dimension
101 virtual inline Eigen::ArrayXd getEtypX() const
102 {
103     return m_etypX;
104 }
105
106 /// \brief get back the SVD matrix used for rescaling particles
107 virtual inline Eigen::MatrixXd getSvdMatrix() const
108 {
109     return m_svdMatrix;
110 }
111
112 /// \brief get back singular values
113 virtual inline Eigen::ArrayXd getSing() const
114 {
115     return m_sing;
116 }
117
118 /// \brief Get dimension of the problem
119 virtual inline int getDimension() const
120 {
121     return m_particles.rows();
122 }
123
124 /// \brief Get the number of simulations
125 virtual inline int getNbSimul()const
126 {
127     return m_particles.cols() ;
128 }
129
130 /// \brief get back particle by its number
131 /// \param p_iPart particle number
132 /// \return the particle (if no particle, send back an empty array)
133 virtual Eigen::ArrayXd getParticle(const int &p_iPart) const;
134
135 /// \brief get the number of basis functions
136 virtual int getNumberOfFunction() const = 0 ;
137
138 ///@}
139 /// \brief Constructor storing the particles
140 /// \brief update the particles used in regression and construct the matrices
141 /// \param p_bZeroDate first date is 0?
142 /// \param p_particles particles used for the meshes.
143 /// First dimension : dimension of the problem,
144 /// second dimension : the number of particles
145 virtual void updateSimulations(const bool &p_bZeroDate, const Eigen::ArrayXXd &
    p_particles) = 0 ;
146
147 /// \brief conditional expectation basis function coefficient calculation
148 /// \param p_fToRegress function to regress associated to each simulation used in
    optimization
149 /// \return regression coordinates on the basis (size : number of meshes multiplied by

```

```

    the dimension plus one)
150  /// @{
151  virtual Eigen::ArrayXd getCoordBasisFunction(const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_fToRegress) const
    = 0;
152  /// @}
153  /// \brief conditional expectation basis function coefficient calculation for multiple
    functions to regress
154  /// \param p_fToRegress function to regress associated to each simulation used in
    optimization (size : number of functions to regress \times the number of Monte
    Carlo simulations)
155  /// \return regression coordinates on the basis (size : number of function to regress
    \times number of meshes multiplied by the dimension plus one)
156  /// @{
157  virtual Eigen::ArrayXXd getCoordBasisFunctionMultiple(const Eigen::ArrayXXd &
    p_fToRegress) const = 0 ;
158  /// @}
159
160  /// \brief conditional expectation calculation
161  /// \param p_fToRegress simulations to regress used in optimization
162  /// \return regressed value function
163  /// @{
164  virtual Eigen::ArrayXd getAllSimulations(const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_fToRegress) const = 0;
165  virtual Eigen::ArrayXXd getAllSimulationsMultiple(const Eigen::ArrayXXd &p_fToRegress)
    const = 0;
166  /// @}
167
168  /// \brief Use basis functions to reconstruct the solution
169  /// \param p_basisCoefficients basis coefficients
170  /// @{
171  virtual Eigen::ArrayXd reconstruction(const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_basisCoefficients)
    const = 0 ;
172  virtual Eigen::ArrayXXd reconstructionMultiple(const Eigen::ArrayXXd &
    p_basisCoefficients) const = 0;
173  /// @}
174
175  /// \brief use basis function to reconstruct a given simulation
176  /// \param p_isim simulation number
177  /// \param p_basisCoefficients basis coefficients to reconstruct a given conditional
    expectation
178  virtual double reconstructionASim(const int &p_isim, const Eigen::ArrayXd &
    p_basisCoefficients) const = 0 ;
179
180  /// \brief conditional expectation reconstruction
181  /// \param p_coordinates coordinates to interpolate (uncertainty sample)
182  /// \param p_coordBasisFunction regression coordinates on the basis (size: number of
    meshes multiplied by the dimension plus one)
183  /// \return regressed value function reconstructed for each simulation
184  virtual double getValue(const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_coordinates,
    const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_coordBasisFunction) const = 0;
185
186  /// \brief conditional expectation reconstruction for a lot of simulations
187  /// \param p_coordinates coordinates to interpolate (uncertainty sample) size
    uncertainty dimension by number of samples
188  /// \param p_coordBasisFunction regression coordinates on the basis (size: number of
    meshes multiplied by the dimension plus one)
189  /// \return regressed value function reconstructed for each simulation
190  Eigen::ArrayXd getValues(const Eigen::ArrayXXd &p_coordinates,
    const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_coordBasisFunction) const
191  {
192  Eigen::ArrayXd valRet(p_coordinates.cols());
193  for (int is = 0; is < p_coordinates.cols(); ++is)
194  valRet(is) = getValue(p_coordinates.col(is), p_coordBasisFunction);
195  return valRet;
196  }
197
198  /// \brief permits to reconstruct a function with basis functions coefficients values
    given on a grid
199
200  /// \param p_coordinates coordinates (uncertainty sample)
201  /// \param p_ptOfStock grid point

```

```

203  /// \param p_interpFuncBasis    spectral interpolator to interpolate the basis
      functions coefficients used in regression on the grid (given for each basis
      function)
204  virtual double getAValue(const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_coordinates, const Eigen::ArrayXd &
      p_ptOfStock,
205                          const std::vector< std::shared_ptr<InterpolatorSpectral> > &
                          p_interpFuncBasis) const = 0;
206
207  /// \brief is the regression date zero
208  inline bool getBZeroDate() const
209  {
210      return m_bZeroDate;
211  }
212
213  /// \brief Clone the regressor
214  virtual std::shared_ptr<BaseRegression> clone() const = 0 ;
215
216
217 };
218
219 }
220
221 #endif

```

All regression classes share the same constructors:

- a first constructor stores the members of the class and calculates the matrices for the regression: it is used for example to build a regression object at each time step of a resolution method,
- the second constructor is used to prepare data which will be shared by all future regressions. It must be used with the `updateSimulation` method to update the actual matrix construction. In a resolution method with many time steps, the object will be constructed only once and at each time step, the Markov state will be updated by the method `updateSimulation`.

All regression classes share the common methods:

- `updateSimulationBase` (see above),
- `getCoordBasisFunction` takes the values $g(t+h, X_{t+h})$ for all simulations and returns the coefficients α_k of the basic functions,
- `getCoordBasisFunctionMultiple` is used if we want to do the previous calculation on several g functions in a single call. In the matrix given as an argument, the first dimension has a size equal to the number of Monte Carlo simulations, while the second dimension has a size equal to the number of functions to regress. At output, the first dimension has a size equal to the number of functions to regress and the second equal to the number of basic functions.
- `getAllSimulations` takes the values $g(t+h, X_{t+h})$ for all simulations and returns the regressed values for all simulations $f(X_t)$
- `getAllSimulationMultiple` is used if we want to do the previous calculation on several g functions in a single call. In the matrix given as an argument, the first dimension has a size equal to the number of Monte Carlo simulations, while the second

dimension has a size equal to the number of functions to regress. The regressed values are rendered in the same format.

- **reconstruction** takes as input the coefficient α_k of the basic functions and returns all $f(X_t)$ for the stored simulations by applying the equation (4.1).
- **reconstructionMultiple** is used if we want to do the previous calculation on several g functions in a single call. As input the coefficients α_k of the basic functions are given (number of function to regress for the first dimension, number of basic functions for second dimension). Consequently, the $f(X_t)$ for all the simulations and all the functions f are returned (number of Monte Carlo simulations in the first dimension, number of functions to regress in the second dimension).
- **reconstructionASim** takes a number of simulations $isim$ (optimization part) and α_k coefficient of the basic functions as input and returns $f(X_t^{isim})$ by applying the equation (4.1),
- **getValue** takes as its first argument samples of X_t , the basic function α_k and reconstructs the regressed solution of the equation (4.1).
- **getValues** takes as its first argument samples of X_t (dimension of uncertainty by number of samples), the basic function α_k and reconstructs the regressed solution of the equation (4.1) (an array).

4.2 Adapted local polynomial basis with same probability

The description of the method and its properties can be found in [9]. We simply recall the methodology. These adapted local methods can benefit from a rotation in its main axis through the PCA method. Rotation is activated by a flag in the objects builder.

4.2.1 Description of the method

The method essentially consists in applying a non-conforming finite element approach rather than a spectral type method as presented above.

The idea is to use, at each time step t_i , a set of functions $\psi_q, q \in [0, M_M]$ with local hypercube support D_{i_1, i_2, \dots, i_d} where $i_j = 1$ to I_j , $M_M = \prod_{k=1, d} I_k$, and $\{D_{i_1, \dots, i_d}\}_{(i_1, \dots, i_d) \in [1, I_1] \times \dots \times [1, I_d]}$ is a partition of $[\min_{k=1, N} X_{t_i}^{1, (k)}, \max_{k=1, N} X_{t_i}^{1, (k)}] \times \dots \times [\min_{k=1, N} X_{t_i}^{d, (k)}, \max_{k=1, N} X_{t_i}^{d, (k)}]$. On each $D_l, l = (i_1, \dots, i_d)$, depending on the selected method, ψ_l is

- either a constant function, so the global number of degrees of freedom is equal to M_M ,
- or a linear function with $1 + d$ degrees of freedom, so the global number of degrees of freedom is equal to $M_M * (1 + d)$.

This approximation is "non conform" in the sense that we do not ensure the continuity of the approximation. However, it has the advantage of being able to adapt to any function, even discontinuous. In order to avoid oscillations and to allow classical regression by the Cholesky method, the supports are chosen so as to contain roughly the same number of particles.

On the figure 4.2, we have drawn an example of supports in the case of $6 = 4 \times 4$ local base cells, in the dimension 2.

Sometimes we can further leverage knowledge about the value of continuation. In the case

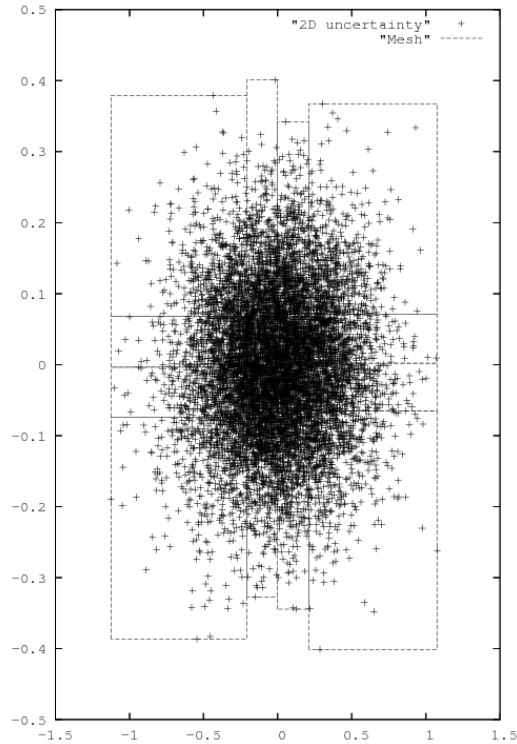


Figure 4.2: Support of 2D function basis

of an American basket option for example, we have a convexity of this continuation value as a function of the underlying price. It is possible to modify the previous algorithm to try to impose that the numerical method repeats this convexity. The algorithm in [33] has been optionally implemented. This algorithm may not converge when used in multi-dimensional but it allows to improve the convexity of the solution by iterating several times.

4.2.2 C++ API

The constant per cell approximation

The constructor of the local constant regression object is obtained by

```
1 LocalConstRegression(const Eigen::ArrayXi &p_nbMesh, bool p_bRotationAndRecalc =
   false);
```

where:

- `p_nbMesh` is an array giving the number of meshes used in each direction ((4,4) for the figure 4.2 for example).
- `p_bRotationAndRecalc` is an optional argument defined as `false` by default which means that no data rotation in its axis of main components is performed. In the case of rotation, the directions are sorted with their decreasing singular values and the number of meshes in `p_nbMesh` is defined for these sorted directions: `p_nbMesh(0)` is associated with first direction with the highest singular value, `p_nbMesh(1)` with the direction associated with the second highest singular value etc.

The second constructor allows to build the regression matrix,

```

1 LocalConstRegression(const bool &p_bZeroDate ,
2     const shared_ptr< ArrayXXd> &p_particles ,
3     const Eigen::ArrayXi &p_nbMesh ,
4     bool p_bRotationAndRecalc = false)

```

where

- `p_bZeroDate` is `true` if the regression date is 0,
- `p_particles` the particles X_t for all simulations (dimension of X_t for first dimension, number of Monte Carlo simulations in second dimension),
- `p_nbMesh` is an array giving the number of meshes used in each direction (4,4) for the figure 4.2,
- `p_bRotationAndRecalc` is an optional argument defined as `false` by default which means that no data rotation in its axis of main components is performed. In the case of rotation, the directions are sorted with their decreasing singular values and the number of meshes in `p_nbMesh` is defined for these sorted directions: `p_nbMesh(0)` is associated with first direction with the highest singular value, `p_nbMesh(1)` with the direction associated with the second highest singular value etc.

Linear approximation per cell

The constructor of the local linear regression object is obtained by

```

1 LocalLinearRegression(const Eigen::ArrayXi &p_nbMesh , bool p_bRotationAndRecalc =
   false);

```

where

- `p_nbMesh` is an array giving the number of meshes used in each direction ((4,4) for the figure 4.2 for example),
- `p_bRotationAndRecalc` is an optional argument defined as `false` by default which means that no data is rotated in its main components axis. In the case of rotation, the directions are sorted with their decreasing singular values and the number of meshes in `p_nbMesh` is defined for these sorted directions: `p_nbMesh(0)` is associated with the first direction with the highest singular value, `p_nbMesh(1)` with the direction associated with the second highest singular value, etc.

The second constructor allows to build the regression matrix,

```

1  LocalLinearRegression(const bool &p_bZeroDate,
2  const shared_ptr< ArrayXXd> &p_particles,
3  const Eigen::ArrayXi &p_nbMesh,
4  bool p_bRotationAndRecale = false)

```

where

- `p_bZeroDate` is true if the regression date is 0,
- `p_particles` the particles X_t for all simulations (dimension of X_t for the first dimension, number of Monte Carlo simulations in the second dimension),
- `p_nbMesh` is an array giving the number of meshes used in each direction (4, 4) for the figure 4.2
- `p_bRotationAndRecale` is an optional argument defined as `false` by default which means that no data is rotated in its main components axis. In the case of rotation, the directions are sorted with their decreasing singular values and the number of meshes in `p_nbMesh` are defined for these sorted directions: `p_nbMesh(0)` is associated with first direction with the highest singular value, `p_nbMesh(1)` with the direction associated to the second highest singular value etc.

This class can benefit from the methodology in [33] implementing a generalization of the member function `getAllSimulations`:

```

1  Eigen::ArrayXd getAllSimulationsConvex(const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_fToRegress, const int &
    p_nbIterMax)

```

where

- `p_fToRegress` is the set of points that we want to regress while preserving the convexity of the regressed function value
- `p_nbIterMax` is the maximum number of iterations of the method.

It returns the regressed values for all the simulations of the uncertainties.

An example in the linear case

Below, we give a small example where `toRegress` corresponds to $g(t + h, X_{t+h})$ for all simulations and `x` store X_t for all simulations.

```

1  // create the mesh for a 2 dim problem, 4 meshes per direction
2  ArrayXi nbMesh = ArrayXi::Constant(2, 4);
3  // t is not zero
4  bool bZeroDate = 0;
5  // constructor, no rotation of the data
6  LocalLinearRegression localRegressor(nbMesh);
7  // update particles values
8  localRegressor.updateSimulations(bZeroDate, x);
9  // regressed values
10 ArrayXd regressedValues = localRegressor.getAllSimulations(toRegress);

```

4.2.3 Python API

Here is a similar example using the second constructor of the linear case

```
1 import StOptReg
2 nbSimul = 5000000;
3 np.random.seed(000)
4 x = np.random.uniform(-.,1.,size=(1,nbSimul));
5 # real function
6 toReal = (2+x[0,:]+(+x[0,:])*(1+x[0,:]))
7 # function to regress
8 toRegress = toReal + 4*np.random.normal(0.,nbSimul)
9 # mesh
10 nbMesh = np.array([6],dtype=np.int32)
11 # Regressor without rotation of data
12 regressor = StOptReg.LocalLinearRegression(False,x,nbMesh)
13 y = regressor.getAllSimulations(toRegress).transpose()[0]
```

Of course the constant per cell case in python is similar. As in C++, the linear case allows us to try to regress while preserving the convexity using the *getAllSimulationsConvex* method.

4.3 Adapted local basis by K-Means clustering methods

This method can be interesting when a small number of particles is available to calculate the regressions and we propose a K-Means clustering method to cluster simulations together. The classical K-Means clustering method is as follows: N points X^k with $k = 1$ to N are given. A partition of the domain $S = (S_m)_{m \leq p}$ with $p \leq N$ domains is obtained by minimizing

$$\arg \min_S \sum_{k=1}^p \sum_{X^j \in S_k} \|X^j - \mu_k\|^2,$$

where μ_k is the barycenter of all points $X^j \in S_k$.

The classic Lloyd algorithm is used to calculate the cluster:

Algorithm 3 Lloyd algorithm

- 1: Choose p points as initialization for μ_k^1 , $k = 1, p$
- 2: **while** Not converged **do**
- 3: affect each particle to its Voronoi cell:

$$S_k^l = \{X^i : \|X^i - \mu_k^l\| \leq \|X^i - \mu_m^l\|, m = 1, p\}$$

- 4: Update

$$\mu_k^{l+1} = \frac{1}{|S_k^l|} \sum_{X^i \in S_k^l} X^i$$

- 5: **end while**
-

This algorithm is effective in 1D by sorting the coordinates of the particles. Its extension in the general case is costly due the calculation of the Voronoi cells and the distance between all points.

We suppose that, as in the adaptive case with same probability, we want to have a partition such that the number of meshes in each direction is I_k for $k = 1, d$.

We propose a recursive algorithm to calculate the meshes. This algorithm is given by 4 and 5,

Algorithm 4 Recursive 1D Lloyd algorithm

- 1: **procedure** RECURKMEANS($id, X_{i_1, \dots, i_{id-1}}, S_{i_1, \dots, i_{id-1}}$)
 - 2: Sort the particle in dimension id and use Lloyd algorithm to partition $S_{i_1, \dots, i_{id-1}}$ in the dimension id and get $S^{i_1, \dots, i_{id}}$, $i_{id} = 1, I_{id}$.
 - 3: **for** $i_{id} = 1, I_{id}$ **do**
 - 4: $X_{i_1, \dots, i_{id}} = \{X \in X_{i_1, \dots, i_{id-1}} / X \in S_{i_1, \dots, i_{id}}\}$
 - 5: **if** $id < d$ **then**
 - 6: RecurKMeans($id + 1, X_{i_1, \dots, i_{id}}, S_{i_1, \dots, i_{id}}$)
 - 7: **end if**
 - 8: **end for**
 - 9: **end procedure**
-

Algorithm 5 Modified Lloyd algorithm

- 1: $S = \mathbb{R}^d$, $X = \{X^i / i = 1, N\}$
 - 2: RecurKMeans($1, X, S$)
-

and an example of a resulting partition is given on figure 4.3 in 2D for $I_1 = 3, I_2 = 4$.

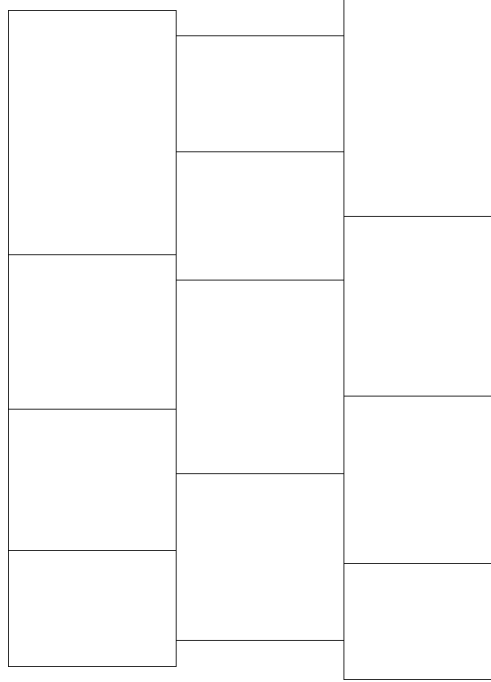


Figure 4.3: Possible 2D partition due to modified K-Means algorithm

Once the partition has been performed, a regression is performed with a constant representation per mesh:

We note $(S_k^i)_{k=1,p}$, a partition with the above method at the date t_i using Monte Carlo particles $X_{t_i}^{(k)}$, $k = 1, N$. To calculate the conditional expectation of a function g of $X_{t_{i+1}}$, we use the constant representation by mesh and we then have:

$$\mathbb{E}[g(X_{t_{i+1}})/X_{t_i} = X_{t_i}^k] \simeq \frac{1}{|S_p^i|} \sum_{j/X_{t_i}^j \in S_p^i} g(X_{t_{i+1}}^j)$$

where $X_{t_{i+1}}^k \in |S_p^i|$.

4.3.1 C++ API

The constructor of the local K-Means regression object is similar to that of the LocalConstRegression object in the 4.2.2 section. We do not then recall the signification of all the arguments.

A first constructor is:

```
1 LocalKMeansRegression(const Eigen::ArrayXi &p_nbMesh, bool p_bRotationAndRecalc =
   false);
```

and the second constructor permits the build the regression matrix,

```
1 LocalKMeansRegression(const bool &p_bZeroDate,
2   const shared_ptr< ArrayXXd> &p_particles,
3   const Eigen::ArrayXi &p_nbMesh,
4   bool p_bRotationAndRecalc = false)
```

4.3.2 Python api

Since the C++ API is the same as that of the `LocalConstRegression` object, we have the same python binding as in the 4.2.3 section.

4.4 Local polynomial basis with meshes of same size

In certain cases, instead of using adapted meshes, one can prefer to fix the mesh with a constant step in each direction with I_k meshes in each direction so that the total number of cells is $M_M = \prod_{k=1,d} I_k$. On each cell as in section 4.2, one can have two approximations:

- either a linear per mesh representation, so the global number of degrees of freedom is equal to M_M ,
- or a linear function with $1 + d$ degrees of freedom, so the global number of degrees of freedom is equal to $M_M * (1 + d)$.

Because we define in each direction, the domain for the local basis, we do not use any data rotation.

4.4.1 C++ API

The constant per cell approximation

The constructor of the local constant regression object is achieved by

```
1 LocalSameSizeConstRegression(const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_lowValues, const Eigen::ArrayXd &
   p_step, const Eigen::ArrayXi &p_nbStep);
```

- `p_lowValues` is an array giving the first point of the grid in each direction,
- `p_step` is an array giving the size of the meshes in each direction,
- `p_nbStep` is an array giving the number of meshes used in each direction.

The second constructor allows to build the regression matrix,

```
1 LocalSameSizeConstRegression(const bool &p_bZeroDate,
2                               const std::shared_ptr< Eigen::ArrayXXd > &p_particles,
3                               const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_lowValues,
4                               const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_step,
5                               const Eigen::ArrayXi &p_nbStep);
```

where

- `p_bZeroDate` is true if the regression date is 0,
- `p_particles` the particles X_t for all simulations (dimension of X_t for first dimension, number of Monte Carlo simulations in second dimension),
- `p_lowValues` is an array giving the first point of the grid in each direction,
- `p_step` is an array giving the size of the meshes in each direction,
- `p_nbStep` is an array giving the number of meshes used in each direction.

The linear per cell approximation

The constructor of the local linear regression object is achieved by

```
1 LocalSameSizeLinearRegression(const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_lowValues, const Eigen::ArrayXd
   &p_step, const Eigen::ArrayXi &p_nbStep);
```

where

- `p_lowValues` is an array giving the first point of the grid in each direction,
- `p_step` is an array giving the size of the meshes in each direction,
- `p_nbStep` is an array giving the number of meshes used in each direction.

The second constructor allows to build the regression matrix,

```
1 LocalSameSizeLinearRegression(const bool &p_bZeroDate,
2                               const std::shared_ptr< Eigen::ArrayXXd > &p_particles,
3                               const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_lowValues,
4                               const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_step,
5                               const Eigen::ArrayXi &p_nbStep)
```

where

- `p_bZeroDate` is `true` if the regression date is 0,
- `p_particles` the particles X_t for all simulations (dimension of X_t for first dimension, number of Monte Carlo simulations in second dimension),
- `p_lowValues` is an array giving the first point of the grid in each direction,
- `p_step` is an array giving the size of the meshes in each direction,
- `p_nbStep` is an array giving the number of meshes used in each direction.

4.4.2 An example in the linear case

Below we give a small example where `toRegress` is the array to regress as a function of `x` an array “`x`” in dimension `p_nDim`:

```
1 // create a random ‘x’ array
2 shared_ptr<ArrayXXd> x(new ArrayXXd(ArrayXXd::Random(p_nDim, p_nbSimul)));
3 // create the mesh by getting min and max value on the samples
4 double xMin = x->minCoeff() - tiny;
5 double xMax = x->maxCoeff() + tiny;
6 ArrayXd lowValues = ArrayXd::Constant(p_nDim, xMin);
7 ArrayXd step = ArrayXd::Constant(p_nDim, (xMax - xMin) / p_nMesh);
8 ArrayXi nbStep = ArrayXi::Constant(p_nDim, p_nMesh);
9 // constructor
10 LocalLinearRegression localRegressor(lowValues, step, nbStep);
11 // update particles values
12 localRegressor.updateSimulations(bZeroDate, x);
13 // regressed values
14 ArrayXd regressedValues = localRegressor.getAllSimulations(toRegress);
```

4.4.3 Python API

Here is a similar example using the second constructor of the linear case

```
1 import StOptReg
2 nbSimul = 5000000;
3 np.random.seed(000)
4 x = np.random.uniform(-.,1.,size=(1,nbSimul));
5 # real function
6 toReal = (2+x[0,:]+(+x[0,:])*(1+x[0,:]))
7 # function to regress
8 toRegress = toReal + 4*np.random.normal(0.,,nbSimul)
9 # mesh
10 nStep = 20
11 lowValue = np.array([-1.0001],dtype=np.float)
12 step = np.array([2.0002/nStep],dtype=np.float)
13 nbMesh = np.array([nStep],dtype=np.int32)
14 # Regressor
15 regressor = StOptReg.LocalSameSizeLinearRegression(False,x,lowValue,step,nbMesh)
16 y = regressor.getAllSimulations(toRegress).transpose()[0]
```

Of course, the constant per cell in python is similar.

4.5 Sparse grid regressor

In the case of a sparse regressor, the grid is an object `SparseSpaceGridNoBound` (extrapolation for the boundary conditions). The basis functions are given by the section 3.3 for a linear, quadratic or cubic function base. No data rotation is available.

4.5.1 C++ API

Two specific constructor are available:

- The first one to be used with the `updateSimulations` methods

```
1 SparseRegression(const int &p_levelMax, const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_weight, const int
   &p_degree, bool p_bNoRescale = false);
```

where

- `p_levelMax` corresponds to n in the equation (3.4),
 - `p_weight` the weight of the sparse anisotropic grids (see equation (3.7),
 - `p_degree` is equal to (linear basis function), or 2 (quadratic basis) or 3 (for cubic basis functions),
 - `p_bNoRescale` if `true` no rescaling of the particles is used. Otherwise a new scaling of the mesh size is obtained (as for local basis functions, see section 4.2)
- The second take the same arguments as the first constructor but adds a Boolean to check if the regression date is 0 and the particles X_t (here the scaling is always performed):

```
1 SparseRegression(const bool &p_bZeroDate,
2                 const shared_ptr< Eigen::ArrayXXd > &p_particles,
3                 const int &p_levelMax, const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_weight,
4                 const int &p_degree);
```

A simple example to express the regression of `toRegress`

```

1 // second member to regress
2   ArrayXd toRegress(p_nbSimul);
3 // for testing
4   toRegress.setConstant(.);
5   shared_ptr<ArrayXXd> x(new ArrayXXd(ArrayXXd::Random(p_nDim, p_nbSimul)));
6 // constructor : the current date is not zero
7   bool bZeroDate = 0;
8 // constructor
9   SparseRegression sparseRegressor(p_level , weight, p_degree);
10  sparseRegressor.updateSimulations(bZeroDate, x); // update the state
11 // then just calculate function basis coefficient
12  ArrayXd regressedFuntionCoeff = sparseRegressor.getCoordBasisFunction(toRegress);
13 // use the getValue method to get back the regressed values
14  for (int is = 0; is < p_nbSimul; ++is)
15  {
16      Map<ArrayXd> xloc(x->col(is).data(), p_nDim);
17      double reg = sparseRegressor.getValue(xloc, regressedFuntionCoeff);
18  }
19 // get back all values once for all
20  ArrayXd regressedAllValues = localRegressor.getValues(*x, regressedFuntionCoeff) ;

```

4.5.2 Python API

Here is a simple example of the python API:

```

1 import StOptReg
2 nbSimul = 2000000;
3 np.random.seed(000)
4 x = np.random.uniform(-.,1.,size=(1,nbSimul));
5 # real function
6 toReal = (2+x[0,:]+(+x[0,:])*(1+x[0,:]))
7 # function to regress
8 toRegress = toReal + 4*np.random.normal(0.,,nbSimul)
9 # level for sparse grid
10 iLevel = 5;
11 # weight for anisotropic sparse grids
12 weight= np.array([],dtype=np.int32)
13 # Regressor degree
14 regressor = StOptReg.SparseRegression(False,x,iLevel, weight, )
15 y = regressor.getAllSimulations(toRegress)
16 # get back basis function
17 regressedFuntionCoeff= regressor.getCoordBasisFunction(toRegress)
18 # get back all values
19 ySecond= regressor.getValues(x,regressedFuntionCoeff)

```

4.6 Global polynomial basis

4.6.1 Description of the method

In this section, the $\psi_k(X_t)$ involved in equation 4.1 are given polynomials. The available polynomials are the canonical polynomials, those of Hermite and Chebyshev.

- Hermite polynomials $H_m(x) = (-1)^n e^{\frac{x^2}{2}} \frac{d^n}{dx^n} e^{-\frac{x^2}{2}}$ are orthogonal with respect to the weight $w(x) = e^{-\frac{x^2}{2}}$ and we get

$$\int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} H_m(x) H_n(x) dx = \delta_{mn} \sqrt{2\pi n!}$$

they satisfy the recurrence:

$$H_{n+1}(x) = xH_n(x) - H_n'(x)$$

assuming $H_n(x) = \sum_{k=0}^n a_{n,k}x^k$, we get the recurrence

$$a_{n+1,k} = a_{n,k-1} - na_{n-1,k}, k > 0 \tag{4.5}$$

$$a_{n+1,0} = -na_{n-1,0} \tag{4.6}$$

- Chebyshev polynomials are $T_{N+1}(x) = \cos((N + 1)\arcs(x))$. They are orthogonal to the weight $w(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}$ and

$$\int_{-1}^1 T_N(x)T_M(x)w(x)dx = \begin{cases} 0, & \text{if } M \neq N \\ \pi, & \text{if } M = N = 0 \\ \frac{\pi}{2}, & \text{if } M = N \neq 0 \end{cases}$$

They satisfy the following recurrence:

$$T_{N+2}(x) = 2xT_{N+1}(x) - T_N(x)$$

Optionnaly, data rotation is possible even if the advantage of rotation seems limited for global polynomials.

4.6.2 C++ API

The class `GlobalRegression` is templated by the type of the polynomial (`Canonical`, `Tchebychev` or `Hermite`) The first constructor:

```
1 GlobalRegression(const int & p_degree, const int & p_dim, bool p_bRotationAndRecale =
   false);
```

where `p_degree` is the total degree of the polynomial approximation, `p_dim` is the dimension of the problem, `p_bRotationAndRecale` is an optional flag set to `true` if data rotation must be performed (by default, no rotation). A second constructor is provided:

```
1 GlobalRegression(const bool &p_bZeroDate,
2                 const std::shared_ptr< Eigen::ArrayXXd > &p_particles,
3                 const int & p_degree, bool p_bRotationAndRecale = false)
```

where

- `p_bZeroDate` is `true` if the regression date is 0,
- `p_particles` the particles X_t for all simulations (dimension of X_t for first dimension, number of Monte Carlo simulations in second dimension),
- `p_degree` is the total degree of the polynomial approximation,
- `p_bRotationAndRecale` is an optional flag set to `true` if data rotation is to be performed (default, no rotation)

Below, we give a small example where `toRegress` corresponds to $g(t + h, X_{t+h})$ for all simulations and x store X_t for all simulations.

```

1 // total degree equal to 2
2 int degree=2;
3 // t is not zero
4 bool bZeroDate = 0;
5 // constructor with Hermite polynomials, no rotation
6 GlobalRegression<Hermite> localRegressor(degree,x.rows());
7 // update particles values
8 localRegressor.updateSimulations(bZeroDate, x);
9 // regressed values
10 ArrayXd regressedValues = localRegressor.getAllSimulations(toRegress);

```

In the example above, the Hermite regression can be replaced by the canonical regression:

```

1 GlobalRegression<Canonical> localRegressor(degree,x.rows());

```

or by a Chebyshev:

```

1 GlobalRegression<Tchebychev> localRegressor(degree,x.rows());

```

4.6.3 Python API

Here is a similar example using the second constructor

```

1 import StOptReg
2 nbSimul = 5000000;
3 np.random.seed(1000)
4 x = np.random.uniform(-.,1.,size=(1,nbSimul));
5 # real function
6 toReal = (2+x[0,:]+(+x[0,:])*(1+x[0,:]))
7 # function to regress
8 toRegress = toReal + 4*np.random.normal(0.,,nbSimul)
9 # degree
10 degree =2
11 # Regressor, no rotation
12 regressor = StOptReg.GlobalHermiteRegression(False,x,degree)
13 y = regressor.getAllSimulations(toRegress).transpose()[0]

```

The available regressors are `GlobalHermiteRegression` as in the example above , `GlobalCanonicalRegression` and `GlobalTchebychevRegression` with obvious correspondence.

4.7 Kernel regression with Epanechnikov kernel

Let $(x_1, y_1), (x_2, y_2), \dots, (x_N, y_N)$ as a sample N input points x_i and output points y_i taken from a joint distribution (X, Y) . The kernel density estimator (aka Parzen–Rosenblatt estimator) of the density of X at the valuation point z is given by:

$$\hat{f}_{\text{KDE}}(z) := \frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=1}^N K_h(x_i - z) \quad (4.7)$$

where $K_h(u) := \frac{1}{h} K\left(\frac{u}{h}\right)$ with kernel K and bandwidth h . Nadaraya–Watson kernel regression estimator of $\mathbb{E}[Y | X = z]$ is given by:

$$\hat{f}_{\text{NW}}(z) := \frac{\sum_{i=1}^N K_h(x_i - z) y_i}{\sum_{i=1}^N K_h(x_i - z)} \quad (4.8)$$

The estimator $\hat{f}_{\text{NW}}(z)$ performs by kernel-weighted local average of the response points y_i that are such that their corresponding inputs x_i are close to the evaluation point z . It can be described as a locally constant regression. More generally, locally linear regressions can be performed:

$$\hat{f}_{\text{L}}(z) := \min_{\alpha(z), \beta(z)} \sum_{i=1}^N K_h(x_i - z) [y_i - \alpha(z) - \beta(z)x_i]^2 \quad (4.9)$$

The well known calculation problem with the implementation of the kernel smoothers (4.7)-(4.8)-(4.9) is that their direct evaluation on a set of evaluation points M would require $\mathcal{O}(M \times N)$ operations. In particular, when the evaluation points coincide with the input points x_1, x_2, \dots, x_N , direct evaluation requires a quadratic $\mathcal{O}(N^2)$ number of operations. In StOpt we develop the methodology described in [29] permitting to obtain a cost function $N \log N$.

4.7.1 The univariate case

In one dimension, StOpt uses the one-dimensional Epanechnikov kernel

$$K(u) = \frac{3}{4}(1 - u^2)\mathbb{1}\{|u| \leq 1\}$$

and the fast summation algorithm is used: Let $(x_1, y_1), (x_2, y_2), \dots, (x_N, y_N)$ be a sample of N input points (source) x_i and output points y_i , and let z_1, z_2, \dots, z_M be an evaluation set of M (target) points. Without loss of generality, we assume that the input points and evaluation points are sorted: $x_1 \leq x_2 \leq \dots \leq x_N$ and $z_1 \leq z_2 \leq \dots \leq z_M$. In order to calculate the kernel density estimator (4.7), kernel regression (4.8) and locally linear regression (4.9) for every evaluation point z_j , we must calculate sums of the type

$$\mathbf{S}_j = \mathbf{S}_j^{p,q} := \frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=1}^N K_h(x_i - z_j) x_i^p y_i^q = \frac{1}{Nh} \sum_{i=1}^N K\left(\frac{x_i - z_j}{h}\right) x_i^p y_i^q, p = 0, 1, q = 0, 1 \quad (4.10)$$

for each $j \in \{1, 2, \dots, M\}$. Direct and independent evaluation of these sums would require $\mathcal{O}(N \times M)$ operations (a sum of N terms for each $j \in \{1, 2, \dots, M\}$). The idea of fast updating the sum consists in using the information in the sum \mathbf{S}_j to calculate the next sum \mathbf{S}_{j+1} without going through all entry points N again. Use of Epanechnikov kernel (parabolic) $K(u) = \frac{3}{4}(1 - u^2)\mathbb{1}\{|u| \leq 1\}$ we get:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{S}_j^{p,q} &= \frac{1}{Nh} \sum_{i=1}^N \frac{3}{4} \left(1 - \left(\frac{x_i - z_j}{h}\right)^2\right) x_i^p y_i^q \mathbb{1}\{z_j - h \leq x_i \leq z_j + h\} \\ &= \frac{1}{Nh} \frac{3}{4} \sum_{i=1}^N \left(1 - \frac{z_j^2}{h^2} + 2\frac{z_j}{h^2}x_i - \frac{1}{h^2}x_i^2\right) x_i^p y_i^q \mathbb{1}\{z_j - h \leq x_i \leq z_j + h\} \\ &= \frac{3}{4Nh} \left\{ \left(1 - \frac{z_j^2}{h^2}\right) \mathcal{S}^{p,q}([z_j - h, z_j + h]) + 2\frac{z_j}{h^2} \mathcal{S}^{p+1,q}([z_j - h, z_j + h]) - \frac{1}{h^2} \mathcal{S}^{p+2,q}([z_j - h, z_j + h]) \right\} \end{aligned} \quad (4.11)$$

where

$$\mathcal{S}^{p,q}([L, R]) := \sum_{i=1}^N x_i^p y_i^q \mathbb{1}\{L \leq x_i \leq R\} \quad (4.12)$$

These sums $\mathcal{S}^{p,q}([z_j - h, z_j + h])$ can be evaluated quickly from $j = 1$ to $j = M$ as long as the input points x_i and the evaluation points z_j are sorted in ascending order. Indeed,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{S}^{p,q}([z_{j+1} - h, z_{j+1} + h]) &= \sum_{i=1}^N x_i^p y_i^q \mathbb{1}\{z_{j+1} - h \leq x_i \leq z_{j+1} + h\} \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^N x_i^p y_i^q \mathbb{1}\{z_j - h \leq x_i \leq z_j + h\} \\ &\quad - \sum_{i=1}^N x_i^p y_i^q \mathbb{1}\{z_j - h \leq x_i < z_{j+1} - h\} + \sum_{i=1}^N x_i^p y_i^q \mathbb{1}\{z_j + h < x_i \leq z_{j+1} + h\} \\ &= \mathcal{S}^{p,q}([z_j - h, z_j + h]) - \mathcal{S}^{p,q}([z_j - h, z_{j+1} - h]) + \mathcal{S}^{p,q}([z_j + h, z_{j+1} + h]) \end{aligned} \quad (4.13)$$

Therefore, we can simply update the sum $\mathcal{S}^{p,q}([z_j - h, z_{j+1} + h])$ for the evaluation point z_j to obtain the following sum $\mathcal{S}^{p,q}([z_{j+1} - h, z_{j+1} + h])$ for the next evaluation point z_{j+1} by subtracting the terms $x_i^p y_i^q$ for which x_i is between $z_j - h$ and $z_{j+1} - h$, and adding the terms $x_i^p y_i^q$ for which x_i is between $z_j + h$ and $z_{j+1} + h$. This can be achieved in a quick $\mathcal{O}(M + N)$ operations passing through the input points x_i , stored in ascending order at the cost of $\mathcal{O}(N \log N)$ and through the evaluation points z_j , stored in ascending order at the cost of $\mathcal{O}(M \log M)$ operations.

4.7.2 The multivariate case

We now turn to the multivariate case. Let d be the dimension of the inputs. We again consider a sample $(x_1, y_1), (x_2, y_2), \dots, (x_N, y_N)$ of N input points x_i and output points y_i , where the input points are now multivariate:

$$x_i = (x_{1,i}, x_{2,i}, \dots, x_{d,i}), \quad i \in \{1, 2, \dots, N\}$$

StOpt library uses the Epanechnikov additive kernel in the multi-dimensional case.

$$K_d(u_1, \dots, u_d) = \frac{1}{d2^{d-1}} \sum_{k=1}^d K(u_k) \prod_{k_0=1}^d \mathbb{1}\{|u_{k_0}| < 1\} = \frac{3}{d2^{d+1}} \sum_{k=1}^d (1 - u_k^2) \prod_{k_0=1}^d \mathbb{1}\{|u_{k_0}| < 1\} \quad (4.14)$$

We can show ([29]) that calculating the multivariate version of the smoothing kernels (4.7), (4.8) and (4.9) comes down to the calculation of the following sums:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{S}_j &= \mathbf{S}_{k_1, k_2, j}^{p_1, p_2, q} := \frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=1}^N K_{d,h}(x_i - z_j) x_{k_1, i}^{p_1} x_{k_2, i}^{p_2} y_i^q \\ &= \frac{1}{N \prod_{k=1}^d h_k} \sum_{i=1}^N K_d \left(\frac{x_{1,i} - z_{1,j}}{h_1}, \frac{x_{2,i} - z_{2,j}}{h_2}, \dots, \frac{x_{d,i} - z_{d,j}}{h_d} \right) x_{k_1, i}^{p_1} x_{k_2, i}^{p_2} y_i^q \end{aligned} \quad (4.15)$$

for each evaluation point $z_j = (z_{1,j}, z_{2,j}, \dots, z_{d,j}) \in \mathbb{R}^d$, $j \in \{1, 2, \dots, M\}$, for powers $p_1, p_2, q = 0, 1$ and for dimension index $k_1, k_2 = 1, 2, \dots, d$.

Kernel development

Using the multivariate kernel (4.14), we can develop the sum (4.15) as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{S}_{k_1, k_2, j}^{p_1, p_2, q} &= \frac{1}{N \prod_{k=1}^d h_k} \sum_{i=1}^N K_d \left(\frac{x_{1,i} - z_{1,j}}{h_1}, \frac{x_{2,i} - z_{2,j}}{h_2}, \dots, \frac{x_{d,i} - z_{d,j}}{h_d} \right) x_{k_1, i}^{p_1} x_{k_2, i}^{p_2} y_i^q \\
&= \frac{3}{d^{2d+1} N \prod_{k=1}^d h_k} \sum_{i=1}^N \sum_{k=1}^d \left(1 - \frac{(x_{k,i} - z_{k,j})^2}{h_k^2} \right) x_{k_1, i}^{p_1} x_{k_2, i}^{p_2} y_i^q \prod_{k_0=1}^d \mathbb{1}\{|x_{k_0, i} - z_{k_0, j}| \leq 1\} \\
&= \frac{3}{d^{2d+1} N \prod_{k=1}^d h_k} \sum_{k=1}^d \sum_{i=1}^N \left(1 - \frac{z_{k,j}^2}{h_k^2} + 2 \frac{z_{k,j}}{h_k^2} x_{k,i} - \frac{1}{h_k^2} x_{k,i}^2 \right) x_{k_1, i}^{p_1} x_{k_2, i}^{p_2} y_i^q \prod_{k_0=1}^d \mathbb{1}\{|x_{k_0, i} - z_{k_0, j}| \leq 1\} \\
&= \frac{3}{d^{2d+1} N \prod_{k=1}^d h_k} \sum_{k=1}^d \left\{ \left(1 - \frac{z_{k,j}^2}{h_k^2} \right) \mathcal{S}_{[k, k_1, k_2]}^{[0, p_1, p_2], q}([z_j - h_j, z_j + h_j]) + \right. \\
&= \left. 2 \frac{z_{k,j}}{h_k^2} \mathcal{S}_{[k, k_1, k_2]}^{[1, p_1, p_2], q}([z_j - h_j, z_j + h_j]) - \frac{1}{h_k^2} \mathcal{S}_{[k, k_1, k_2]}^{[2, p_1, p_2], q}([z_j - h_j, z_j + h_j]) \right\} \quad (4.16)
\end{aligned}$$

where

$$\mathbf{S}_{\mathbf{k}}^{\mathbf{p}, q}([\mathbf{L}, \mathbf{R}]) := \sum_{i=1}^N \left(\prod_{l=1}^3 (x_{k_l, i})^{p_l} \right) y_i^q \prod_{k_0=1}^d \mathbb{1}\{L_{k_0} \leq x_{k_0, i} \leq R_{k_0}\} \quad (4.17)$$

for any hypercube $[\mathbf{L}, \mathbf{R}] := [L_1, R_1] \times [L_2, R_2] \times \dots \times [L_d, R_d] \subseteq \mathbb{R}^d$, powers $\mathbf{p} := (p_1, p_2, p_3) \in \mathbb{N}^3$, $q \in \mathbb{N}$ and indices $\mathbf{k} := (k_1, k_2, k_3) \in \{1, 2, \dots, d\}^3$, and where $[z_j - h_j, z_j + h_j] := [z_{1,j} - h_{1,j}, z_{1,j} + h_{1,j}] \times [z_{2,j} - h_{2,j}, z_{2,j} + h_{2,j}] \times \dots \times [z_{d,j} - h_{d,j}, z_{d,j} + h_{d,j}]$

To summarize what has been achieved so far, the computation of the multivariate kernel smoothers (kernel density estimation, kernel regression, locally linear regression) comes down to calculating sums of type (4.17) on hypercubes of type $[z_j - h_j, z_j + h_j]$ for each evaluation period $j \in \{1, 2, \dots, M\}$. In the univariate case, these sums could be calculated efficiently by sorting the input points x_i , $i \in \{1, 2, \dots, N\}$ and updating the sums of an evaluation point to the next (equation (4.13)). Our goal is now to set up a similar efficient fast sum update algorithm for multivariate sums (4.17). To do this, we will first to partition the input data into a multivariate rectilinear grid (subsection 4.7.2), taking advantage of the fact that the evaluation grid is rectilinear and that the supports of the kernels have a hypercube shape. Then, we are going to set up a fast sweeping algorithm using the sums on each hypercube of the partition as the unit blocks to be added and removed (subsection 4.7.2), unlike the univariate case where the input points themselves were being added and removed iteratively.

Data partition

The first stage of the multivariate fast sum updating algorithm is to partition the sample of input points into a rectilinear grid. To do so, we partition each dimension independently as follows: for each dimension $k \in \{1, 2, \dots, d\}$, the set of threshold points

$\tilde{\mathcal{G}}_k := \{z_{k,j_k} - h_{k,j_k}\}_{j_k \in \{1,2,\dots,M_k\}} \cup \{z_{k,j_k} + h_{k,j_k}\}_{j_k \in \{1,2,\dots,M_k\}}$ is used to partition the k -th axis. The second row of Figure 4.4 illustrates this partition on a set of 4 points, where for simplicity the evaluation points are the same as the input points. Denote the sorted points of the partition $\tilde{\mathcal{G}}_k$ as $\tilde{g}_{k,1} \leq \tilde{g}_{k,2} \leq \dots \leq \tilde{g}_{k,2M_k}$

$$\tilde{\mathcal{G}}_k = \{\tilde{g}_{k,1}, \tilde{g}_{k,2}, \dots, \tilde{g}_{k,2M_k}\}$$

and define the partition intervals $\tilde{I}_{k,l} := [\tilde{g}_{k,l}, \tilde{g}_{k,l+1}]$ for $l \in \{1, 2, \dots, 2M_k - 1\}$.

Because for each dimension $k \in \{1, 2, \dots, d\}$, all the bandwidths edges $z_{k,j_k} - h_{k,j_k}$ and $z_{k,j_k} + h_{k,j_k}$, $j_k \in \{1, 2, \dots, M_k\}$, belong to $\tilde{\mathcal{G}}_k$, there exists, for any evaluation point $z_j = (z_{1,j_1}, z_{2,j_2}, \dots, z_{d,j_d}) \in \mathbb{R}^d$, some indices $(\tilde{L}_{1,j_1}, \tilde{L}_{2,j_2}, \dots, \tilde{L}_{d,j_d})$ and $(\tilde{R}_{1,j_1}, \tilde{R}_{2,j_2}, \dots, \tilde{R}_{d,j_d})$ such that

$$\begin{aligned} [z_j - h_j, z_j + h_j] &= [z_{1,j_1} - h_{1,j_1}, z_{1,j_1} + h_{1,j_1}] \times \dots \times [z_{d,j_d} - h_{d,j_d}, z_{d,j_d} + h_{d,j_d}] \\ &= [\tilde{g}_{1,\tilde{L}_{1,j_1}}, \tilde{g}_{1,\tilde{R}_{1,j_1}+1}] \times \dots \times [\tilde{g}_{d,\tilde{L}_{d,j_d}}, \tilde{g}_{d,\tilde{R}_{d,j_d}+1}] \\ &= \bigcup_{(l_1, \dots, l_d) \in \{\tilde{L}_{1,j_1}, \dots, \tilde{R}_{1,j_1}\} \times \dots \times \{\tilde{L}_{d,j_d}, \dots, \tilde{R}_{d,j_d}\}} \tilde{I}_{1,l_1} \times \dots \times \tilde{I}_{d,l_d} \end{aligned} \quad (4.18)$$

and, consequently, such that the sum (4.17) on the hypercube $[z_j - h_j, z_j + h_j]$ is equal to the sum of sums (4.17) on all the hypercubes of the partition included in $[z_j - h_j, z_j + h_j]$ (namely all the hypercubes $\tilde{I}_{1,l_1} \times \tilde{I}_{2,l_2} \times \dots \times \tilde{I}_{d,l_d}$ such that $l_k \in \{\tilde{L}_{k,j_k}, \tilde{L}_{k,j_k} + 1, \dots, \tilde{R}_{k,j_k}\}$ in each dimension $k \in \{1, 2, \dots, d\}$):

$$\mathcal{S}_k^{\mathbf{p},q}([z_j - h_j, z_j + h_j]) = \bigcup_{(l_1, \dots, l_d) \in \{\tilde{L}_{1,j_1}, \dots, \tilde{R}_{1,j_1}\} \times \dots \times \{\tilde{L}_{d,j_d}, \dots, \tilde{R}_{d,j_d}\}} \mathcal{S}_k^{\mathbf{p},q}(\tilde{I}_{1,l_1} \times \dots \times \tilde{I}_{d,l_d}) \quad (4.19)$$

where we assume without loss of generality that the bandwidth grid $h_j = (h_{1,j_1}, h_{2,j_2}, \dots, h_{d,j_d})$, $j_k \in \{1, 2, \dots, M_k\}$, $k \in \{1, 2, \dots, d\}$ is such that $\tilde{\mathcal{G}}_k$ does not contain any input $x_{k,i}$, $i \in \{1, 2, \dots, N\}$, to ensure there is no input point on the boundaries of the inner hypercubes.

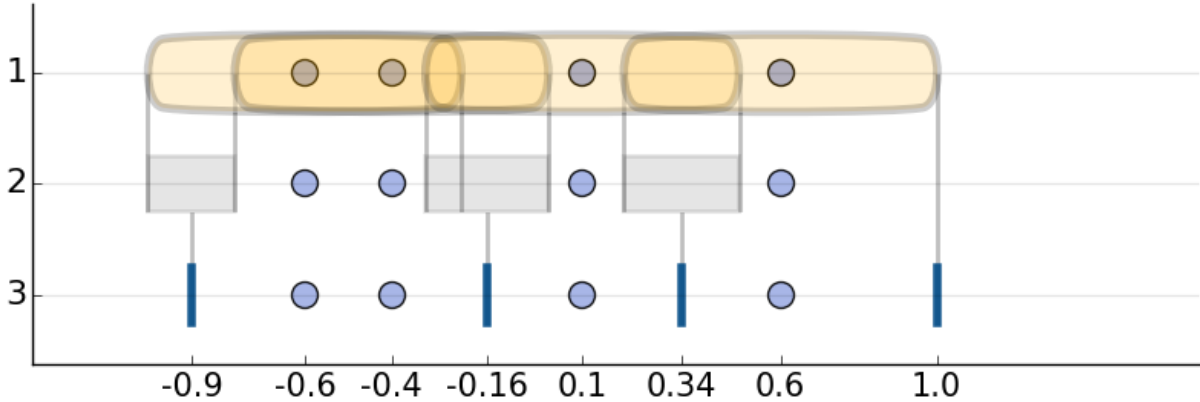


Figure 4.4: From bandwidths to partition (1D)

The sum decomposition (4.19) is the cornerstone of the fast multivariate sum updating algorithm, but before going further, one can simplify the partitions $\tilde{\mathcal{G}}_k$, $k \in \{1, 2, \dots, d\}$ while maintaining a sum decomposition of the type (4.19). Indeed, the partitions $\tilde{\mathcal{G}}_k = \{z_{k,j_k} - h_{k,j_k}, z_{k,j_k} + h_{k,j_k}; j_k = 1, \dots, M_k\}$ can in general produce empty intervals (intervals which do not contain any input points, cf. the grey intervals on the second row of Figure 4.4). To avoid keeping track of sums $\mathcal{S}_k^{\mathbf{p},q}$ on the corresponding hypercubes known to be empty, one can trim the partitions $\tilde{\mathcal{G}}_k$ by shrinking each succession of empty intervals into one new partition threshold (cf. the final partition on the third row of Figure 4.4). Denote as \mathcal{G}_k the resulting simplified partitions, containing the points $g_{k,1} < g_{k,2} < \dots < g_{k,m_k}$:

$$\mathcal{G}_k = \{g_{k,1}, g_{k,2}, \dots, g_{k,m_k}\}$$

where $2 \leq m_k \leq 2M_k$, $k \in \{1, 2, \dots, d\}$, and $m := \prod_{k=1}^d m_k \leq 2^d M$. Define the partition intervals $I_{k,l} := [g_{k,l}, g_{k,l+1}]$, $l \in \{1, 2, \dots, m_k - 1\}$. Because the only intervals to have been modified from $\tilde{\mathcal{G}}_k$ to \mathcal{G}_k were empty, the following still holds:

For any evaluation point $z_j = (z_{1,j_1}, z_{2,j_2}, \dots, z_{d,j_d}) \in \mathbb{R}^d$, $j_k \in \{1, 2, \dots, M_k\}$, $k \in \{1, 2, \dots, d\}$, there exists indices $(L_{1,j_1}, L_{2,j_2}, \dots, L_{d,j_d})$ and $(R_{1,j_1}, R_{2,j_2}, \dots, R_{d,j_d})$, where $L_{k,j_k} \in \{1, 2, \dots, m_k - 1\}$ and $R_{k,j_k} \in \{1, 2, \dots, m_k - 1\}$ with $L_{k,j_k} \leq R_{k,j_k}$, $k \in \{1, 2, \dots, d\}$, such that

$$\mathcal{S}_k^{\mathbf{p},q}([z_j - h_j, z_j + h_j]) = \bigcup_{(l_1, \dots, l_d) \in \{L_{1,j_1}, \dots, R_{1,j_1}\} \times \dots \times \{L_{d,j_d}, \dots, R_{d,j_d}\}} \mathcal{S}_k^{\mathbf{p},q}(I_{1,l_1} \times \dots \times I_{d,l_d}) \quad (4.20)$$

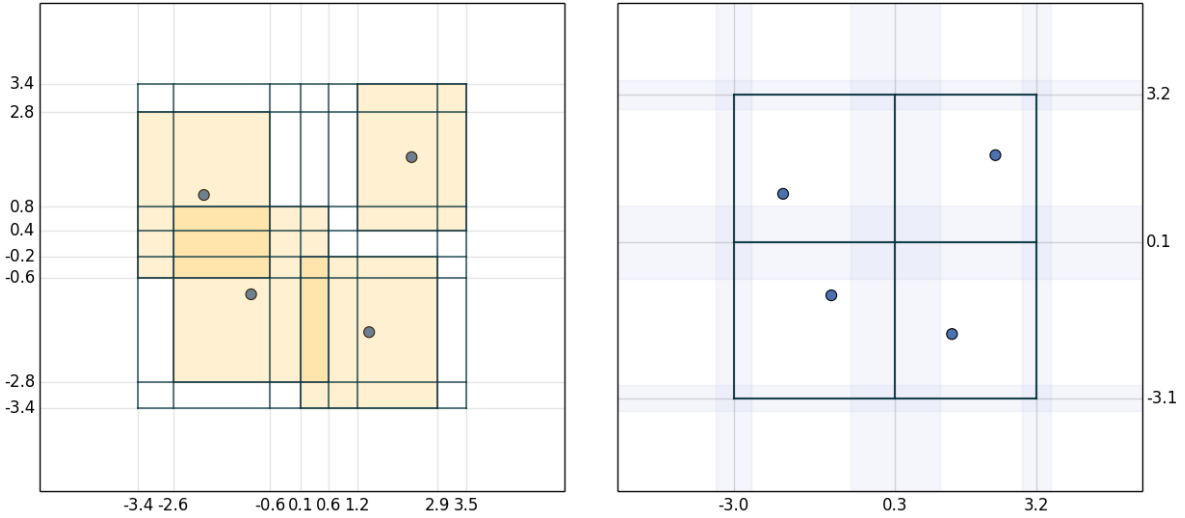


Figure 4.5: From bandwidths to partition (2D)

To complement the illustration of univariate partition given by Figure 4.4, Figure 4.5 provides a bivariate partition example. There are four points, each at the center of their respective rectangular kernel (in orange). On the left-hand side, the bandwidths boundaries are used to produce the partitions $\tilde{\mathcal{G}}_k$ in each dimension. One can see that most of the resulting hypercubes (rectangles) are empty. On the right-hand side, the empty hypercubes are removed/merged, resulting in the trimmed partitions \mathcal{G}_k in each dimension. Remark that this is a simple example for which every final hypercube only contains one point.

Fast multivariate sweeping algorithm

So far, we have shown that computing multivariate kernel smoothers is based on the computation of the kernel sums (4.15), which can be decomposed into sums of the type (4.17), which themselves can be decomposed into the smaller sums (4.20) by decomposing every kernel support of every evaluation point onto the rectilinear partition described in the previous subsection 4.7.2. The final task is to define an efficient algorithm to traverse all the hypercube unions $\bigcup_{(l_1, \dots, l_d) \in \{L_{1,j_1}, \dots, R_{1,j_1}\} \times \dots \times \{L_{d,j_d}, \dots, R_{d,j_d}\}} I_{1,l_1} \times \dots \times I_{d,l_d}$, so as to compute the right-hand side sums (4.20) in an efficient fast sum updating fashion that extends the univariate updating (4.13).

First, to simplify notations, we introduce the multi-index $\text{idx} := (\mathbf{p}, q, \mathbf{k}) \in \{0, 1, 2\} \times \{0, 1\}^3 \times \{1, 2, \dots, d\}^3$ to summarize the polynomial $(\prod_{l=1}^3 (x_{k_l, i})^{p_l}) y_i^q$ in the sum $\mathcal{S}_{\mathbf{k}}^{\mathbf{p}, q}([\mathbf{L}, \mathbf{R}])$ (equation (4.17)), and introduce the compact notation

$$\mathcal{S}_{l_1, l_2, \dots, l_d}^{\text{idx}} := \mathcal{S}_{\mathbf{k}}^{\mathbf{p}, q}(I_{1, l_1} \times \dots \times I_{d, l_d}) \quad (4.21)$$

to simplify the notation on the right-hand side of equation (4.20). In summary, $\mathcal{S}_{l_1, l_2, \dots, l_d}^{\text{idx}}$ corresponds to the sum of the polynomials $(\prod_{i=1}^3 (x_{k_i, i})^{p_i}) y_i^q$ over all the data points within the hypercube $I_{1, l_1} \times \dots \times I_{d, l_d}$. We precompute all the sums $\mathcal{S}_{l_1, l_2, \dots, l_d}^{\text{idx}}$, and use them as the input material for the fast multivariate sum updating.

In the bivariate case, we first provide an algorithm to compute the sums $\mathcal{T}_{1, l_2}^{\text{idx}} := \sum_{l_1=L_{1, j_1}}^{R_{1, j_1}} \mathcal{S}_{l_1, l_2}^{\text{idx}}$, for every $l_2 \in \{1, 2, \dots, m_2 - 1\}$ and every indices interval $[L_{1, j_1}, R_{1, j_1}]$, $j_1 \in \{1, 2, \dots, M_1\}$. Starting with $j_1 = 1$, we first compute $\mathcal{T}_{1, l_2}^{\text{idx}} = \sum_{l_1=L_{1, 1}}^{R_{1, 1}} \mathcal{S}_{l_1, l_2}^{\text{idx}}$ for every $l_2 \in \{1, 2, \dots, m_2 - 1\}$. Then we iteratively increment j_1 from $j_1 = 1$ to $j_1 = M_1$. After each increment of j_1 , we update $\mathcal{T}_{1, l_2}^{\text{idx}}$ by fast sum updating

$$\sum_{l_1=L_{1, j_1}}^{R_{1, j_1}} \mathcal{S}_{l_1, l_2}^{\text{idx}} = \sum_{l_1=L_{1, j_1-1}}^{R_{1, j_1-1}} \mathcal{S}_{l_1, l_2}^{\text{idx}} + \sum_{l_1=R_{1, j_1-1}+1}^{R_{1, j_1}} \mathcal{S}_{l_1, l_2}^{\text{idx}} - \sum_{l_1=L_{1, j_1-1}}^{L_{1, j_1}-1} \mathcal{S}_{l_1, l_2}^{\text{idx}} \quad (4.22)$$

The second stage is to perform a fast sum updating in the second dimension, with the sums $\mathcal{T}_{1, l_2}^{\text{idx}} = \sum_{l_1=L_{1, j_1}}^{R_{1, j_1}} \mathcal{S}_{l_1, l_2}^{\text{idx}}$ as input material. Our goal is to compute the sums $\mathcal{T}_{1, l_2}^{\text{idx}} := \sum_{l_2=L_{2, j_2}}^{R_{2, j_2}} \mathcal{T}_{1, l_2}^{\text{idx}}$ for every indices interval $[L_{2, j_2}, R_{2, j_2}]$, $j_2 \in \{1, 2, \dots, M_2\}$. In a similar manner, we start with $j_2 = 1$ and the initial sum $\mathcal{T}_{1, l_2}^{\text{idx}} = \sum_{l_2=L_{2, 1}}^{R_{2, 1}} \mathcal{T}_{1, l_2}^{\text{idx}}$. We then increment j_2 from $j_2 = 1$ to $j_2 = M_2$ iteratively. After each increment of j_2 , we update $\mathcal{T}_{1, l_2}^{\text{idx}}$ by fast sum updating:

$$\sum_{l_2=L_{2, j_2}}^{R_{2, j_2}} \mathcal{T}_{1, l_2}^{\text{idx}} = \sum_{l_2=L_{2, j_2-1}}^{R_{2, j_2-1}} \mathcal{T}_{1, l_2}^{\text{idx}} + \sum_{l_2=R_{2, j_2-1}+1}^{R_{2, j_2}} \mathcal{T}_{1, l_2}^{\text{idx}} - \sum_{l_2=L_{2, j_2-1}}^{L_{2, j_2}-1} \mathcal{T}_{1, l_2}^{\text{idx}} \quad (4.23)$$

Using the notation change (4.21) and equation (4.20), the resulting sum $\sum_{l_2=L_{2, j_2}}^{R_{2, j_2}} \mathcal{T}_{1, l_2}^{\text{idx}} = \sum_{l_1=L_{1, j_1}}^{R_{1, j_1}} \sum_{l_2=L_{2, j_2}}^{R_{2, j_2}} \mathcal{S}_{l_1, l_2}^{\text{idx}}$ is equal to $\mathcal{S}_{\mathbf{k}}^{\mathbf{p}, q}([z_j - h_j, z_j + h_j])$, which can be used to compute the kernel sums $\mathbf{S}_j = \mathbf{S}_{k_1, k_2, j}^{p_1, p_2, q}$ using equation (4.16), from which the bivariate kernel smoothers (kernel density estimator, kernel regression, locally linear regression) can be computed.

This ends the description of the fast sum updating algorithm in the bivariate case. Finally, the general multivariate case is a straightforward extension of the bivariate case.

4.7.3 C++ API

The constructor allows to defines the kernel regressor:

```
1 LocalGridKernelRegression(const bool &p_bZeroDate,
2                           const std::shared_ptr< Eigen::ArrayXXd > &p_particles,
3                           const double &p_coeffBandWidth,
4                           const double &p_coefNbGridPoint,
5                           const bool &p_bLinear);
```

where

- `p_bZeroDate` is `true` if the regression date is 0,
- `p_particles` the particles X_t for all simulations (dimension of X_t for first dimension, number of Monte Carlo simulations in second dimension),
- `p_coeffBandWidth` between 0 and 1 defines the percentage of points to use to define the bandwidth for each point.
- `p_coefNbGridPoint` is a multiplying factor defining the number of points z used for the multi-grid approximation: a PCA is used to define a data rotation. The kernel regression is performed according the basis defined by the eigenvectors associated to the PCA. The number of points along the axes defined by the eigenvectors is given as a function of the singular value associated to the eigenvector. The total number of evaluation points along the axes of the new base is approximately the number of simulations (`p_particles.cols()`) by `p_coefNbGridPoint`.
- `p_bLinear` when set to `false` indicates that the simple estimate of the density of the kernel (4.8) is used. When `p_bLinear` is `true`, the linear regression of the kernel (4.9) is used.

Below we give a small example where `toRegress` corresponds to $g(t+h, X_{t+h})$ for all simulations and `x` store X_t for all simulations.

```
1
2 // t is not zero
3 bool bZeroDate = 0;
4 // proportion of points used to define the bandwidth
5 double prop =0.1;
6 // multiplicative factor equal to one: number of evaluation points equal to the
   number of particles
7 double q =1.
8 // choose a linear regression
9 bool bLin= true;
10 // constructor
11 LocalGridKernelRegression kernelReg(bZeroDate, x, prop, q, bLin);
12 // update particles values
13 localRegressor.updateSimulations(bZeroDate, x);
14 // regressed values
15 ArrayXd regressedValues = localRegressor.getAllSimulations(toRegress);
```

4.7.4 Python API

As usual the python constructors are similar to the c++ constructors. Here is a small example the use of the kernel regression method.

```

1 import StOptReg
2 nbSimul = 5000000;
3 np.random.seed(1000)
4 x = np.random.uniform(-.,1.,size=(1,nbSimul));
5 # real function
6 toReal = (2+x[0,:]+(+x[0,:])*(1+x[0,:]))
7 # function to regress
8 toRegress = toReal + 4*np.random.normal(0.,,nbSimul)
9 # bandwidth
10 bandwidth = 0.1
11 # factor for the number of points
12 factPoint=1
13 # Regressor
14 regressor = StOptReg.LocalGridKernelRegression(False,x,bandwidth,factPoint, True)
15 # get regressed
16 y = regressor.getAllSimulations(toRegress).transpose()[0]

```

4.8 Kernel regression with Laplacian kernels

Keeping in mind notations of section 4.7, we focus on the Laplacian kernel, defined by

$$K(u) = \frac{1}{2}e^{-|u|} \quad (4.24)$$

The Laplacian kernel density estimator is defined by:

$$\hat{f}_{\text{KDE}}(z) = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=1}^N \frac{1}{2h} e^{-\frac{|x_i-z|}{h}} \quad (4.25)$$

4.8.1 Reducing the problem to empirical CDF calculations

This kernel density estimator can be decomposed as follows in one dimension:

$$\begin{aligned}
\hat{f}_{\text{KDE}}(z) &= \frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=1}^N \frac{1}{2h} e^{-\frac{|x_i-z|}{h}} \\
&= \frac{1}{2hN} \left(\sum_{i=1}^N e^{\frac{x_i-z}{h}} \mathbb{1}\{x_i \leq z\} + \sum_{i=1}^N e^{\frac{z-x_i}{h}} \mathbb{1}\{x_i > z\} \right) \\
&= \frac{1}{2hN} \left(e^{-\frac{z}{h}} \sum_{i=1}^N e^{\frac{x_i}{h}} \mathbb{1}\{x_i \leq z\} + e^{\frac{z}{h}} \sum_{i=1}^N e^{-\frac{x_i}{h}} \mathbb{1}\{x_i > z\} \right) \\
&= \frac{1}{2h} \left(e^{-\frac{z}{h}} F_N(z; x, we^{\frac{x}{h}}) + e^{\frac{z}{h}} \bar{F}_N(z; x, we^{-\frac{x}{h}}) \right)
\end{aligned} \quad (4.26)$$

where the empirical CDF F_N and the empirical complementary CDF \bar{F}_N are defined by equations

$$F_N(z) = F_N(z; x, y) \triangleq \frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=1}^N y_i \mathbb{1}\{x_{1,i} \leq z_1, \dots, x_{d,i} \leq z_d\}. \quad (4.27)$$

$$\bar{F}_N(z) = \bar{F}_N(z; x, y) \triangleq \frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=1}^N y_i \mathbb{1}\{x_{1,i} > z_1, \dots, x_{d,i} > z_d\}. \quad (4.28)$$

Crucially, such a CDF decomposition of KDE also holds in the multivariate setting. The multivariate Laplacian kernel is defined by

$$K_d(u) = \frac{1}{2^d} e^{-|u|} = \frac{1}{2^d} e^{-\sum_{k=1}^d |u_k|} \quad (4.29)$$

and the multivariate Laplacian kernel density estimator is given by

$$\hat{f}_{\text{KDE}}(z) = \frac{1}{2^d N \prod_{k=1}^d h_k} \sum_{i=1}^N e^{-\left| \frac{x_i - z}{h} \right|} = \frac{1}{2^d N \prod_{k=1}^d h_k} \sum_{i=1}^N e^{-\sum_{k=1}^d \frac{|x_{k,i} - z_k|}{h_k}} \quad (4.30)$$

where $h = (h_1, h_2, \dots, h_d) \in \mathbb{R}^d$ is a multivariate bandwidth.

We introduce :

$$F_N(z, \delta) = F_N(z, \delta; x, y) \triangleq \frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=1}^N y_i \mathbb{1}\{x_{1,i} \leq_{\delta_1} z_1, \dots, x_{d,i} \leq_{\delta_d} z_d\} \quad (4.31)$$

where $\delta = \{\delta_1, \delta_2, \dots, \delta_d\} \in \{-1, 1\}^d$, and where the generalized inequality operator \leq_c corresponds to \leq (lower or equal) if $c \geq 0$, and to $<$ (strictly lower) if $c < 0$. In particular $F_N(z) = F_N(z, 1; x, y)$ and $\bar{F}_N(z) = F_N(-z, -1; -x, y)$ respectively.

Using the same approach as equation (4.26), the sum (4.30) can be decomposed as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{f}_{\text{KDE}}(z) &= \frac{1}{2^d N \prod_{k=1}^d h_k} \sum_{i=1}^N \prod_{k=1}^d \left(e^{-\frac{z_k}{h_k}} e^{\frac{x_{k,i}}{h_k}} \mathbb{1}\{x_{k,i} \leq z_k\} + e^{\frac{z_k}{h_k}} e^{-\frac{x_{k,i}}{h_k}} \mathbb{1}\{-x_{k,i} < -z_k\} \right) \\ &= \frac{1}{2^d N \prod_{k=1}^d h_k} \sum_{i=1}^N \sum_{\delta \in \{-1, 1\}^d} \prod_{k=1}^d e^{-\frac{\delta_k z_k}{h_k}} e^{\frac{\delta_k x_{k,i}}{h_k}} \mathbb{1}\{\delta_k x_{k,i} \leq_{\delta_k} \delta_k z_k\} \\ &= \frac{1}{2^d \prod_{k=1}^d h_k} \sum_{\delta \in \{-1, 1\}^d} e^{-\sum_{k=1}^d \frac{\delta_k z_k}{h_k}} \frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=1}^N e^{\sum_{k=1}^d \frac{\delta_k x_{k,i}}{h_k}} \mathbb{1}\{\delta_1 x_{1,i} \leq_{\delta_1} \delta_1 z_1, \dots, \delta_d x_{d,i} \leq_{\delta_d} \delta_d z_d\} \\ &= \frac{1}{2^d \prod_{k=1}^d h_k} \sum_{\delta \in \{-1, 1\}^d} e^{-\sum_{k=1}^d \frac{\delta_k z_k}{h_k}} F_N(\delta z, \delta; \delta x, y) \end{aligned} \quad (4.32)$$

with $y_i = y_i(\delta) := e^{\sum_{k=1}^d \frac{\delta_k x_{k,i}}{h_k}}$. Equation (4.32) shows that the computation of the multivariate Laplacian kernel density estimator can be decomposed into the computation of 2^d generalized empirical CDF (4.31).

4.8.2 Effective ECDF calculations

We present two ways to calculate efficiently an expression such as 4.32. The first is based on a use of a rectilinear grid as evaluation points and an interpolation is needed to get back the conditional expectation at the sample points. The second one, based on the divide and conquer approach, is exact but much more costly.

Fast sum updating in lexicographical order

Let $z_j = (z_{1,j}, z_{2,j}, \dots, z_{d,j}) \in \mathbb{R}^d$, $j \in \{1, 2, \dots, M\}$, be a set of M evaluation (target) points.

We require this evaluation grid to be rectilinear, i.e., the M evaluation points z_1, z_2, \dots, z_M lie on a regular grid with possibly non-uniform mesh, of dimension $M_1 \times M_2 \times \dots \times M_d = M$:

$$\mathbf{z} = \{(z_{1,j_1}, z_{2,j_2}, \dots, z_{d,j_d}) \in \mathbb{R}^d, j_k \in \{1, 2, \dots, M_k\}, k \in \{1, 2, \dots, d\}\}$$

For convenience, we extend the definition of the grid with the notational conventions $z_{k,0} \triangleq -\infty$ and $z_{k,M_k+1} \triangleq \infty$.

In each dimension $k \in \{1, 2, \dots, d\}$, the vector $(z_{k,1}, z_{k,2}, \dots, z_{k,M_k}) \in \mathbb{R}^{M_k}$ is assumed to be sorted in increasing order:

$$z_{k,1} < z_{k,2} < \dots < z_{k,M_k}, k \in \{1, 2, \dots, d\}$$

We partition the input data \mathbf{x} along this evaluation grid \mathbf{z} . For each evaluation grid index $(j_1, j_2, \dots, j_d) \in \{1, 2, \dots, M_1 + 1\} \times \dots \times \{1, 2, \dots, M_d + 1\}$ we define the following local sum

$$s_{j_1, j_2, \dots, j_d} := \frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=1}^N y_i \mathbb{1}\{z_{1,j_1-1} < x_{1,i} \leq z_{1,j_1}, \dots, z_{d,j_d-1} < x_{d,i} \leq z_{d,j_d}\} \quad (4.33)$$

Together, the sums (4.33) form a generalized multivariate histogram (classical histogram in the case $y \equiv 1$). For completeness, the computation of the local sums (4.33) is detailed in algorithm 6.

Algorithm 6 Fast computation of local sums by independent sorting in each dimension

```

1: Input: sample  $x_i = (x_{1,i}, \dots, x_{d,i})$ ,  $i = 1, 2, \dots, N$ 
2: Input : evaluation grid  $(z_{1,j_1}, z_{2,j_2}, \dots, z_{d,j_d})$ ,  $j_k \in \{1, 2, \dots, M_k\}$ ,  $k \in \{1, 2, \dots, d\}$ 
3: Define index matrix INDEX[ $k, i$ ] ▷ local sum index  $\in \{1, 2, M_k + 1\}$  where
    $k = 1, 2, \dots, d$  and  $i = 1, 2, \dots, N$ 
4: for do ( $k = 1, 2, \dots, d$ )
5:   Sort the set  $\{x_{k,1}, \dots, x_{k,N}\}$  in increasing order, using for example quicksort or merge-
   sort ( $\mathcal{O}(N \log N)$ ): define the permutation  $\phi_k : \{1, 2, \dots, N\} \mapsto \{1, 2, \dots, N\}$ 
   such that
   
$$x_{k,\phi_k(1)} < x_{k,\phi_k(2)} < \dots < x_{k,\phi_k(N)} \tag{4.34}$$

6:    $x_{\text{idx}} = 1$  ▷ input index  $\in \{1, 2, \dots, N\}$ 
7:    $z_{\text{idx}} = 1$  ▷ evaluation grid index  $\in \{1, 2, \dots, M_k\}$ 
8:   while do ( $x_{\text{idx}} \leq N$ )
9:     if then ( $x_{k,\phi_k(x_{\text{idx}})} \leq z_{k,z_{\text{idx}}}$ )
10:      INDEX[ $k, \phi_k(x_{\text{idx}})$ ] =  $z_{\text{idx}}$ 
11:       $x_{\text{idx}} += 1$ 
12:     else
13:        $z_{\text{idx}} += 1$ 
14:     end if
15:   end while
16: end for
17:  $s_{j_1, j_2, \dots, j_d} = 0$ ,  $\forall (j_1, j_2, \dots, j_d) \in \{1, 2, \dots, M_1 + 1\} \times \dots \times \{1, 2, \dots, M_d + 1\}$ 
18: for do ( $i = 1, 2, \dots, N$ )
19:    $s_{\text{INDEX}[1,i], \text{INDEX}[2,i], \dots, \text{INDEX}[d,i]} += y_i / N$ 
20: end for
21: return  $s_{j_1, j_2, \dots, j_d} = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=1}^N y_i \mathbb{1}\{z_{1,j_1-1} < x_{1,i} \leq z_{1,j_1}, \dots, z_{d,j_d-1} < x_{d,i} \leq z_{d,j_d}\}$ 
   for every local sum index  $(j_1, j_2, \dots, j_d) \in \{1, 2, \dots, M_1 + 1\} \times \dots \times \{1, 2, \dots, M_d + 1\}$ 

```

In particular, using equation (4.27), the following key equality holds:

$$F_N(z) = \sum_{l_1=1}^{j_1} \sum_{l_2=1}^{j_2} \dots \sum_{l_d=1}^{j_d} s_{l_1, l_2, \dots, l_d} \tag{4.35}$$

for any evaluation point $z = (z_{1,j_1}, z_{2,j_2}, \dots, z_{d,j_d}) \in \mathbf{z}$.

We propose a simple fast summation algorithm, Algorithm 7, to compute the ECDFs $F_N(z)$ for every $z \in \mathbf{z}$ in lexicographical order based on the local sum decomposition (4.35). One can easily verify that the number of operations is proportional to $M_1 \times M_2 \times \dots \times M_d = M$. As the computation of the local sums (4.33) costs $\mathcal{O}(N \log N)$ operations (or only $\mathcal{O}(N)$ if the grid is uniform or the data already sorted), the overall computational complexity of Algorithm 7 is $\mathcal{O}(M + N \log N)$, or $\mathcal{O}(N \log N)$ when $M \approx N$ (respectively $\mathcal{O}(M + N)$ and $\mathcal{O}(N)$ when the grid is uniform or the data already sorted).

Algorithm 7 Fast joint empirical cumulative distribution function

```

1: Input :precomputed sums  $s_{l_1, l_2, \dots, l_d}$ 
2:  $\mathcal{S}_{1, l_2, l_3, \dots, l_d} = 0$ 
3: for do ( $j_1 = 1, \dots, M_1 + 1$ )
4:    $\mathcal{S}_{1, l_2, l_3, \dots, l_d} += s_{j_1, l_2, l_3, \dots, l_d}, \forall l_k \in \{1, 2, \dots, M_k + 1\}, k \in \{2, 3, \dots, d\}$  ▷ Here
    $\mathcal{S}_{1, l_2, l_3, \dots, l_d} = \sum_{l_1=1}^{j_1} s_{l_1, l_2, \dots, l_d}, \forall l_k \in \{1, 2, \dots, M_k + 1\}, k \in \{2, 3, \dots, d\}$ 
5:    $\mathcal{S}_{2, l_3, \dots, l_d} = 0$ 
6:   for do ( $j_2 = 1, \dots, M_2 + 1$ )
7:      $\mathcal{S}_{2, l_3, \dots, l_d} += \mathcal{S}_{1, j_2, l_3, \dots, l_d}, \forall l_k \in \{1, 2, \dots, M_k + 1\}, k \in \{3, \dots, d\}$  ▷ Here
      $\mathcal{S}_{2, l_3, \dots, l_d} = \sum_{l_1=1}^{j_1} \sum_{l_2=1}^{j_2} s_{l_1, l_2, \dots, l_d}, \forall l_k \in \{1, \dots, M_k + 1\}, k \in \{3, \dots, d\}$ 
8:      $\mathcal{S}_d = 0$ 
9:     for do ( $j_d = 1, \dots, M_d + 1$ )
10:       $\mathcal{S}_d += \mathcal{S}_{d-1, j_d}$ 
11:    ▷ Here  $\mathcal{S}_d = \sum_{l_1=1}^{j_1} \sum_{l_2=1}^{j_2} \dots \sum_{l_d=1}^{j_d} s_{l_1, l_2, \dots, l_d} \triangleright = F_N(z_{1, j_1}, z_{2, j_2}, \dots, z_{d, j_d}) = F_N(z)$  from
      equation (4.35)
12:    end for
13:  end for
14: end for
15: return  $F_N(z)$  for all  $z \in \mathbf{z}$ 

```

4.8.3 Divide and conquere approach

Consider the case when the evaluation points z_j are equal to the input points x_i . The calculation of the ECDFs $\{F_N(x_i)\}_{i=1, N}$ (equation (4.27)) corresponds to a domination problem in dimension d . An algorithm based on a recursive divide-and-conquer sequence has first been proposed in [6] for this problem. An adaptation was proposed in [9] to solve this problem for the case of the calculation of conditional expectation using Malliavin weights. The computational complexity was shown to be $O(c(d)N \log(N)^{(d-1)\vee 1})$. We don't detail here the algorithm and the reader interested can refer to [30].

4.8.4 C++ API for fast summation method

The constructor allows to define the Laplacian kernel regressor with the fast summation method:

```

1 LaplacianGridKernelRegression(const bool &p_bZeroDate,
2                               const Eigen::ArrayXXd &p_particles,
3                               const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_h,
4                               const double &p_coefNbGridPoint,
5                               const bool &p_bLinear);

```

where

- `p_bZeroDate` is true if the regression date is 0,
- `p_particles` the particles X_t for all simulations (dimension of X_t for first dimension, number of Monte Carlo simulations in second dimension),
- `p_h` bandwidth array per dimension.

- `p_coefNbGridPoint` is a multiplying factor defining the number of points z used for the multi-grid approximation. The total number of points on the rectilinear grid is the number of samples by `p_coefNbGridPoint`.
- `p_bLinear` when set to `false` indicates that the simple estimate of the density of the kernel (4.8) is used. When `p_bLinear` is `true`, the linear regression of the kernel (4.9) is used.

Below we give a small example where `toRegress` corresponds to $g(t + h, X_{t+h})$ for all simulations and `x` store X_t for all simulations.

```

1
2 // t is not zero
3 bool bZeroDate = false;
4
5 // use linear regression
6 bool bLinear = true;
7
8 // bandwidth
9 ArrayXd hB = ArrayXd::Constant(1, p_h);
10
11 // test regression object
12 double q = 50; // coeff for the number of grid points used
13 LaplacianGridKernelRegression kernelReg(bZeroDate, x, hB, q, bLinear);
14
15 // regress on grid
16 ArrayXd regressed = kernelReg.getAllSimulations(y);

```

4.8.5 Python API for fast summation method

For example, using the linear regressor we get the following python code:

```

1 import StOptReg
2 nbSimul = 100000;
3 np.random.seed(1000)
4 x = np.random.uniform(-1.,1.,size=(1,nbSimul));
5 # real function
6 toReal = (4+x[0,:]+(3+x[0,])*(2+x[0,:]))
7 # function to regress
8 toRegress = toReal + 4*np.random.normal(0.,1,nbSimul)
9 # bandwidth
10 bandwidth = 0.05*np.ones(1)
11 # multiplicative for rectilinear grid
12 coeffMul = 2
13 # Linear or constant regressions
14 bLinear= False
15 # Regressor
16 regressor = StOptReg.LaplacianGridKernelRegression(False,x,bandwidth, coeffMul,
17 bLinear)
18 # test particules
19 y = regressor.getAllSimulations(toRegress).transpose()

```

4.8.6 C++ API for exact divid and conquer method

The constructor allows to defines the Laplacian kernel regressor with the divide and conquer method and a constant regression

```

1 LaplacianConstKernelRegression(const bool &p_bZeroDate,
2                               const std::shared_ptr< Eigen::ArrayXXd > &p_particles,
3                               const double &p_h);

```

where

- `p_bZeroDate` is `true` if the regression date is 0,
- `p_particles` the particles X_t for all simulations (dimension of X_t for first dimension, number of Monte Carlo simulations in second dimension),
- `p_h` bandwidth array per dimension.

And the following one deals with the linear regression case.

```
1 LaplacianLinearKernelRegression(const bool &p_bZeroDate,
2                               const std::shared_ptr< Eigen::ArrayXXd > &p_particles,
3                               const double &p_h);
```

where

- `p_bZeroDate` is `true` if the regression date is 0,
- `p_particles` the particles X_t for all simulations (dimension of X_t for first dimension, number of Monte Carlo simulations in second dimension),
- `p_h` bandwidth array per dimension.

4.8.7 Python API for exact divid and conquer method

As usual, the python constructor is similar to the c++ constructor. For example, using the linear regressor we get the following python code:

```
1 import StOptReg
2 nbSimul = 100000;
3 np.random.seed(1000)
4 x = np.random.uniform(-1.,1.,size=(1,nbSimul));
5 # real function
6 toReal = (4+x[0,:]+(3+x[0,:])*(2+x[0,:]))
7 # function to regress
8 toRegress = toReal + 4*np.random.normal(0.,1,nbSimul)
9 # bandwidth
10 bandwidth = 0.05*np.ones(1)
11 # Regressor
12 regressor = StOptReg.LaplacianConstKernelRegression(False,x,bandwidth)
13 # test particles
14 y = regressor.getAllSimulations(toRegress).transpose()
```


Chapter 5

Calculating conditional expectation by trees

A popular method for calculating conditional expectation is to use scenario trees. In the financial community, binary and trinomial trees are generally used to evaluate options. When the asset is modeled by a Black Scholes model, a binary model is used, while a trinomial model is used to model the average reversion using a Vaciseck model for interest rate, for example [24]. An example of a trinomial tree is given in the figure 5.1 for an Ornstein–Uhlenbeck model (so in dimension 1). This tree models the possible evolution of

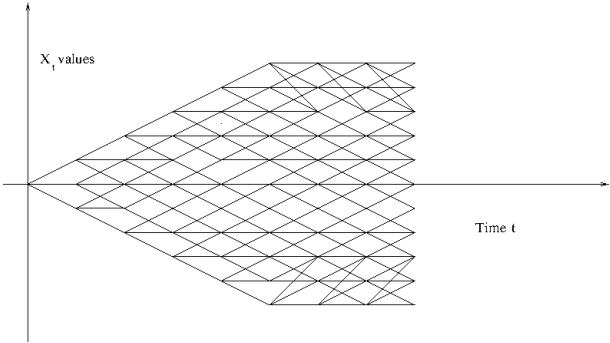


Figure 5.1: Trinomial tree

a state X_t in dimension 1 and each node corresponds to a possible value of X_t . These trees recombine. The nodes at each dates i are numbered from 0 to $N_i - 1$ with increasing values X_t^i of the state.

From a node i on a date t , 3 nodes can be reached on the date $t + 1$. The probability transition from going to a node down $f(i, t) - 1$ is $p_d^{t,i}$ while the probability of going to a middle node $f(i, t)$ is $p_m^{t,i}$ and the probability of going to a node up to $f(i, t) + 1$ is $p_u^{t,i}$.

The conditional expectation of a function with the values $g_j^{t+1} = g(X_{t+1}^j)$ at the node j on the date $i + 1$ is simply given by:

$$\mathbb{E}[g(X_{t+1})/X_t = X_t^i] \simeq p_d^{t,i} g_{f(t,i)-1}^{t+1} + p_m^{t,i} g_{f(t,i)}^{t+1} + p_u^{t,i} g_{f(t,i)+1}^{t+1} \tag{5.1}$$

In the literature, non-recombining scenario trees are used by the discrete stochastic optimization community. These non-recombining trees can be obtained by reducing certain

recombining trees (see [22] for example, or [28] for a more recent survey developing algorithm minimizing the Kantorovich or Wasserstein metric between the initial tree and a subtree of the initial tree). An example of non-recombining tree is given in the figure 5.2.

On figure 5.2, assuming that X_2 has the possible values Y_2, Y_3 at node 2 and 3, assuming

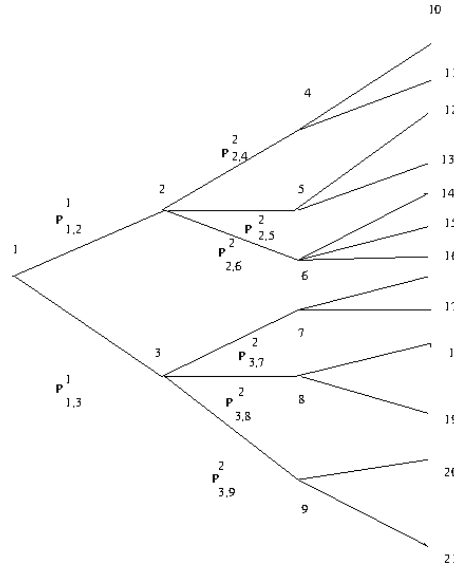


Figure 5.2: Non-recombining tree

that X_3 have discrete values at nodes $4, \dots, 9$ on the date $t = 3$ and that values of $g(X_3)$ have the value g_i at the node i on the date 3, then

$$\mathbb{E}[g(X_3/X_2 = Y_3)] = P_{3,7}g_7 + P_{3,8}g_8 + P_{3,9}g_9 \quad (5.2)$$

5.0.1 C++ API

Calculation of conditional expectation

As explained, conditional expectations are easy to calculate with trees. The library provides an object `Tree` allowing to make such calculations.

```
1 Tree(const std::vector<double> &p_proba, const std::vector< std::vector< std::array<int, 2> > > &p_connected)
```

with

- `p_proba` a probability vector at a given date defining the probability transition between the nodes at the current date and the nodes at the next date.
- `p_connected` the connection between the nodes and the index in the probability vector.

`p_proba[p_connected[i][j].second]`

is the probability of going from the node i at the current date to the node `p_connected[i][j].first` at the next date. So `p_connected[i].size()` gives the number of nodes connected to the node i .

For regression objects, some methods are provided to calculate conditional expectations:

- `expCond` takes an Eigen array with the size equal to the number of nodes at the next date and calculates the conditional expectation of the node values of current date,
- `expCondMultiple` does the same so that several functions regress (size of the number of functions by number of nodes at the following date) and return a two-dimensional Eigen array (size of functions by number of nodes at the current date).

Python API

The python interface for tree is obtained importing the `StOptTree` module. An example taking a trinomial simulator is given below

```
1      # Mean Reverting model
2      mr = 0.3;
3      sig = 0.6;
4
5      # nb grid points
6      nbStock=4
7
8      # step
9      dt = 1. / 100.
10
11     # simulation dates
12     dates = dt * np.arange(0,16)
13
14     # simulaton dates
15     tree = Simulators.TrinomialTreeOUSimulator(mr, sig, dates)
16
17     iFirst = 10
18     iLast = 14
19
20     # nodes at dates 5
21     points = tree.getPoints(iFirst)
22
23     # nodes at last date
24     pointsNext = tree.getPoints(iLast)
25
26     # probabilities
27     proba = tree.getProbability(iFirst, iLast)
28
29     # connection matrix
30     connectAndProba = tree.calConnected(proba);
31
32     # to regress
33     toTreeress= np.zeros( (nbStock, np.shape(pointsNext)[1]))
34     for i in range(nbStock):
35         toTreeress[i,:] = i + pointsNext[0,:]
36
37     # grid for storage
38     grid = StOptGrids.RegularSpaceGrid(np.array([0.]), np.array([1.]), np.array([
39         nbStock - 1]))
40
41     # conditional expectation object by trees
42     tree= StOptTree.Tree(connectAndProba[1],connectAndProba[0])
43
44     # conditional expectation taken
45     valTree = tree.expCondMultiple(toTreeress)
```

Chapter 6

Continuation values objects and similar ones

In the first part, we develop the different continuation objects by using regression to calculate conditional expectations. Next, we explain the structure of the continuation object with tree to calculate the conditional expectations.

6.1 Continuation values objects with regression methods

In the first part we describe a way to store and use continuation values calculated when using regression methods to estimate conditional expectations. In a second part, we introduce an object used to interpolate a function both discretized on grids for its deterministic part and estimated by regressor for its stochastic part. The second object is similar to the first in spirit, but being dedicated to interpolation is more effective to use in simulations performed after the optimization part of a problem.

A third object is the continuation cut object used to approximate the concave or convex Bellman values by cuts.

It is used when the transition problem is solved using a LP.

6.1.1 Continuation values object

A special case is the case where the state $X^{x,t}$ in the equation (2.1) can be separated into two parts $X^{x,t} = (X_1^{x,t}, X_2^{x,t})$ where

1. the first part is given by the following equation

$$dX_{s,1}^{x,t} = b(t, X_{s,1}^{x,t})ds + \sigma(s, X_{s,1}^{x,t})dW_s \quad (6.1)$$

and is not controlled: the stochastic process is exogenous,

2. the second part is given by the following equation

$$dX_{s,2}^{x,t} = b_a(t)ds \quad (6.2)$$

so that $X_2^{x,t}$ is a degenerate version of 2.1 without distribution, a representing the control.

This first case is encountered, for example, in the valuation of American options in finance. In this case, $X_1^{x,t}$ contains the values of the assets involved in the option and $X_2^{x,t}$ is for example an integer value process equal to one if the option is not exercised and to 0 if it has already been exercised.

Another classical case that occurs when dealing with stocks for example is a gas storage valuation. In this simple case, the process $X_1^{x,t}$ is the market value of the gas and $X_2^{x,t}$ is the position (in volume) in the gas storage. The library proposes to store the conditional expectation for all states $X_2^{x,t}$.

- $X_2^{x,t}$ will be stored at the points of the grid (see section 3)
- for each point i of the grid the conditional expectation of a function $g_i(X_2^{x,t})$ associated with the point i using a regressor (see section 3) can be calculated and stored so that the continuation value C is a function of $(X_1^{x,t}, X_2^{x,t})$.

C++ API

Regarding regressions, two constructors are provided

- The first is the default construction: it is used in the simulation algorithm with the `loadForSimulation` method to store the basis coefficients α_k^i for the grid point i (see the equation (4.1)),
- The second

```

1 ContinuationValue(const shared_ptr< SpaceGrid > & p_grid ,
2                  const shared_ptr< BaseRegression > & p_condExp ,
3                  const Eigen::ArrayXXd &p_cash)

```

with

- `p_grid` the grids associated to the deterministic control space,
- `p_condExp` the conditional expectation operator
- `p_cash` the function to regress as a function of the grid position (first dimension the number of simulations, second dimension the size of the grid)

This constructor builds for all point i all the α_k^i (see equation (4.1)).

The main methods provided are:

- a first method used in simulation allowing to load for the grid point i the coefficient α_k^i associated with the function g_i ,

```

1 void loadForSimulation(const shared_ptr< SpaceGrid > & p_grid ,
2                       const shared_ptr< BaseRegression > & p_condExp ,
3                       const Eigen::ArrayXXd &p_values)

```

with

- `p_grid` the grid associated with the controlled deterministic space,
 - `p_condExp` the conditional expectation operator,
 - `p_values` the α_k^i for all grid points i (size the number of basis function, the number of grid points)
- a second method taking as input a point to be interpolated in the grid and returning the conditional expectation at the interpolated point for all simulations:

```
1 Eigen::ArrayXd getAllSimulations(const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_ptOfStock)
```

- a method taking as input an interpolator in the grid and returning the conditional expectation for all simulations at the interpolated point used to build the interpolator:

```
1 Eigen::ArrayXd getAllSimulations(const Interpolator &p_interpol)
```

- a method taking as input a simulation number used in optimization and a point used to interpolate in the grid and returning the conditional expectation at the interpolated point for the given simulation used in optimization.

```
1 double getASimulation(const int &p_isim, const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_ptOfStock)
```

- a method taking as input a simulation number used in optimization and an interpolator in the grid and returning the conditional expectation at the interpolated point used to construct the interpolator for the given simulation used in optimization:

```
1 double getASimulation(const int &p_isim, const Interpolator &p_interpol)
```

- a method which calculates the conditional expectation for a sample of $X_1^{x,t}$:

```
1 double getValue(const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_ptOfStock, const Eigen::ArrayXd &
  p_coordinates) const
```

where:

- `p_ptOfStock` the point where we interpolate the conditional expectation (a realization of $X_2^{x,t}$)
- `p_coordinates` the sample of $X_1^{x,t}$ used to estimate the conditional expectation
- and the function returns $C(X_1^{x,t}, X_2^{x,t})$.

Below we regress an identical function for all the points of the grid (here a grid of 4 points in dimension 1):

```
1 int sizeForStock = 4;
2 // second member to regress with a stock
3 ArrayXXd toRegress = ArrayXXd::Constant(p_nbSimul, sizeForStock, 1.);
4 // grid for stock
5 Eigen::ArrayXd lowValues(1), step(1);
6 lowValues(0) = 0. ;
7 step(0) = 1;
8 Eigen::ArrayXi nbStep(1);
9 nbStep(0) = sizeForStock - 1;
10 // grid
```

```

11     shared_ptr< RegularSpaceGrid > regular = MyMakeShared<RegularSpaceGrid>(lowValues ,
12         step, nbStep);
13     // conditional expectation (local basis functions)
14     ArrayXi nbMesh = ArrayXi::Constant(p_nDim, p_nbMesh);
15     shared_ptr<LocalLinearRegression> localRegressor = MyMakeShared<
16         LocalLinearRegression>(false, x, nbMesh);
17
18     // create continuation value object
19     ContinuationValue continuation(regular, localRegressor, toRegress);
20
21     // regress with continuation value object
22     ArrayXd ptStock(1) ;
23     ptStock(0) = sizeForStock / 2; // point where we regress
24     // compute regression values for the current point for all the simulations
25     ArrayXd regressedByContinuation = continuation.getAllSimulations(ptStock);

```

Python API

Here is an example of the use of the mapping

```

1 # Copyright (C) 2016 EDF
2 # All Rights Reserved
3 # This code is published under the GNU Lesser General Public License (GNU LGPL)
4 import numpy as np
5 import unittest
6 import random
7 import math
8
9
10 # unit test for continuation values
11 #####
12
13 class testContValues(unittest.TestCase):
14
15     # test a regular grid for stocks and a local function basis for regression
16     def testSimpleGridsAndRegressor(self):
17         import StOptGrids
18         import StOptReg
19         # low value for the meshes
20         lowValues =np.array([1.,2.,3.],dtype=np.float)
21         # size of the meshes
22         step = np.array([0.7,2.3,1.9],dtype=np.float)
23         # number of steps
24         nbStep = np.array([3,2,4], dtype=np.int32)
25         # create the regular grid
26         #####
27         grid = StOptGrids.RegularSpaceGrid(lowValues,step,nbStep)
28         # simulation
29         nbSimul =10000
30         np.random.seed(1000)
31         x = np.random.uniform(-1.,1.,size=(1,nbSimul));
32         # mesh
33         nbMesh = np.array([16],dtype=np.int32)
34         # Create the regressor
35         #####
36         regressor = StOptReg.LocalLinearRegression(False,x,nbMesh)
37         # regressed values
38         toReal = (2+x[0,:]+(1+x[0,:])*(1+x[0,:]))
39         # function to regress
40         toRegress = toReal + 4*np.random.normal(0.,1,nbSimul)
41         # create a matrix (number of stock points by number of simulations)
42         toRegressMult = np.zeros(shape=(len(toRegress),grid.getNbPoints()))
43         for i in range(toRegressMult.shape[1]):
44             toRegressMult[:,i] = toRegress
45         # Now create the continuation object
46         #####

```

```

47     contOb = StOptReg.ContinuationValue(grid,regressor,toRegressMult)
48     # get back the regressed values at the point stock
49     ptStock= np.array([1.2,3.1,5.9],dtype=np.float)
50     regressValues = contOb.getAllSimulations(ptStock)
51     # do the same with an interpolator
52     interp = grid.createInterpolator(ptStock)
53     regressValuesInterp = contOb.getAllSimulations(interp)
54     # test create of an interpoaltion object mixing grids for stocks and regression for
55     #      uncertainties
56     #####
57     gridAndRegressed = StOptReg.GridAndRegressedValue(grid,regressor,toRegressMult)
58     # get back the regressed value for a point stock and an uncertainty
59     valRegressed = gridAndRegressed.getValue(ptStock, x[:,0])
60
61     # test some mapping of GneralSpaceGrid
62     def testGeneralGridInheritance(self):
63         from StOptGrids import GeneralSpaceGrid, RegularSpaceGrid
64         from StOptReg import LocalLinearRegression, ContinuationValue
65
66         x = np.random.randn(5)
67         regressor = LocalLinearRegression([1])
68
69         regular = RegularSpaceGrid(np.array([0.]), np.array([0.5]), np.array([3]))
70         ContinuationValue(regular, regressor, x)
71
72         general = GeneralSpaceGrid([[0., 1., 1.2, 1.5]])
73         ContinuationValue(general, regressor, x)
74
75 if __name__ == '__main__':
76     unittest.main()

```

6.1.2 The GridAndRegressedValue object

As explained above, when we want to interpolate a partially discretized function on a grid and by regression, a specific object can be used. As for the continuation object, it has a `getValue` to estimate the function at a state with both a deterministic and a stochastic part.

C++ API

The object has five constructors and we have only described the two most commonly used:

- The first one

```

1     GridAndRegressedValue(const std::shared_ptr< SpaceGrid > &p_grid ,
2                          const std::shared_ptr< BaseRegression > &p_reg,
3                          const Eigen::ArrayXXd &p_values)

```

with

- `p_grid` the grid associated to the deterministic control space,
- `p_reg` the regressor object
- `p_values` the functions at certain points of the deterministic and stochastic grid.

- A second constructor stores only the grid and the regressor:


```

1 GridAndRegressedValue(const std::shared_ptr< SpaceGrid > &p_grid ,
2                       const std::shared_ptr< BaseRegression > &p_reg)

```

The main methods are the following ones:

- the main method for calculating the function $C(X_{1,s}^{x,t}, X_{2,s}^{x,t})$ value for a point $X_s^{x,t} = (X_{1,s}^{x,t}, X_{2,s}^{x,t})$ where $X_{2,s}^{x,t}$ is on the grid and $X_{1,s}^{x,t}$ is the part treated by regression.

```

1 double getValue(const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_ptOfStock, const Eigen::ArrayXd &
   p_coordinates) const

```

where:

- `p_ptOfStock` $X_{2,s}^{x,t}$ part of $X_s^{x,t}$
- `p_coordinates` $X_{1,s}^{x,t}$ part of $X_s^{x,t}$.

- the method `getRegressedValues` which allows to obtain all the regression coefficients for all points of the grid. The returned array has a size (base number of function, number of points on the grid)

```

1 Eigen::ArrayXXd getRegressedValues() const

```

- the method `setRegressedValues` allows to store all the values of the regressed coefficients on a grid of a function of $X_s^{x,t} = (X_{1,s}^{x,t}, X_{2,s}^{x,t})$.

```

1 void setRegressedValues(const Eigen::ArrayXXd &p_regValues)

```

where `p_regValues` has a size (number of function basis, number of points on the grid).

Python API

The python API is similar to that of the `ContinuationValue` object (see Section 6.1.1).

6.1.3 The continuation cut object

Suppose that the control problem is continuous and that the state of the system has the dynamics given by (6.1) et (6.2). This is the case for certain modeled storage associated with the maximization of a certain objective function. The Bellman value associated with this problem is then concave. For a given value of a margin process $X_{s,1}^{x,t}$, the Bellman curve can be approximated by cuts (see 6.1) By solving a PL for a given uncertainty and state in the storage levels \hat{y}_i in dimension d , we obtain a cut

$$\kappa(X_{s,1}^{x,t}, y) = a_0(X_{s,1}^{x,t}) + \sum_{i=1}^g a_i(X_{s,1}^{x,t})(y_i - \hat{y}_i)$$

For $s' \leq s$ a conditional cut can be obtained by calculating

$$\theta(X_{s',1}^{x,t}, y) = \mathbb{E} \left[a_0(X_{s,1}^{x,t}) | X_{s',1}^{x,t} \right] + \sum_{i=1}^d \mathbb{E} \left[a_i(X_{s,1}^{x,t}) | X_{s',1}^{x,t} \right] (y_i - \hat{y}_i)$$

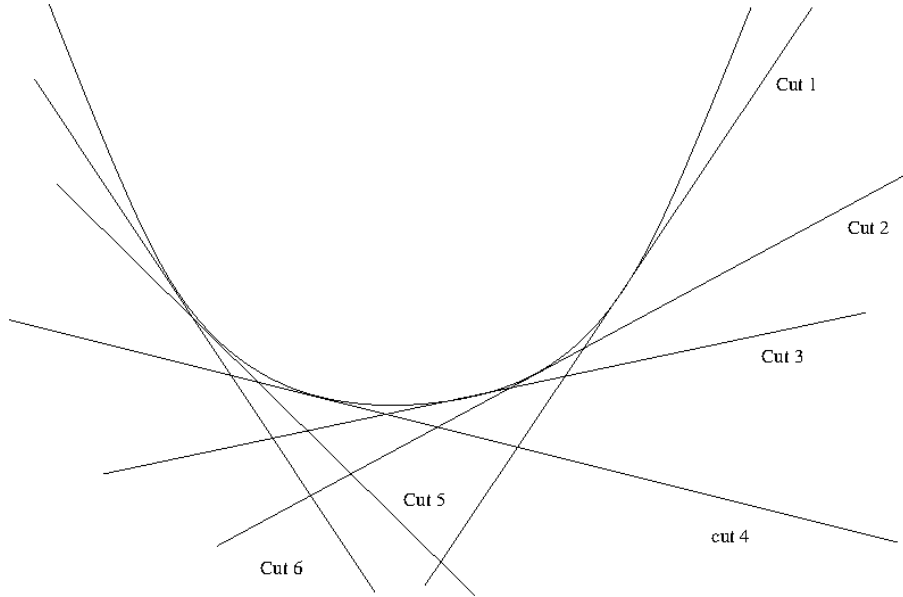


Figure 6.1: Bellman cuts

Using a regressor (see chapter 4) it is possible to represent each conditional cut on a basis for $j = 0, \dots, d$.

$$\mathbb{E} \left[a_i(X_{s,1}^{x,t}) | X_{s',1}^{x,t} \right] = \sum_{j=1}^N a_{i,j} \psi_j(X_{s',1}^{x,t}) \quad (6.3)$$

where ψ_j corresponds to a basis function.

C++ API

The first is the default construction: it is used in the simulation algorithm with the `load ForSimulation` method to store the database. Regarding regressions, two constructors are provided

- The first is the default construction: it is used in simulation algorithm with the `load ForSimulation` method to store the basis coefficients $a_{i,j}^k$ for the grid point k ,
- The second is

```

1 ContinuationCuts(const shared_ptr< SpaceGrid > & p_grid ,
2                 const shared_ptr< BaseRegression > & p_condExp ,
3                 const Eigen::ArrayXXd &p_values)

```

with

- `p_grid` the grids associated with the deterministic control space,
- `p_condExp` the conditional expectation operator

- **p_values** the coefficients of the cut to regress according to the position of the grid (first dimension the number of simulations by the number of components of the cut (nb storage+1), second dimension the size of the grid)

This constructor builds for all stock points the coefficients $a_{i,j}$ of the cuts (6.3). Note that for a stock point k with the coordinates y^k , the stored coefficients are $\hat{a}_{0,j}^k = a_{0,j}^k - \sum_{i=1}^d a_{i,j}^k y_i^k$ and the $\hat{a}_{i,j}^k = a_{i,j}^k$, $i = 1, \dots, d$. The conditional cut can then be written:

$$\theta(X_{s',1}^{x,t}, y) = \sum_{j=1}^N \hat{a}_{0,j} \psi_j(X_{s',1}^{x,t}) + \sum_{i=1}^d \sum_{j=1}^N \hat{a}_{i,j} \psi_j(X_{s',1}^{x,t}) y_i$$

The main methods provided are:

- a first method used in simulation allowing to load for the grid point i the coefficient α_k^i associated with the function g_i ,

```

1 void loadForSimulation(const shared_ptr< SpaceGrid > & p_grid ,
2                       const shared_ptr< BaseRegression > & p_condExp ,
3                       const Eigen::Array<Eigen::ArrayXXd> &p_values)

```

with

- **p_grid** the grid associated with the controlled deterministic space,
- **p_condExp** the conditional expectation operator,
- **p_values** the $a_{i,j}$ coefficients to reconstruct the cuts: its size corresponds to the number of cutting coefficients. The i element of **p_values** then allows you to store the coefficients $a_{i,j}$ for $j = 1, \dots, N$ and all stock points.
- a second method taking as input the description of a hypercube (nb storages,2) described by its extreme coordinates:

- The coordinate (i,0) corresponds to the minimum coordinate value in dimension i
- The coordinate (i,1) corresponds to the maximum coordinate value in dimension i

```

1 Eigen::ArrayXXd getCutsAllSimulations(const Eigen::ArrayXXd &p_hypStock) const

```

It return an array of cuts coefficients for all particles state stored in its BaseRegression member.

- The first dimension corresponds to the number of cut coefficients by the number of simulations.
- The second dimension corresponds to the number of points in the hypercube **p_hypStock**.
- a method to obtain an array of cuts for a given uncertainty.

```

1 Eigen::ArrayXXd getCutsASim(const Eigen::ArrayXXd &p_hypStock, const Eigen::
  ArrayXd &p_coordinates) const

```

where:

- `p_hypStock` corresponds to a hypercube used to select certain stock points as before,
- `p_coordinates` corresponds to the coordinates of the uncertainty to be considered.

It returns an array with in first dimension the cut coefficient number, the second dimension corresponds to the number of the cut (corresponding to a stock point in the hypercube).

- a method that permits to get the coefficients calculated.

```

1 const Eigen::Array< Eigen::ArrayXXd, Eigen::Dynamic, 1 > &getValues() const

```

Python API

Here is an example of the use of the mapping

```

1 # Copyright (C) 2016 EDF
2 # All Rights Reserved
3 # This code is published under the GNU Lesser General Public License (GNU LGPL)
4 import numpy as np
5 import unittest
6 import random
7 import math
8 import StOptGrids
9 import StOptReg
10
11
12 # unit test for continuation values
13 #####
14
15 class testContValues(unittest.TestCase):
16
17     # unit test for continuation cuts
18     def testSimpleGridsAndRegressor(self):
19         # low value for the meshes
20         lowValues = np.array([1.,2.,3.], dtype=np.float)
21         # size of the meshes
22         step = np.array([0.7,2.3,1.9], dtype=np.float)
23         # number of steps
24         nbStep = np.array([3,2,4], dtype=np.int32)
25         # create the regular grid
26         #####
27         grid = StOptGrids.RegularSpaceGrid(lowValues, step, nbStep)
28         # simulation
29         nbSimul = 10000
30         np.random.seed(1000)
31         x = np.random.uniform(-1.,1., size=(1, nbSimul));
32         # mesh
33         nbMesh = np.array([16], dtype=np.int32)
34         # Create the regressor
35         #####
36         regressor = StOptReg.LocalLinearRegression(False, x, nbMesh)
37         # regressed values
38         toReal = (2+x[0,:]+(1+x[0,:])*(1+x[0,:]))

```

```

39     # function to regress
40     toRegress = toReal + 4*np.random.normal(0.,1,nbSimul)
41     # fictitious cuts with 0 sensibility (1 dimension)
42     toRegressCuts = np.zeros(shape=(4*len(toRegress),grid.getNbPoints()))
43     for i in range(toRegressCuts.shape[1]):
44         toRegressCuts[:,len(toRegress),i] = toRegress
45
46     # Now create the continuation cut object
47     #####
48     contOb = StOptReg.ContinuationCut(grid,regressor,toRegressCuts)
49     hyperCube = np.array([[lowValues[0],lowValues[0]+step[0]*nbStep[0]],
50                          [lowValues[1],lowValues[1]+step[1]*nbStep[1]],
51                          [lowValues[2],lowValues[2]+step[2]*nbStep[2]]])
52     regressCuts = contOb.getCutsAllSimulations(hyperCube)
53
54
55 if __name__ == '__main__':
56     unittest.main()

```

6.2 Continuation objects and associated with trees

6.2.1 Continuation object

Likewise, instead of using a regressor, a tree can be used to create a continuation object.

C++ API

As for the object `ContinuationValue`, two constructors are provided:

- A default constructor, allowing to load the grid coefficients at each node of the tree with the `loadForSimulation` method,
- And the second:

```

1     ContinuationValueTree(const std::shared_ptr< SpaceGrid > &p_grid,
2                          const std::shared_ptr< Tree > &p_condExp,
3                          const Eigen::ArrayXXd &p_valuesNextDate)

```

with

- `p_grid` the grids associated with the deterministic control space,
- `p_condExp` the tree object used to calculate the conditional expectation: by taking a few values defined at the nodes of the following date, it calculates the expected values conditional on each node at the current date.
- `p_valuesNext` the value of the function at the following date (first dimension the number of nodes on the following date, second dimension the size of the grid)

The main methods provided are:

- a first method used in simulation allowing to load for the grid point i the expected value of the function g_i (valuesNextDate) for all the nodes in the tree at the current date,

```
1 void loadForSimulation(const shared_ptr< SpaceGrid > & p_grid ,const Eigen::
    ArrayXXd &p_values)
```

with

- `p_grid` the grid associated with the controlled deterministic space,
- `p_values` the continuation values for all the nodes and stock points (size: the number of nodes by number of grid points at the current date)

- a second method taking as input a point to be interpolated in the grid and returning the conditional expectation at the interpolated point for all nodes:

```
1 Eigen::ArrayXd getValueAtNodes(const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_ptOfStock)
```

- a method taking as input an interpolator in the grid and returning the conditional expectation for all the nodes at the interpolated point used to build the interpolator:

```
1 Eigen::ArrayXd getValueAtNodes(const Interpolator &p_interpol)
```

- a method taking as input a node number used in optimization and a point used to interpolate in the grid and returning the conditional expectation at the interpolated point for the given node used in optimization.

```
1 double getValueAtANode(const int &p_node, const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_ptOfStock)
```

- a method taking as input a simulation number used in optimization and an interpolator in the grid and returning the conditional expectation at the interpolated point used to build the interpolator for the given node used in optimization:

```
1 double getValueAtANode(const int &p_node, const Interpolator &p_interpol)
```

- a method which makes it possible to recover all the conditional expectations for all the nodes:

```
1 double getValues() const
```

Python API

Used when importing the `StOptTree` module, the syntax is similar to that of `c++`. Following examples in the section 5.0.1;

```
1 # continuation object
2 continuation = StOptTree.ContinuationValueTree(grid, tree, toTreeress.transpose())
3
4 # interpolation point
5 ptStock = np.array([0.5*nbStock])
6
7 # conditional expectation using continuation object
8 treeByContinuation = continuation.getValueAtNodes(ptStock);
```

6.2.2 GridTreeValues

This object allows you to interpolate in certain grid values for a function defined at the node values and the grid values.

The constructor

```
1 GridTreeValue(const std::shared_ptr< SpaceGrid > &p_grid,  
2 const Eigen::ArrayXXd &p_values)
```

where:

- `p_grid` the grids associated with the deterministic control space,
- `p_values` value to store at nodes and on grid (size : number of nodes at the current date by number of points in the grid)

The methods:

- The following is used to interpolate at a given stock point for a given node

```
1 double getValue(const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_ptOfStock, const int &p_node) const
```

- `p_ptOfStock` corresponds to a value of $X_{2,s}^{x,t}$ part of $X_s^{x,t}$
- `p_node` node number in the tree describing $X_{1,s}^{x,t}$

- The second gives the interpolated values at all the nodes

```
1 Eigen::ArrayXd getValues(const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_ptOfStock) const
```

Python API

Importing the `StOptTree`, previous constructor and methods are available.

6.2.3 Continuation Cut with trees

As for the regressor (section 6.1.3), we can provide cuts during the approximation of a concave or convex function at each node of the tree.

C++ API

- The first is the default construction: it is used in the simulation algorithm with the `loadForSimulation` method to load the values at the grid points nodes,
- The second

```
1 ContinuationCutsTree(const std::shared_ptr< SpaceGrid > &p_grid,  
2 const std::shared_ptr< Tree > &p_condExp,  
3 const Eigen::ArrayXXd &p_values)
```

with

- `p_grid` the grids associated to the controlled deterministic space,
- `p_condExp` the conditional expectation operator for tree
- `p_values` the coefficients of the cut of which we take conditional expectation depending on the grid position (first dimension the number of nodes by the number of components of the cut (nb storage+1), second dimension the grid size)

This constructor constructs for all stock points the coefficients of the cuts a_i for $i = 0, d$. Notice that for a stock point k with coordinates y^k , the coefficients stored are $\hat{a}_0^k = a_0^k - \sum_{i=1}^d a_i^k y_i^k$ and the $\hat{a}_i^k = a_i^k$, $i = 1, \dots, d$ such that a cut has an affine representation at a point y : $\hat{a}_0^k + \sum_{i=1}^d \hat{a}_i^k y_i$.

The main methods provided are:

- a first method used in simulation permitting to load for grid point i the cuts values at nodes.

```
1 void loadForSimulation(const shared_ptr< SpaceGrid > & p_grid ,
2                       const shared_ptr< Tree > & p_condExp,
3                       const const std::vector< Eigen::ArrayXXd > &p_values)
```

with

- `p_grid` the grid associated to the controlled deterministic space,
- `p_condExp` the conditional expectation operator by tree,
- `p_values` the a_i coefficients to reconstruct the cuts: its size corresponds to the number of cut coefficients. Then the element i of `p_values` permits to store the a_i coefficients for all nodes and all stock points.

- a second method taking as input a description of an hypercube (nb storages,2) describes by its extreme coordinates:

- (i,0) coordinate corresponds to minimal coordinate value in dimension i
- (i,1) coordinate corresponds to maximal coordinate value in dimension i

```
1 Eigen::ArrayXXd getCutsAllNodes(const Eigen::ArrayXXd &p_hypStock) const
```

It return an array of cuts coefficients for all nodes in the tree at grid points inside the hypercube.

- First dimension corresponds to the number of cuts coefficients by the number of nodes.
- The second dimension corresponds to the number of points in the hypercube `p_hypStock`.

- a method to get an array of cuts for a give node.

```
1 Eigen::ArrayXXd getCutsANode(const Eigen::ArrayXXd &p_hypStock, const int &p_node
) const
```


where:

- `p_hypStock` corresponds to an hypercube used to select some stock points as previously,
- `p_node` corresponds to the node number in the tree.

It returns an array with in first dimension the cut coefficient number, the second dimension correspond to the number of the cut (corresponding to a stock point in the hypercube).

- a method that permits to get the coefficients calculated.

```
1  const std::vector< Eigen::ArrayXXd>      getValues() const
```

Python API

Importing the `StOptTree` module, the `ContinuationCutsTree` object is available in python.

Part III

Solving optimization problems with dynamic programming methods

Chapter 7

Creating simulators

In order to optimize the control problem, the user has to develop some simulators permitting to draw some trajectories of the uncertainties. This trajectories are used while optimizing or in a simulation part testing the optimal control.

7.1 Simulators for regression methods

In the sequel, we suppose that we have developed a Simulator generating some Monte Carlo simulations at the different optimization dates. In order to use the different frameworks developed in the sequel we suppose that the Simulator is derived from the abstract class `SimulatorDPBase`.

```
1 // Copyright (C) 2016 EDF
2 // All Rights Reserved
3 // This code is published under the GNU Lesser General Public License (GNU LGPL)
4 #ifndef SIMULATORDPBASE_H
5 #define SIMULATORDPBASE_H
6 #include <Eigen/Dense>
7
8 /* \file SimulatorDPBase.h
9  * \brief Abstract class for simulators for Dynamic Programming Programms
10  * \author Xavier Warin
11  */
12
13 namespace StOpt
14 {
15     /// \class SimulatorDPBase SimulatorDPBase.h
16     /// Abstract class for simulator used in dynamic programming
17     class SimulatorDPBase
18     {
19
20
21     public :
22
23         /// \brief Constructor
24         SimulatorDPBase() {}
25         /// \brief Destructor
26         virtual ~SimulatorDPBase() {}
27         /// \brief get current markovian state : dimension of the problem for the first
28             dimension , second dimension the number of Monte Carlo simulations
29         virtual Eigen::MatrixXd getParticles() const = 0;
30         /// \brief a step forward for simulations
31         virtual void stepForward() = 0;
32         /// \brief a step backward for simulations
33         virtual void stepBackward() = 0;
```

```

33     /// \brief a step forward for simulations
34     /// \return current particles (markovian state as assets for example) (dimension of
        the problem times simulation number)
35     virtual Eigen::MatrixXd stepForwardAndGetParticles() = 0;
36     /// \brief a step backward for simulations
37     /// \return current particles (markovian state as assets for example) (dimension of
        the problem times simulation number)
38     virtual Eigen::MatrixXd stepBackwardAndGetParticles() = 0;
39     /// \brief get back dimension of the regression
40     virtual int getDimension() const = 0;
41     /// \brief get the number of steps
42     virtual int getNbStep() const = 0;
43     /// \brief Get the current step size
44     virtual double getStep() const = 0;
45     /// \brief Get current time
46     virtual double getCurrentStep() const = 0 ;
47     /// \brief Number of Monte Carlo simulations
48     virtual int getNbSimul() const = 0;
49     /// \brief Permit to actualize for one time step (interest rate)
50     virtual double getActuStep() const = 0;
51     /// \brief Permits to actualize at the initial date (interest rate)
52     virtual double getActu() const = 0 ;
53
54 };
55 }
56 #endif /* SIMULATORDPBASE_H */

```

Supposing that the Simulator is a Black Scholes simulator for P assets, simulating M Monte Carlo simulations, at $N + 1$ dates t_0, \dots, t_N , the Markov state for particle j , date t_i , Monte Carlo simulation k and asset p is $X_{p,i}^k$ and we give below the meaning of the different methods of SimulatorDPBase:

- the `getParticle` method gives at the current optimization/simulation date t_i the Markov states $X_{p,i}^k$ in a matrix A such that $A(p, k) = X_{p,i}^k$,
- the `stepForward` method is used while simulating the assets evolution in forward: a step forward is realized from t_i to t_{i+1} and Brownian motions used for the assets are updated at the new time step,
- the `stepBackward` method is used for simulation of the asset from the last date to time 0. This method is used during an asset optimization by Dynamic Programming,
- the `stepForwardAndGetParticles` method: second and first method in one call,
- the `stepBackwardAndGetParticles` method: third and first method in one call,
- the `getDimension` method returns the number of assets,
- the `getNbStep` method returns the number of step (N),
- the `getStep` method returns the time step $t_{i+1} - t_i$ at the current time t_i ,
- the `getNbSimul` method returns M .
- the `getActuStep` method return the actualization factor on one time step
- the `getActu` method returns an actualization factor at the “0” date.

7.2 Simulators for trees

In order to develop solvers using tree methods, the user has to create a simulator derived from the class `SimulatorDPBaseTree`. This simulator at each date reads in a `geners` archive, the values of uncertainties at nodes and the probability transition. It is used in a deterministic way in backward mode: nodes values are all explored sequentially. In forward mode, it permits to sample discrete values of the state through the tree.

```
1 // Copyright (C) 2019 EDF
2 // All Rights Reserved
3 // This code is published under the GNU Lesser General Public License (GNU LGPL)
4 #ifndef SIMULATORDPBASETREE_H
5 #define SIMULATORDPBASETREE_H
6 #include <Eigen/Dense>
7 #include "geners/BinaryFileArchive.hh"
8
9 /* \file SimulatorDPBaseTree.h
10 * \brief Abstract class for simulators for Dynamic Programming Programms with tree
11 * \author Xavier Warin
12 */
13
14 namespace StOpt
15 {
16     /// \class SimulatorDPBaseTree SimulatorDPBaseTree.h
17     /// Abstract class for simulator used in dynamic programming with trees
18     class SimulatorDPBaseTree
19     {
20     protected :
21
22         std::shared_ptr<gs::BinaryFileArchive> m_binForTree ; ///< archive for tree
23         Eigen::ArrayXd m_dates ; ///< list of dates in the archive
24         int m_idateCur ; ///< current date index
25         Eigen::ArrayXXd m_nodesCurr ; ///< storing coordinates of the nodes at current date (
26             dim, nbnodes)
27         Eigen::ArrayXXd m_nodesNext; ///< storing coordinates of the nodes at next date (dim,
28             nbnodes)
29         std::vector<double> m_proba ; ///< value stores probability to go from on node at
30             index m_dateCurc to node at next date m_dateNext.
31         std::vector< std::vector< std::array<int, 2> > > m_connected ; ///
```

```

51
52     /// \brief sample one simulation in forward mode
53     /// \param p_nodeStart starting node
54     /// \param p_randUni uniform random in [0,1]
55     /// \return node reached
56     int getNodeReachedInForward(const int &p_nodeStart, const double &p_randUni) const ;
57
58
59     /// \brief a step backward for simulations
60     virtual void stepBackward() = 0;
61     /// \brief get back dimension of the problem
62     virtual int getDimension() const
63     {
64         return m_nodesCurr.rows();
65     }
66     /// \brief get the number of steps
67     virtual int getNbStep() const
68     {
69         return m_dates.size() - 1;
70     }
71     /// \brief Number of nodes at current date
72     virtual int getNbNodes() const
73     {
74         return m_nodesCurr.cols();
75     }
76     /// \brief Number of nodes at next date
77     virtual int getNbNodesNext() const
78     {
79         return m_nodesNext.cols();
80     }
81
82     /// \brief get back dates
83     inline Eigen::ArrayXd getDates() const
84     {
85         return m_dates;
86     }
87
88     /// \brief get back the last date index
89     inline int getBackLastDateIndex() const
90     {
91         return m_dates.size() - 1;
92     }
93
94     /// \brief get back connection matrix :for each node at current date, give the node
95     /// connected
96     std::vector< std::vector< std::array<int, 2 > > > getConnected() const
97     {
98         return m_connected ;
99     }
100
101     /// \brief get back probabilities
102     inline std::vector< double > getProba() const
103     {
104         return m_proba;
105     }
106
107     /// \brief get current nodes
108     inline Eigen::ArrayXXd getNodes() const
109     {
110         return m_nodesCurr ;
111     }
112
113     /// \brief get nodes at next date
114     inline Eigen::ArrayXXd getNodesNext() const
115     {
116         return m_nodesNext ;
117     }
118
119     /// \brief Get number of simulations used in forward

```

```

119     virtual inline int getNbSimul() const = 0;
120
121
122     /// \brief Get node number associated to a node
123     /// \param p_nodeIndex index of the node
124     virtual Eigen::ArrayXd getValueAssociatedToNode(const int &p_nodeIndex) const = 0;
125
126     /// \brief get node associated to a simulation
127     /// \param p_isim simulation number
128     /// \return number of the node associated to a simulation
129     virtual int getNodeAssociatedToSim(const int &p_isim) const = 0;
130 };
131 }
132 #endif /* SIMULATORDPBASETREE_H */

```

While designing its tree the user has to call the based simulator constructor by providing a `geners` archive giving

- An Eigen `ArrayXd` of the set of dates (size N) associated with the tree.
- A vector of probabilities P at each of the first $N - 1$ dates.
- A vector of vector of pair of int at each of the first $N - 1$ dates. Such a vector v , at a given date, has the size equal to the number of nodes in the tree at this date. For a node i , $v[i]$ is the vector of arrival nodes number and probability index in P . Then $v[i][j].first$ is the number of a node at next date connected to node i at current date. The transition probability is given by $P[v[i][j].second]$.

In the `geners` archive, the storage is achieved as in the `dump` function in the file `TrinomialTreeOUSimulator.cpp` storing the probabilities of connection matrix of a trinomial tree.

```

1 void TrinomialTreeOUSimulator::dump(const std::string &p_name, const Eigen::ArrayXi &
2   p_index)
3 {
4     gs::BinaryFileArchive binArxiv(p_name.c_str(), "w");
5     ArrayXd ddates(p_index.size());
6     for (int i = 0; i < p_index.size(); ++i)
7         ddates(i) = m_dates(p_index(i));
8     binArxiv << gs::Record(ddates, "dates", "");
9     for (int i = 0 ; i < p_index.size(); ++i)
10    {
11        ArrayXXd points = getPoints(p_index(i));
12        binArxiv << gs::Record(points, "points", "");
13    }
14    for (int i = 0 ; i < p_index.size() - 1; ++i)
15    {
16        ArrayXXd proba = getProbability(p_index(i), p_index(i + 1));
17        pair< vector< vector< array<int, 2> > >, vector< double > > conAndProb =
18            calConnected(proba);
19        binArxiv << gs::Record(conAndProb.second, "proba", "");
20        binArxiv << gs::Record(conAndProb.first, "connection", "");
21    }
22 }

```

The different methods the use has to provide are

- the `stepForward` method is used while simulating the assets evolution in forward: a step forward is realized from t_i to t_{i+1} and samples are generated to give discrete uncertainties in the tree.

- the `stepBackward` method is used while optimizing an asset from the last date to time 0 by Dynamic Programming. It should update the structure of the tree (probabilities, connection between nodes)
- the `getNbSimul` giving the number of samples used in forward mode,
- the `getValueAssociatedToNode` method taking the number of a node and giving back the state associated to this node,
- the `getNodeAssociatedToSim` method giving for a trajectory number in forward mode, the number of the node visited at current date.

An example of simulator for HJM model with trinomial tree for the OU process is `MeanRevertingSimulatorTree`.

Chapter 8

Using conditional expectation to solve simple problems

In this chapter we give some examples to value an American option. This use of the conditional expectation operators can be extended to many stochastic problem using this previously developed objects.

8.1 American option by regression

8.1.1 The American option valuing by Longstaff–Schwartz

Suppose in this example that the payoff of the American option is given by g and that the interest rate is 0. The value of the option is given by

$$P_t = \text{esssup}_{\tau \in \mathcal{T}_{[t,T]}} \mathbb{E}(g(\tau, X_\tau) \mid \mathcal{F}_t) \quad \text{for } t \leq T \quad \mathbb{P} - \text{a.s.}, \quad (8.1)$$

where $\mathcal{T}_{[t,T]}$ denotes the set of stopping times with values in $[t, T]$.

We recall the classical Longstaff–Schwartz Algorithm 8 estimating the empirical conditional expectation using the regression estimation previously seen.

Algorithm 8 Algorithm with regression [optimal exercise time estimation]

Initialization:

Set $\hat{\tau}_\kappa^{1,\pi,(j)} := T, j \leq N$

Backward induction:

for $i = \kappa - 1$ to 0 **do**

 set $\hat{\tau}_i^{1,\pi} := t_i \mathbf{1}_{A_i^1} + \hat{\tau}_{i+1}^{1,\pi} \mathbf{1}_{(A_i^1)^c}$ where $A_i^1 := \{g(t_i, X_{t_i}) \geq \hat{\mathbb{E}}[g(\hat{\tau}_{i+1}^{1,\pi}, X_{\hat{\tau}_{i+1}^{1,\pi}}) \mid \mathcal{F}_{t_i}]\}$.

end for

Price estimator at 0: $\hat{P}_0^{1,\pi} := \hat{\mathbb{E}}[g(\hat{\tau}_0^{1,\pi}, X_{\hat{\tau}_0^{1,\pi}})]$.

American option by regression with the C++ API

We value in the algorithm below an American option using a simulator `p_sim`, a regressor `p_regressor`, a payoff function `p_payoff`:

```
1  double step = p_sim.getStep(); // time step increment
2  // asset simulated under the neutral risk probability: get the trend of the first
   asset to get the interest rate
3  double expRate = exp(-step * p_sim.getMu()(0));
4  // Terminal pay off
5  VectorXd Cash(p_payOff(p_sim.getParticles()));
6  for (int iStep = 0; iStep < p_sim.getNbStep(); ++iStep)
7  {
8      shared_ptr<ArrayXXd> asset(new ArrayXXd(p_sim.stepBackwardAndGetParticles())); //
   asset = Markov state
9      VectorXd payOffLoc = p_payOff(*asset); // pay off
10     // update conditional expectation operator for current Markov state
11     p_regressor.updateSimulations(((iStep == (p_sim.getNbStep() - 1)) ? true : false),
   asset);
12     // conditional expectation
13     VectorXd condEspec = p_regressor.getAllSimulations(Cash) * expRate;
14     // arbitrage between pay off and cash delivered after
15     Cash = (condEspec.array() < payOffLoc.array()).select(payOffLoc, Cash * expRate);
16 }
17 return Cash.mean();
```

American option with the Python API

Using the python API the American resolution is given below:

```
1 # Copyright (C) 2016 EDF
2 # All Rights Reserved
3 # This code is published under the GNU Lesser General Public License (GNU LGPL)
4 import numpy as np
5 import math as maths
6
7 # american option by Longstaff-Schwartz
8 # p_sim      Monte Carlo simulator
9 # p_payOff   Option pay off
10 # p_regressor regressor object
11 def resolution(p_simulator, p_payOff, p_regressor) :
12
13     step = p_simulator.getStep()
14     # asset simulated under the neutral risk probability : get the trend of first asset to
   get interest rate
15     expRate = np.exp(-step * p_simulator.getMu()[0])
16     # Terminal
17     particle = p_simulator.getParticles()
18     Cash = p_payOff.operator(particle)
19
20     for iStep in range(0, p_simulator.getNbStep()):
21         asset = p_simulator.stepBackwardAndGetParticles()
22         payOffLoc = p_payOff.operator(asset)
23         isLastStep = False
24         if iStep == p_simulator.getNbStep() - 1 :
25             isLastStep = True
26
27         p_regressor.updateSimulations(isLastStep, asset)
28         # conditional expectation
29         condEspec = p_regressor.getAllSimulations(Cash).squeeze() * expRate
30         # arbitrage
31         Cash = np.where(condEspec < payOffLoc, payOffLoc, Cash * expRate)
32
33     return maths.fsum(Cash) / len(Cash)
```

8.2 American options by tree

Using trees, American options are solved calculating the Bellman values at each date instead of valuing them as expectation of payoff at optimal stopping time.

Algorithm 9 Algorithm with tree: Bellman value (0 interest rate)

Initialization:

Set $P^j := g(X_T^j)$, $j \leq N(\kappa)$

▷ Number of node at last date

Backward induction:

for $i = \kappa - 1$ to 0 **do**

 set $P^j = \max[\mathbb{E}[P \mid X_{t_i}^j], g(X_{t_i}^j)]$, $j \leq N(i)$

end for

Price estimator at 0: P^0 .

8.2.1 The American option by tree

```
1 // a backward simulator
2 MeanRevertingSimulatorTree< OneDimData<OneDimRegularSpaceGrid, double> > backSimulator1
   (binArxiv, futureGrid, sigma, mr);
3
4 // strike of put
5 double strike = 50.;
6
7 // actualization
8 double actu = exp(r * dates(dates.size() - 1));
9 // spot provided by simulator
10 ArrayXd spot = backSimulator1.getSpotValues() * actu;
11 // actualized value for payoff
12 ArrayXd val1 = (strike - spot).cwiseMax(0.) / actu;
13 for (int istep = 0; istep < nbDtStep; ++istep)
14 {
15     // one step backward to update probabilities and connectons between nodes
16     backSimulator1.stepBackward();
17     // probabilities
18     std::vector<double> proba = backSimulator1.getProba();
19     // get connection between nodes
20     std::vector< std::vector<std::array<int, 2> > > connected = backSimulator1.
       getConnected();
21     // conditional expectation operator
22     StOpt::Tree tree(proba, connected);
23     //interest rates
24     actu = exp(r * dates(dates.size() - 1 - (istep + 1) * nInc));
25     // spot : add interest rate
26     spot = backSimulator1.getSpotValues() * actu;
27     // pay off
28     ArrayXd payOff = (strike - spot).cwiseMax(0.) / actu;
29     //actualize value
30     val1 = tree.expCond(val1);
31     // arbitrage
32     val1 = (val1 > payOff).select(val1, payOff);
33 }
34
35 double finalValue = val1(0);
```

8.2.2 Python API

```

1      # backward simulator
2      backSimulator = Simulators.MeanRevertingSimulatorTree(archiveToRead, futureGrid,
3                    sigma, mr)
4
5      # strike
6      strike = 50.
7
8      # actu
9      actu = np.exp(r*dates[indexT[-1]])
10     # spot : add interest rate
11     spot = backSimulator.getSpotValues()*actu
12     # actualized payoff
13     val1= np.where( strike-spot>0,strike-spot,0)/actu
14     for istep in np.arange(np.shape(indexT)[0]-1):
15         # backward in simulator
16         backSimulator.stepBackward()
17         # get back probability matrix
18         proba = backSimulator.getProba()
19         # and connection matrix
20         connected = backSimulator.getConnected()
21         # creta tree for conditional expectation
22         tree=StOptTree.Tree(proba,connected)
23         # interest rates
24         actu = np.exp(r*dates[indexT[-2-istep]])
25         # spot : add interest rate
26         spot = backSimulator.getSpotValues()*actu
27         # pay off
28         payOff = np.where( strike-spot>0,strike-spot,0)/actu
29         # actualize value
30         val1 = tree.expCond(val1)
31         # arbitrage
32         val1 = np.where( val1> payOff, val1, payOff)
33     final = val1[0]

```

Chapter 9

Using the general framework to manage stock problems

In this chapter the state is separated into three parts $X^{x,t} = (X_1^{x,t}, X_2^{x,t}, I_t)$. $(X_1^{x,t}, X_2^{x,t})$, which corresponds to the special case of chapter 6 where $X_1^{x,t}$ is not controlled and $X_2^{x,t}$ is controlled. Two cases can be tackled:

- the first case corresponds to the case where $X_2^{x,t}$ is deterministic (think of storage management),
- the second case corresponds to the case where $X_2^{x,t}$ is stochastic (think of portfolio optimization).

I_t takes some integers values and is here to describe some finite discrete regimes (to treat some switching problems). A general framework is available to solve this kind of problem. First, the second part $X_2^{x,t}$ is discretized on a grid as explained in chapter 6.

- Either a full grid is used for $X_2^{x,t}$ and two types of resolutions either sequential or parallel be can considered:
 - a resolution can be achieved sequentially or a parallelization with MPI on the calculations can be achieved (speed up but no size up). This approach can be used for problems in small dimension.
 - a resolution can be achieved with a parallelization by the MPI framework by spreading the work to be achieved on the grid points, and spread the data between processors (speed up and size up). We will denote this parallelization technique a “distribution” technique. This approach is necessary to tackle very big optimization problems where the global solution cannot be stored in the memory of a single processor.
- or the grid for $X_2^{x,t}$ is not full (so sparse) and only a parallelization by thread and MPI can be achieved on the calculations (speed up and no size up). With sparse grids, only the case $X_2^{x,t}$ deterministic is treated.

In the case of the MPI parallelization technique distributing task and data (full grids only), [34] and [45] are used. Suppose that the grid is the same at each time step (only here to ease the case), and that we have 4 processors (figure 9.1) then:

- at the last time step, the final values at each point for each simulation are computed (each processor computes the values for its own grid points),
- at the previous time step, from a grid point own by a processor, we are able to localize the grids points attained at the next time step by all the commands,
- on figure 9.1, we give the points owned by other processors that can be reached from points owned by processor 3,
- some MPI communications are achieved bringing back the data (values calculated at the previous treated time step) needed by processor 3 to be able to update the value calculated by dynamic programming at the current time for all the points owned by processor 3,
- all the communications between all processors are achieved together.

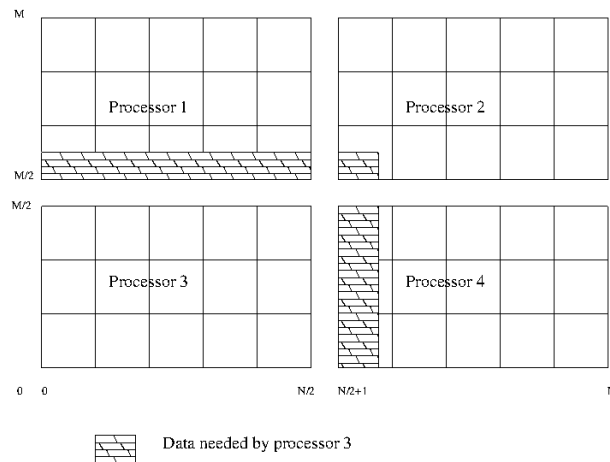


Figure 9.1: Data to send to processor 3

The global state of the the problem is store in the `StateWithStocks` object.

9.1 General requirement about business object

In order to use the framework, the developer has to describe the problem he wants to solve on one time step starting from a state $X^{x,t}$. This business object has to offer some common methods and it is derived from `OptimizerBase`.

```

1 // Copyright (C) 2016 EDF
2 // All Rights Reserved
3 // This code is published under the GNU Lesser General Public License (GNU LGPL)
4 #ifndef OPTIMIZERBASE_H
5 #define OPTIMIZERBASE_H
6 #include <Eigen/Dense>
7
8 /** \file OptimizerBase.h
9  * \brief Define an abstract class for Dynamic Programming problems solved by Monte Carlo
10  * methods

```

```

10 *      \author Xavier Warin
11 */
12
13 namespace StOpt
14 {
15
16 /// \class OptimizerBase OptimizerBase.h
17 /// Base class for optimizer for Dynamic Programming with and without regression methods
18 class OptimizerBase
19 {
20
21
22 public :
23
24     OptimizerBase() {}
25
26     virtual ~OptimizerBase() {}
27
28     /// \brief defines the dimension to split for MPI parallelism
29     ///      For each dimension return true is the direction can be split
30     virtual Eigen::Array< bool, Eigen::Dynamic, 1> getDimensionToSplit() const = 0 ;
31
32     /// \brief defines the diffusion cone for parallelism
33     /// \param p_regionByProcessor      region (min max) treated by the processor for
34     /// the different regimes treated
35     /// \return returns in each dimension the min max values in the stock that can be
36     /// reached from the grid p_gridByProcessor for each regime
37     virtual std::vector< std::array< double, 2> > getCone(const std::vector< std::array<
38     double, 2> > &p_regionByProcessor) const = 0;
39
40
41     /// \brief Get the number of regimes allowed for the asset to be reached at the
42     /// current time step
43     virtual int getNbRegime() const = 0 ;
44
45     /// \brief get back the dimension of the control
46     virtual int getNbControl() const = 0 ;
47
48     /// \brief get size of the function to follow in simulation
49     virtual int getSimuFuncSize() const = 0;
50 };
51 #endif /* OPTIMIZERBASE_H */

```

We detail all the methods that have to be implemented for all resolution methods (with or without regressions).

- the `getNbRegime` permits to get the number of regimes of the problem: for example, in switching problems, when there is a cost of switching, the working regime has to be incorporated in the state. Another example is the case of conditional delta to calculate for an asset: two regimes can be used: one to calculate the asset value and the second one to calculate the Δ . This number of regimes can be time dependent: in this case for a current resolution date t the `getNbRegime` method send the number of regimes at the very beginning of the time step (in t^-) such that a switch to a new regime can occurred in t^+ .
- the `getSimulator` method is used to get back the simulator giving the Monte Carlo simulations,
- the `getSimuFuncSize` method is used in simulation to define the number of functions

to follow in the simulation part. For example in a stochastic target problem where the target is a given wealth with a given probability, one may want to follow the evolution of the probability at each time step and the wealth obtained while trading. In this case the `getSimuFuncSize` returns 2.

- the `getCone` method is only relevant if the MPI framework with distribution is used. As argument it take a vector of size the dimension of the grid. Each component of the vector is an array containing the minimal and maximal coordinates values of points in the current grid defining an hyper cube $H1$. It returns for each dimension, the coordinates min and max of the hyper cube $H2$ containing the points that can be reached by applying a command from a grid point in $H1$.
- the `getDimensionToSplit` method permits to define in the MPI framework with distribution which directions to split for solution distribution on processors. For each dimension it returns a Boolean where `true` means that the direction is a candidate for splitting.
- the `stepSimulateControl` method is used after optimization using the optimal controls calculated in the optimization part. From a state `p_state` (storing the $X^{x,t}$), the optimal control calculated in optimization `p_control`, the optimal functions values along the current trajectory are stored in `p_phiInOut`. The state `p_state` is updated during at the end of the call function.

In a first part we present the framework for problems where conditional expectation is calculated by regression (case where $X_2^{t,x}$ is not controlled). Then we develop the framework not using regression for conditional expectation calculations. All conditional expectation are calculated using exogenous particles and interpolation. This will be typically the case for portfolio optimization.

9.2 Solving the problem using conditional expectation calculated by regressions

In this part we suppose that $X_2^{x,t}$ is controlled and deterministic so regression methods can be used.

9.2.1 Requirement to use the framework

The `OptimizerBaseInterp` is an optimizer class common to all regression methods used by dynamic programming. We detail the methods of `OptimizerBaseInterp` which is a derived from `OptimizerBase`. Only one method is added:

- the `stepSimulateControl` method is used after optimization using the optimal controls calculated in the optimization part. From a state `p_state` (storing the $X^{x,t}$), the optimal control calculated in optimization `p_control`, the optimal functions values along the current trajectory are stored in `p_phiInOut`. The state `p_state` is updated during at the end of the call function.

9.2.2 Classical regression

By classical regression, we mean regression problems with storages where the optimal command is calculated on one time step and estimated by testing all possible discretized commands.

In order to use the framework with regression for conditional expectation, a business object describing the business on one time step from one state is derived from `OptimizerDPBase` itself derived from `OptimizerBaseInterp`.

```
1 // Copyright (C) 2016 EDF
2 // All Rights Reserved
3 // This code is published under the GNU Lesser General Public License (GNU LGPL)
4 #ifndef OPTIMIZERDPBASE_H
5 #define OPTIMIZERDPBASE_H
6 #include <Eigen/Dense>
7 #include "StOpt/core/utils/StateWithStocks.h"
8 #include "StOpt/core/grids/SpaceGrid.h"
9 #include "StOpt/regression/BaseRegression.h"
10 #include "StOpt/regression/ContinuationValue.h"
11 #include "StOpt/regression/GridAndRegressedValue.h"
12 #include "StOpt/dp/SimulatorDPBase.h"
13 #include "StOpt/dp/OptimizerBaseInterp.h"
14
15 /** \file OptimizerDPBase.h
16 * \brief Define an abstract class for Dynamic Programming problems solved by regression
17 * \author Xavier Warin
18 */
19
20 namespace StOpt
21 {
22
23 /// \class OptimizerDPBase OptimizerDPBase.h
24 /// Base class for optimizer for Dynamic Programming with regression methods
25 class OptimizerDPBase : public OptimizerBaseInterp
26 {
27
28 public :
29
30     OptimizerDPBase() {}
31
32     virtual ~OptimizerDPBase() {}
33
34     /// \brief defines the diffusion cone for parallelism
35     /// \param p_regionByProcessor region (min max) treated by the processor for
36     the different regimes treated
37     /// \return returns in each dimension the min max values in the stock that can be
38     reached from the grid p_gridByProcessor for each regime
39     virtual std::vector< std::array< double, 2> > getCone(const std::vector< std::array<
40     double, 2> > &p_regionByProcessor) const = 0;
41
42     /// \brief defines the dimension to split for MPI parallelism
43     /// For each dimension return true is the direction can be split
44     virtual Eigen::Array< bool, Eigen::Dynamic, 1> getDimensionToSplit() const = 0 ;
45
46     /// \brief defines a step in optimization
47     /// \param p_grid grid at arrival step after command
48     /// \param p_stock coordinates of the stock point to treat
49     /// \param p_condEsp continuation values for each regime
50     /// \param p_phiIn for each regime gives the solution calculated at the previous
51     step ( next time step by Dynamic Programming resolution) : structure of the 2D
52     array ( nb simulation ,nb stocks )
53     /// \return a pair :
54     /// - for each regimes (column) gives the solution for each particle (row)
55     /// - for each control (column) gives the optimal control for each
```

```

52     particle (rows)
53     ///
54     virtual std::pair< Eigen::ArrayXXd, Eigen::ArrayXXd> stepOptimize(const std::
55     shared_ptr< StOpt::SpaceGrid> &p_grid, const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_stock,
56     const std::vector< StOpt::ContinuationValue > &p_condEsp,
57     const std::vector< std::shared_ptr< Eigen::ArrayXXd > > &p_phiIn) const = 0;
58
59     /// \brief defines a step in simulation
60     /// Notice that this implementation is not optimal but is convenient if the control is
61     discrete.
62     /// By avoiding interpolation in control we avoid non admissible control
63     /// Control are recalculated during simulation.
64     /// \param p_grid grid at arrival step after command
65     /// \param p_continuation defines the continuation operator for each regime
66     /// \param p_state defines the state value (modified)
67     /// \param p_phiInOut defines the value functions (modified) : size number of
68     functions to follow
69     virtual void stepSimulate(const std::shared_ptr< StOpt::SpaceGrid> &p_grid, const std
70     ::vector< StOpt::GridAndRegressedValue > &p_continuation,
71     StOpt::StateWithStocks &p_state,
72     Eigen::Ref<Eigen::ArrayXd> p_phiInOut) const = 0 ;
73
74     /// \brief Defines a step in simulation using interpolation in controls
75     /// \param p_grid grid at arrival step after command
76     /// \param p_control defines the controls
77     /// \param p_state defines the state value (modified)
78     /// \param p_phiInOut defines the value function (modified): size number of
79     functions to follow
80     virtual void stepSimulateControl(const std::shared_ptr< StOpt::SpaceGrid> &p_grid,
81     const std::vector< StOpt::GridAndRegressedValue > &p_control,
82     StOpt::StateWithStocks &p_state,
83     Eigen::Ref<Eigen::ArrayXd> p_phiInOut) const = 0 ;
84
85     /// \brief Get the number of regimes allowed for the asset to be reached at the
86     current time step
87     /// If  $t$  is the current time, and  $dt$  the resolution step, this is
88     the number of regime allowed on  $[t - dt, t]$ 
89     virtual int getNbRegime() const = 0 ;
90
91     /// \brief get the simulator back
92     virtual std::shared_ptr< StOpt::SimulatorDPBase > getSimulator() const = 0;
93
94     /// \brief get back the dimension of the control
95     virtual int getNbControl() const = 0 ;
96
97     /// \brief get size of the function to follow in simulation
98     virtual int getSimuFuncSize() const = 0;
99 };
100 }
101 #endif /* OPTIMIZERDPBASE_H */

```

We detail the different methods derived from `OptimizerDPBase` to implement in addition to the methods of `OptimizerBaseInterp`:

- the `stepOptimize` method is used in optimization. We want to calculate the optimal value at current t_i at a grid point `p_stock` using a grid `p_grid` at the next date t_{i+1} , the continuation values for all regimes `p_condEsp` permitting to calculate conditional expectation of the optimal value function calculated at the previously treated time step t_{i+1} . From a grid point `p_stock` it calculates the function values and the optimal controls. It returns a pair where the

- first element is a matrix (first dimension is the number of simulations, second dimension the number of regimes) giving the function value,
 - second element is a matrix (first dimension is the number of simulations, second dimension the number of controls) giving the optimal control.
- the `stepSimulate` method is used after optimization using the continuation values calculated in the optimization part. From a state `p_state` (storing the $X^{x,t}$), the continuation values calculated in optimization `p_continuation`, the optimal functions values along the current trajectory are stored in `p_phiInOut`.

In the case of a gas storage [47], the holder of the storage can inject gas from the grid in the storage (paying the market price) or withdraw gas from the storage on the grid (receiving the market price). In this case the `Optimize` object is given in the `OptimizeGasStorage.h` file. You can have a look at the implementation of the `getCone` method.

The framework in optimization with classical regressions

Once an `Optimizer` is derived for the project, and supposing that a full grid is used for the stock discretization, the framework provides a `TransitionStepRegressionDPDist` object in MPI that permits to solve the optimization problem with distribution of the data on one time step with the following constructor:

```

1  TransitionStepRegressionDPDist(const shared_ptr<FullGrid> &p_pGridCurrent,
2                               const shared_ptr<FullGrid> &p_pGridPrevious,
3                               const shared_ptr<OptimizerDPBase > &p_pOptimize):

```

with

- `p_pGridCurrent` is the grid at the current time step (t_i),
- `p_pGridPrevious` is the grid at the previously treated time step (t_{i+1}),
- `p_pOptimize` the optimizer object

Remark 6 A similar object is available without the MPI distribution framework `TransitionStepRegressionDP` with still enabling parallelization with threads and MPI on the calculations on the full grid points.

Remark 7 In the case of sparse grids with only parallelization on the calculations (threads and MPI) `TransitionStepRegressionDPSparse` object can be used.

The main method is

```

1  std::vector< shared_ptr< Eigen::ArrayXXd > > OneStep(const std::vector< shared_ptr<
2  Eigen::ArrayXXd > > &p_phiIn,
3  const shared_ptr< BaseRegression > &p_condExp)

```

with

- `p_phiIn` the vector (its size corresponds to the number of regimes) of matrix of optimal values calculated at the previous time iteration for each regime. Each matrix is a number of simulations by number of stock points matrix.

- `p_condExp` the conditional expectation operator,

returning a pair:

- first element is a vector of matrix with new optimal values at the current time step (each element of the vector corresponds to a regime and each matrix is a number of simulations by number of stock points matrix).
- second element is a vector of matrix with new optimal controls at the current time step (each element of the vector corresponds to a control and each matrix is a number of simulations by number of stock points matrix).

Remark 8 *All `TransitionStepRegressionDP` derive from a `TransitionStepRegressionBase` object having a pure virtual `OneStep` method.*

A second method is provided permitting to dump the continuation values of the problem and the optimal control at each time step:

```

1  void dumpContinuationValues(std::shared_ptr<gs::BinaryFileArchive> p_ar , const std::
2      string &p_name, const int &p_iStep,
3      const std::vector< std::shared_ptr< Eigen::ArrayXXd > > &
4      p_phiInPrev,
5      const std::vector< std::shared_ptr< Eigen::ArrayXXd > > &
6      p_control,
7      const std::shared_ptr<BaseRegression> &p_condExp,
8      const bool &p_bOneFile) const

```

with:

- `p_ar` is the archive where controls and solutions are dumped,
- `p_name` is a base name used in the archive to store the solution and the control,
- `p_phiInPrev` is the solution at the previous time step used to calculate the continuation values that are stored,
- `p_control` stores the optimal controls calculated at the current time step,
- `p_condExp` is the conditional expectation object permitting to calculate conditional expectation of functions defined at the previous time step treated `p_phiInPrev` and permitting to store a representation of the optimal control.
- `p_bOneFile` is set to one if the continuation and optimal controls calculated by each processor are dumped on a single file. Otherwise the continuation and optimal controls calculated by each processor are dumped on different files (one by processor). If the problem gives continuation and optimal control values on the global grid that can be stored in the memory of the computation node, it can be more interesting to dump the continuation/control values in one file for the simulation of the optimal policy.

Remark 9 *As for the `TransitionStepRegressionDP` and the `TransitionStepRegressionDPSparse` object, their `dumpContinuationValues` does not need a `p_bOneFile` argument: obviously optimal controls and solutions are stored in a single file.*

We give here a simple example of a time resolution using this method when the MPI distribution of data is used

```

1 // Copyright (C) 2016 EDF
2 // All Rights Reserved
3 // This code is published under the GNU Lesser General Public License (GNU LGPL)
4 #ifndef USE_MPI
5 #include <fstream>
6 #include <memory>
7 #include <functional>
8 #include <boost/lexical_cast.hpp>
9 #include <boost/mpi.hpp>
10 #include <Eigen/Dense>
11 #include "generators/BinaryFileArchive.hh"
12 #include "StOpt/core/grids/FullGrid.h"
13 #include "StOpt/regression/BaseRegression.h"
14 #include "StOpt/dp/FinalStepDPDist.h"
15 #include "StOpt/dp/TransitionStepRegressionDPDist.h"
16 #include "StOpt/core/parallelism/reconstructProcOMpi.h"
17 #include "StOpt/dp/OptimizerDPBase.h"
18 #include "StOpt/dp/SimulatorDPBase.h"
19
20
21 using namespace std;
22
23 double DynamicProgrammingByRegressionDist(const shared_ptr<StOpt::FullGrid> &p_grid,
24     const shared_ptr<StOpt::OptimizerDPBase > &p_optimize,
25     shared_ptr<StOpt::BaseRegression> &p_regressor,
26     const function<double(const int &, const Eigen::ArrayXd &, const Eigen::ArrayXd &)>
27         &p_funcFinalValue,
28     const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_pointStock,
29     const int &p_initialRegime,
30     const string &p_fileToDump,
31     const bool &p_bOneFile)
32 {
33     // from the optimizer get back the simulator
34     shared_ptr< StOpt::SimulatorDPBase> simulator = p_optimize->getSimulator();
35     // final values
36     vector< shared_ptr< Eigen::ArrayXXd > > valuesNext = StOpt::FinalStepDPDist(p_grid,
37         p_optimize->getNbRegime(), p_optimize->getDimensionToSplit())(p_funcFinalValue,
38         simulator->getParticles().array());
39     // dump
40     boost::mpi::communicator world;
41     string toDump = p_fileToDump ;
42     // test if one file generated
43     if (!p_bOneFile)
44         toDump += "_" + boost::lexical_cast<string>(world.rank());
45     shared_ptr<gs::BinaryFileArchive> ar;
46     if ((!p_bOneFile) || (world.rank() == 0))
47         ar = make_shared<gs::BinaryFileArchive>(toDump.c_str(), "w");
48     // name for object in archive
49     string nameAr = "Continuation";
50     for (int iStep = 0; iStep < simulator->getNbStep(); ++iStep)
51     {
52         Eigen::ArrayXXd asset = simulator->stepBackwardAndGetParticles();
53         // conditional expectation operator
54         p_regressor->updateSimulations(((iStep == (simulator->getNbStep() - 1)) ? true :
55             false), asset);
56         // transition object
57         StOpt::TransitionStepRegressionDPDist transStep(p_grid, p_grid, p_optimize);
58         pair< vector< shared_ptr< Eigen::ArrayXXd > >, vector< shared_ptr< Eigen::ArrayXXd
59             > > > valuesAndControl = transStep.oneStep(valuesNext, p_regressor);
60         transStep.dumpContinuationValues(ar, nameAr, iStep, valuesNext, valuesAndControl.
61             second, p_regressor, p_bOneFile);
62         valuesNext = valuesAndControl.first;
63     }
64     // reconstruct a small grid for interpolation
65     return StOpt::reconstructProcOMpi(p_pointStock, p_grid, valuesNext[p_initialRegime],

```

```

60     p_optimize->getDimensionToSplit()).mean();
61 }
62 #endif

```

An example without distribution of the data can be found in the `DynamicProgrammingByRegression.cpp` file. We give at last a table with the different `TransitionStepRegression` objects to use depending on the type of parallelization used.

Table 9.1: Which `TransitionStepRegression` object to use depending on the grid used and the type of parallelization used.

	Full grid	Sparse grid
Sequential	<code>TransitionStepRegressionDP</code>	<code>TransitionStepRegressionDPSparse</code>
Parallelization on calculations threads and MPI	<code>TransitionStepRegressionDP</code>	<code>TransitionStepRegressionDPSparse</code>
Distribution of calculations and data	<code>TransitionStepRegressionDPDist</code>	Not available

The framework in simulation with classical regressions

Once the optimization has been achieved, continuation values are dumped in one file (or some files) at each time step. In order to simulate the optimal policy, we can use the continuation values previously calculated (see chapter 6) or we can use the optimal controls calculated in optimization. In continuous optimization, using the control is more effective in term of computational cost. When the control is discrete, interpolation of the controls can lead to non admissible controls and simulation with the value function is more accurate.

While simulating the optimal control, two cases can occur:

- For most of the case (small dimensional case), the optimal control or the optimal function value can be stored in the memory of the computing node and function values and controls are stored in a single file. In this case a simulation of the optimal control can easily be achieved by distributing the Monte Carlo simulations on the available calculations nodes: this can be achieved by using the `SimulateStepRegression` or `SimulateStepRegressionControl` objects at each time step of the simulation.
- When dealing with very large problems, optimization is achieved by distributing the data on the processors and it is impossible to store the optimal command on one node. In this case, optimal controls and optimal solutions are stored in the memory of the node that has been used to calculate them in optimization. Simulations are reorganized at each time step and gathered so that they occupy the same part of the global grid. Each processor will then get from other processors a localized version of the optimal control or solution that it needs. This methodology is used in the `SimulateStepRegressionDist` and `SimulateStepRegressionControlDist` objects.

We detail the simulations objects using the optimal function value calculated in optimization and the optimal control for the case of very big problems.

- Simulation step using the value function calculated in optimization:

In order to simulate one step of the optimal policy, an object `SimulateStepRegressionDist` is provided with constructor

```

1 SimulateStepRegressionDist(gs::BinaryFileArchive &p_ar, const int &p_iStep, const
   std::string &p_nameCont,
2                               const shared_ptr<FullGrid> &p_pGridFollowing, const
   shared_ptr<OptimizerDPBase > &p_pOptimize,
3                               const bool &p_bOneFile)

```

where

- `p_ar` is the binary archive where the continuation values are stored,
- `p_iStep` is the number associated to the current time step (0 at the beginning date of simulation, the number is increased by one at each time step simulated),
- `p_nameCont` is the base name for continuation values,
- `p_GridFollowing` is the grid at the next time step (`p_iStep+1`),
- `p_Optimize` the Optimizer describing the transition from one time step to the following one,
- `p_OneFile` equal to `true` if a single archive is used to store continuation values.

Remark 10 *A version without distribution of data but with multithreaded and with MPI possible on calculations is available with the object `SimulateStepRegression`. The `p_OneFile` argument is omitted during construction.*

This object implements the method `oneStep`

```

1 void oneStep(std::vector<StateWithStocks > &p_statevector , Eigen::ArrayXXd &
   p_phiInOut)

```

where:

- `p_statevector` store the states for the all the simulations: this state is updated by application of the optimal command,
- `p_phiInOut` stores the gain/cost functions for all the simulations: it is updated by the function call. The size of the array is $(nb, nbSimul)$ where nb is given by the `getSimuFuncSize` method of the optimizer and $nbSimul$ the number of Monte Carlo simulations.

An example of the use of this method to simulate an optimal policy with distribution is given below:

```

1 // Copyright (C) 2016 EDF
2 // All Rights Reserved
3 // This code is published under the GNU Lesser General Public License (GNU LGPL)
4 #ifndef SIMULATEREGREGRESSIONDIST_H
5 #define SIMULATEREGREGRESSIONDIST_H
6 #include <functional>
7 #include <memory>

```

```

8 #include <Eigen/Dense>
9 #include <boost/mpi.hpp>
10 #include "generators/BinaryFileArchive.hh"
11 #include "StOpt/core/grids/FullGrid.h"
12 #include "StOpt/core/utils/StateWithStocks.h"
13 #include "StOpt/dp/SimulateStepRegressionDist.h"
14 #include "StOpt/dp/OptimizerDPBase.h"
15 #include "StOpt/dp/SimulatorDPBase.h"
16
17
18 /** \file SimulateRegressionDist.h
19  * \brief Defines a simple program showing how to use simulation
20  *      A simple grid is used
21  * \author Xavier Warin
22  */
23
24
25 /// \brief Simulate the optimal strategy , mpi version
26 /// \param p_grid          grid used for deterministic state (stocks for
27   example)
28 /// \param p_optimize      optimizer defining the optimization between two
29   time steps
30 /// \param p_funcFinalValue function defining the final value
31 /// \param p_pointStock    initial point stock
32 /// \param p_initialRegime regime at initial date
33 /// \param p_fileToDump    name associated to dumped bellman values
34 /// \param p_bOneFile      do we store continuation values in only one file
35 double SimulateRegressionDist(const std::shared_ptr<StOpt::FullGrid> &p_grid,
36                               const std::shared_ptr<StOpt::OptimizerDPBase > &
37                               p_optimize,
38                               const std::function<double(const int &, const Eigen::
39   ArrayXd &, const Eigen::ArrayXd &)> &
40                               p_funcFinalValue,
41                               const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_pointStock,
42                               const int &p_initialRegime,
43                               const std::string &p_fileToDump,
44                               const bool &p_bOneFile)
45 {
46     boost::mpi::communicator world;
47     // from the optimizer get back the simulator
48     std::shared_ptr< StOpt::SimulatorDPBase> simulator = p_optimize->getSimulator();
49     int nbStep = simulator->getNbStep();
50     std::vector< StOpt::StateWithStocks> states;
51     states.reserve(simulator->getNbSimul());
52     for (int is = 0; is < simulator->getNbSimul(); ++is)
53         states.push_back(StOpt::StateWithStocks(p_initialRegime, p_pointStock, Eigen::
54   ArrayXd::Zero(simulator->getDimension())));
55     std::string toDump = p_fileToDump ;
56     // test if one file generated
57     if (!p_bOneFile)
58         toDump += "_" + boost::lexical_cast<std::string>(world.rank());
59     gs::BinaryFileArchive ar(toDump.c_str(), "r");
60     // name for continuation object in archive
61     std::string nameAr = "Continuation";
62     // cost function
63     Eigen::ArrayXXd costFunction = Eigen::ArrayXXd::Zero(p_optimize->getSimuFuncSize()
64   , simulator->getNbSimul());
65     for (int istep = 0; istep < nbStep; ++istep)
66     {
67         StOpt::SimulateStepRegressionDist(ar, nbStep - 1 - istep, nameAr, p_grid,
68   p_optimize, p_bOneFile).oneStep(states, costFunction);
69
70         // new stochastic state
71         Eigen::ArrayXXd particles = simulator->stepForwardAndGetParticles();
72         for (int is = 0; is < simulator->getNbSimul(); ++is)
73             states[is].setStochasticRealization(particles.col(is));
74     }
75     // final : accept to exercise if not already done entirely (here suppose one

```



```

69     function to follow)
70     for (int is = 0; is < simulator->getNbSimul(); ++is)
71         costFunction(0, is) += p_funcFinalValue(states[is].getRegime(), states[is].
72             getPtStock(), states[is].getStochasticRealization()) * simulator->getActu
73             ();
74     return costFunction.mean();
75 }
76 #endif /* SIMULATEREGRESSIONDIST_H */

```

The version of the previous example using a single archive storing the control/solution is given in the `SimulateRegression.h` file.

- Simulation step using the optimal controls calculated in optimization:

```

1     SimulateStepRegressionControlDist(gs::BinaryFileArchive &p_ar, const int &p_iStep
2         , const std::string &p_nameCont,
3             const std::shared_ptr<FullGrid> &p_pGridCurrent
4             , const std::shared_ptr<FullGrid> &
5                 p_pGridFollowing,
6                 const std::shared_ptr<OptimizerDPBase > &
7                 p_pOptimize,
8                 const bool &p_bOneFile);

```

where

- `p_ar` is the binary archive where the continuation values are stored,
- `p_iStep` is the number associated to the current time step (0 at the beginning date of simulation, the number is increased by one at each time step simulated),
- `p_nameCont` is the base name for control values,
- `p_GridCurrent` is the grid at the current time step (`p_iStep`),
- `p_GridFollowing` is the grid at the next time step (`p_iStep+1`),
- `p_Optimize` is the Optimizer describing the transition from one time step to the following one,
- `p_OneFile` equals `true` if a single archive is used to store continuation values.

Remark 11 *A version where a single archive storing the control/solution is used is available with the object `SimulateStepRegressionControl`*

This object implements the method `oneStep`

```

1 void oneStep(std::vector<StateWithStocks > &p_statevector , Eigen::ArrayXd &
2     p_phiInOut)

```

where:

- `p_statevector` stores for all the simulations the state: this state is updated by application of the optimal commands,

- `p_phiInOut` stores the gain/cost functions for all the simulations: it is updated by the function call. The size of the array is $(nb, nbSimul)$ where nb is given by the `getSimuFuncSize` method of the optimizer and $nbSimul$ the number of Monte Carlo simulations.

An example of the use of this method to simulate an optimal policy with distribution is given below:

```

1 // Copyright (C) 2016 EDF
2 // All Rights Reserved
3 // This code is published under the GNU Lesser General Public License (GNU LGPL)
4 #ifndef USE_MPI
5 #ifndef SIMULATEREGRESSIONCONTROLDIST_H
6 #define SIMULATEREGRESSIONCONTROLDIST_H
7 #include <functional>
8 #include <memory>
9 #include <Eigen/Dense>
10 #include <boost/mpi.hpp>
11 #include "geners/BinaryFileArchive.hh"
12 #include "StOpt/core/grids/FullGrid.h"
13 #include "StOpt/core/utils/StateWithStocks.h"
14 #include "StOpt/dp/SimulateStepRegressionControlDist.h"
15 #include "StOpt/dp/OptimizerDPBase.h"
16 #include "StOpt/dp/SimulatorDPBase.h"
17
18
19 /** \file SimulateRegressionControlDist.h
20 * \brief Defines a simple program showing how to use simulation
21 * A simple grid is used
22 * \author Xavier Warin
23 */
24
25
26 /// \brief Simulate the optimal strategy using optimal controls calculated in
27 /// optimization , mpi version
28 /// \param p_grid grid used for deterministic state (stocks for
29 /// example)
30 /// \param p_optimize optimizer defining the optimization between two
31 /// time steps
32 /// \param p_funcFinalValue function defining the final value
33 /// \param p_pointStock initial point stock
34 /// \param p_initialRegime regime at initial date
35 /// \param p_fileToDump name associated to dumped bellman values
36 /// \param p_bOneFile do we store continuation values in only one file
37 double SimulateRegressionControlDist(const std::shared_ptr<StOpt::FullGrid> &p_grid,
38 const std::shared_ptr<StOpt::OptimizerDPBase > &
39 p_optimize,
40 const std::function<double(const int &, const
41 Eigen::ArrayXd &, const Eigen::ArrayXd &)> &
42 p_funcFinalValue,
43 const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_pointStock,
44 const int &p_initialRegime,
45 const std::string &p_fileToDump,
46 const bool &p_bOneFile)
47 {
48 boost::mpi::communicator world;
49 // from the optimizer get back the simulator
50 std::shared_ptr< StOpt::SimulatorDPBase> simulator = p_optimize->getSimulator();
51 int nbStep = simulator->getNbStep();
52 std::vector< StOpt::StateWithStocks> states;
53 states.reserve(simulator->getNbSimul());
54 for (int is = 0; is < simulator->getNbSimul(); ++is)
55 states.push_back(StOpt::StateWithStocks(p_initialRegime, p_pointStock, Eigen::
56 ArrayXd::Zero(simulator->getDimension())));
57 std::string toDump = p_fileToDump ;
58 // test if one file generated

```

```

52     if (!p_bOneFile)
53         toDump += "_" + boost::lexical_cast<std::string>(world.rank());
54     gs::BinaryFileArchive ar(toDump.c_str(), "r");
55     // name for continuation object in archive
56     std::string nameAr = "Continuation";
57     // cost function
58     Eigen::ArrayXXd costFunction = Eigen::ArrayXXd::Zero(p_optimize->getSimuFuncSize()
59         , simulator->getNbSimul());
60     for (int istep = 0; istep < nbStep; ++istep)
61     {
62         StOpt::SimulateStepRegressionControlDist(ar, nbStep - 1 - istep, nameAr,
63             p_grid, p_grid, p_optimize, p_bOneFile).oneStep(states, costFunction);
64
65         // new stochastic state
66         Eigen::ArrayXXd particules = simulator->stepForwardAndGetParticles();
67         for (int is = 0; is < simulator->getNbSimul(); ++is)
68             states[is].setStochasticRealization(particules.col(is));
69     }
70     // final : accept to exercise if not already done entirely (here suppose one
71     // function to follow)
72     for (int is = 0; is < simulator->getNbSimul(); ++is)
73         costFunction(0, is) += p_funcFinalValue(states[is].getRegime(), states[is].
74             getPtStock(), states[is].getStochasticRealization()) * simulator->getActu
75             ();
76     return costFunction.mean();
77 }
78 #endif /* SIMULATEREGRESSIONCONTROLDIST_H */
79 #endif

```

The version of the previous example using a single archive storing the control/solution is given in the `SimulateRegressionControl.h` file.

In the table below we indicate which simulation object should be used at each time step depending on the `TransitionStepRegressionDP` object used in optimization.

Table 9.2: Which simulation object to use depending on the TransitionStepRegression object used.

	TransitionStepRegressionDP	TransitionStepRegressionDPDist	TransitionStepRegressionDPDist bOneFile = true	TransitionStepRegressionDPDist bOneFile = false	TransitionStepRegressionDPSparse
SimulateStepRegression	Yes		Yes	No	Yes
SimulateStepRegressionControl	Yes		Yes	No	Yes
SimulateStepRegressionDist	No		Yes	Yes	No
SimulateStepRegressionControlDist	No		Yes	Yes	No

9.2.3 Regressions and cuts for linear continuous transition problems with some concavity, convexity features

When optimizing for example a storage, we may want to solve the transition problem on some time steps supposing that uncertainties are known. The Bellman values for a given uncertainty are then concave with respect to the storage when trying to maximize some earnings for example. When the problem is linear continuous, we can use some bender cuts to approximate the Bellman value with respect to the storage level as in the SDDP method 14. In order to use this cuts a business object using some LP solver has to be created. This business object is derived from `OptimizerDPCutBase` itself derived from `OptimizerBaseIn` `terp`.

```
1 // Copyright (C) 2019 EDF
2 // All Rights Reserved
3 // This code is published under the GNU Lesser General Public License (GNU LGPL)
4 #ifndef OPTIMIZERDPCUTBASE_H
5 #define OPTIMIZERDPCUTBASE_H
6 #include <Eigen/Dense>
7 #include "StOpt/core/utils/StateWithStocks.h"
8 #include "StOpt/core/grids/SpaceGrid.h"
9 #include "StOpt/regression/BaseRegression.h"
10 #include "StOpt/regression/ContinuationCuts.h"
11 #include "StOpt/dp/SimulatorDPBase.h"
12 #include "StOpt/dp/OptimizerBase.h"
13
14 /** \file OptimizerDPCutBase.h
15 * \brief Define an abstract class for Dynamic Programming problems solved by regression
16 * methods using cust to approximate
17 * Bellman values
18 * \author Xavier Warin
19 */
20 namespace StOpt
21 {
22
23 /// \class OptimizerDPCutBase OptimizerDPCutBase.h
24 /// Base class for optimizer for Dynamic Programming with regression methods and cuts, so
25 using LP to solve transitional problems
26 class OptimizerDPCutBase : public OptimizerBase
27 {
28
29 public :
30
31     OptimizerDPCutBase() {}
32
33     virtual ~OptimizerDPCutBase() {}
34
35     /// \brief defines the diffusion cone for parallelism
36     /// \param p_regionByProcessor region (min max) treated by the processor for
37     the different regimes treated
38     /// \return returns in each dimension the min max values in the stock that can be
39     reached from the grid p_gridByProcessor for each regime
40     virtual std::vector< std::array< double, 2> > getCone(const std::vector< std::array<
41     double, 2> > &p_regionByProcessor) const = 0;
42
43     /// \brief defines the dimension to split for MPI parallelism
44     /// For each dimension return true is the direction can be split
45     virtual Eigen::Array< bool, Eigen::Dynamic, 1> getDimensionToSplit() const = 0 ;
46
47     /// \brief defines a step in optimization
48     /// \param p_grid grid at arrival step after command
49     /// \param p_stock coordinates of the stock point to treat
50     /// \param p_condEsp continuation values for each regime
```

```

48  /// \return For each regimes (column) gives the solution for each particle , and cut
      (row)
49  /// For a given simulation , cuts components (C) at a point stock \s \bar S
      \f$ are given such that the cut is given by
50  /// \f$ C[0] + \sum_{i=1}^d C[i] (S_i - \bat S_i) \f$
51  virtual Eigen::ArrayXXd stepOptimize(const std::shared_ptr< StOpt::SpaceGrid> &
      p_grid, const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_stock,
52  const std::vector< StOpt::ContinuationCuts > &
      p_condEsp) const = 0;
53
54
55  /// \brief defines a step in simulation
56  /// Control are recalculated during simulation using a local optimization using the LP
57  /// \param p_grid grid at arrival step after command
58  /// \param p_continuation defines the continuation operator for each regime
59  /// \param p_state defines the state value (modified)
60  /// \param p_phiInOut defines the value functions (modified) : size number of
      functions to follow
61  virtual void stepSimulate(const std::shared_ptr< StOpt::SpaceGrid> &p_grid, const std
      ::vector< StOpt::ContinuationCuts > &p_continuation,
62  StOpt::StateWithStocks &p_state,
63  Eigen::Ref<Eigen::ArrayXd> p_phiInOut) const = 0 ;
64
65
66  /// \brief Get the number of regimes allowed for the asset to be reached at the
      current time step
67  /// If \f$ t \f$ is the current time, and \f$ dt \f$ the resolution step, this is
      the number of regime allowed on \f$[ t- dt, t[\f$
68  virtual int getNbRegime() const = 0 ;
69
70  /// \brief get the simulator back
71  virtual std::shared_ptr< StOpt::SimulatorDPBase > getSimulator() const = 0;
72
73  /// \brief get back the dimension of the control
74  virtual int getNbControl() const = 0 ;
75
76  /// \brief get size of the function to follow in simulation
77  virtual int getSimuFuncSize() const = 0;
78
79 };
80 }
81 #endif /* OPTIMIZERDPCUTBASE_H */

```

We detail the different methods to implement in addition to the methods of `OptimizerBaseInterp`:

- the `stepOptimize` method is used in optimization. We want to calculate the optimal value and the corresponding sensibilities with respect to the stocks at current t_i at a grid point `p_stock` using a grid `p_grid` at the next date t_{i+1} , the continuation cuts values for all regimes `p_condEsp` permitting to calculate an upper estimation (when maximizing) of conditional expectation of the optimal values using some optimization calculated at the previously treated time step t_{i+1} . From a grid point `p_stock` it calculates the function values and the corresponding sensibilities. It returns a matrix (first dimension is the number of simulations by the number of cuts components (number of storage +1), second dimension the number of regimes) giving the function value and sensibilities.
- the `stepSimulate` method is used after optimization using the continuation cuts values calculated in the optimization part. From a state `p_state` (storing the $X^{x,t}$), the continuation cuts values calculated in optimization `p_continuation`, the optimal cash flows along the current trajectory are stored in `p_phiInOut`.

In the case of a gas storage the Optimize object is given in the `OptimizeGasStorageCut.h` file.

The framework in optimization using some cuts methods

Once an Optimizer object describing to the Business problem to solve with cuts is created for the project, and supposing that a full grid is used for the stock discretization, the framework provides a `TransitionStepRegressionDPCutDist` object in MPI that permits to solve the optimization problem with distribution of the data on one time step with the following constructor:

```
1 TransitionStepRegressionDPCutDist(const shared_ptr<FullGrid> &p_pGridCurrent,
2                                 const shared_ptr<FullGrid> &p_pGridPrevious,
3                                 const shared_ptr<OptimizerDPCutBase > &p_pOptimize):
```

with

- `p_pGridCurrent` is the grid at the current time step (t_i),
- `p_pGridPrevious` is the grid at the previously treated time step (t_{i+1}),
- `p_pOptimize` the optimizer object

The construction is very similar to classical regression methods only using command discretization.

Remark 12 *A similar object is available without the MPI distribution framework `TransitionStepRegressionDPCut` with still enabling parallelization with threads and MPI on the calculations on the full grid points.*

The main method is

```
1 std::vector< shared_ptr< Eigen::ArrayXXd > > OneStep(const std::vector< shared_ptr<
2 Eigen::ArrayXXd > > &p_phiIn,
3             const shared_ptr< BaseRegression> &p_condExp)
```

with

- `p_phiIn` the vector (its size corresponds to the number of regimes) of matrix of optimal values and sensibilities calculated at the previous time iteration for each regime. Each matrix has a number of rows equal to the number of simulations by the number of stock plus one. The number of columns is equal to the number of stock points on the grid. In the row, the number of simulations by the number of stock plus one value are stored as follows:
 - The first values (number of simulations : NS) corresponds to the optimal Bellman values at a given stock point,
 - The NS values following corresponds to sensibilities $\frac{\partial V}{\partial S_1}$ to first storage
 - The NS values following corresponds to sensibilities to the second storage...
 - ...
- `p_condExp` the conditional expectation operator,

returning a vector of matrix with new optimal values and sensibilities at the current time step (each element of the vector corresponds to a regime and each matrix has a size equal to the (number of simulations by (the number of storage plus one)) by the number of stock points). The structure of the output is then similar to the input `p_phiIn`.

A second method is provided permitting to dump the continuation values and cuts of the problem and the optimal control at each time step:

```

1 void dumpContinuationCutsValues(std::shared_ptr<gs::BinaryFileArchive> p_ar , const std
  ::string &p_name, const int &p_iStep,
2 const std::vector< std::shared_ptr< Eigen::ArrayXXd > > &
  p_phiInPrev ,
3 const std::shared_ptr<BaseRegression> &p_condExp ,
4 const bool &p_bOneFile) const

```

with:

- `p_ar` is the archive where controls and solutions are dumped,
- `p_name` is a base name used in the archive to store the solution and the control,
- `p_phiInPrev` is the solution at the previous time step used to calculate the continuation cuts values that are stored,
- `p_condExp` is the conditional expectation object permitting to calculate conditional expectation of functions defined at the previous time step treated `p_phiInPrev`.
- `p_bOneFile` is set to one if the continuation cuts values calculated by each processor are dumped on a single file. Otherwise the continuation cuts values calculated by each processor are dumped on different files (one by processor). If the problem gives continuation cuts values on the global grid that can be stored in the memory of the computation node, it can be more interesting to dump them in one file for the simulation of the optimal policy.

We give here a simple example of a time resolution using this method when the MPI distribution of data is used

```

1 // Copyright (C) 2019 EDF
2 // All Rights Reserved
3 // This code is published under the GNU Lesser General Public License (GNU LGPL)
4 #ifdef USE_MPI
5 #include <fstream>
6 #include <memory>
7 #include <functional>
8 #include <boost/lexical_cast.hpp>
9 #include <boost/mpi.hpp>
10 #include <Eigen/Dense>
11 #include "generators/BinaryFileArchive.hh"
12 #include "StOpt/core/grids/FullGrid.h"
13 #include "StOpt/regression/BaseRegression.h"
14 #include "StOpt/dp/FinalStepDPCutDist.h"
15 #include "StOpt/dp/TransitionStepRegressionDPCutDist.h"
16 #include "StOpt/core/parallelism/reconstructProcOMP.h"
17 #include "StOpt/dp/OptimizerDPCutBase.h"
18 #include "StOpt/dp/SimulatorDPBase.h"
19
20
21 using namespace std;
22 using namespace Eigen;
23

```



```

24 double DynamicProgrammingByRegressionCutDist(const shared_ptr<StOpt::FullGrid> &p_grid,
25 const shared_ptr<StOpt::OptimizerDPCutBase > &p_optimize,
26 shared_ptr<StOpt::BaseRegression> &p_regressor,
27 const function< ArrayXd(const int &, const ArrayXd &, const ArrayXd &)> &
28 p_funcFinalValue,
29 const ArrayXd &p_pointStock,
30 const int &p_initialRegime,
31 const string &p_fileToDump,
32 const bool &p_bOneFile)
33 {
34 // from the optimizer get back the simulator
35 shared_ptr< StOpt::SimulatorDPBase> simulator = p_optimize->getSimulator();
36 // final values
37 vector< shared_ptr< ArrayXXd > > valueCutsNext = StOpt::FinalStepDPCutDist(p_grid,
38 p_optimize->getNbRegime(), p_optimize->getDimensionToSplit()(p_funcFinalValue,
39 simulator->getParticles().array()));
40 // dump
41 boost::mpi::communicator world;
42 string toDump = p_fileToDump ;
43 // test if one file generated
44 if (!p_bOneFile)
45 toDump += "_" + boost::lexical_cast<string>(world.rank());
46 shared_ptr<gs::BinaryFileArchive> ar;
47 if ((!p_bOneFile) || (world.rank() == 0))
48 ar = make_shared<gs::BinaryFileArchive>(toDump.c_str(), "w");
49 // name for object in archive
50 string nameAr = "Continuation";
51 for (int iStep = 0; iStep < simulator->getNbStep(); ++iStep)
52 {
53 ArrayXXd asset = simulator->stepBackwardAndGetParticles();
54 // conditional expectation operator
55 p_regressor->updateSimulations(((iStep == (simulator->getNbStep() - 1)) ? true :
56 false), asset);
57 // transition object
58 StOpt::TransitionStepRegressionDPCutDist transStep(p_grid, p_grid, p_optimize);
59 vector< shared_ptr< ArrayXXd > > valueCuts = transStep.oneStep(valueCutsNext,
60 p_regressor);
61 transStep.dumpContinuationCutsValues(ar, nameAr, iStep, valueCutsNext, p_regressor,
62 p_bOneFile);
63 valueCutsNext = valueCuts;
64 }
65 // reconstruct a small grid for interpolation
66 ArrayXd valSim = StOpt::reconstructProcOMpi(p_pointStock, p_grid, valueCutsNext[
67 p_initialRegime], p_optimize->getDimensionToSplit());
68 return ((world.rank() == 0) ? valSim.head(simulator->getNbSimul()).mean() : 0.);
69 }
70 #endif

```

An example without distribution of the data can be found in the `DynamicProgrammingByRegressionCut.cpp` file.

The framework in simulation using cuts to approximate the Bellman values

Once the optimization has been achieved, continuation cuts values are dumped in one file (or some files) at each time step. In order to simulate the optimal policy, we use the continuation cuts values previously calculated.

- For most of the case (small dimensional case), the optimal cut function values can be stored in the memory of the computing node and cuts values are stored in a single file. In this case a simulation of the optimal control can easily be achieved by distributing the Monte Carlo simulations on the available calculations nodes: this can be achieved by using the `SimulateStepRegressionCut` object at each time step of the simulation.

- When dealing with very large problems, optimization is achieved by distributing the data on the processors and it is impossible to store the optimal cuts values on one node. In this case, optimal cuts values are stored in the memory of the node that has been used to calculate them in optimization. Simulations are reorganized at each time step and gathered so that they occupy the same part of the global grid. Each processor will then get from other processors a localized version of the optimal control or solution that it needs. This methodology is used in the `SimulateStepRegressionCutDist` objects.

We detail the simulations objects using the optimal cuts values calculated in optimization for the case of very big problems.

In order to simulate one step of the optimal policy, an object `SimulateStepRegressionCutDist` is provided with constructor

```

1 SimulateStepRegressionCutDist(gs::BinaryFileArchive &p_ar,  const int &p_iStep,  const
   std::string &p_nameCont,
2                               const  shared_ptr<FullGrid> &p_pGridFollowing,  const
                                 shared_ptr<OptimizerDPCutBase > &p_pOptimize,
3                               const bool &p_bOneFile)
```

where

- `p_ar` is the binary archive where the continuation values are stored,
- `p_iStep` is the number associated to the current time step (0 at the beginning date of simulation, the number is increased by one at each time step simulated),
- `p_nameCont` is the base name for continuation values,
- `p_GridFollowing` is the grid at the next time step (`p_iStep+1`),
- `p_Optimize` the Optimizer describing the transition problem solved using a LP program.
- `p_OneFile` equal to `true` if a single archive is used to store continuation values.

Remark 13 *A version without distribution of data but with multithreaded and with MPI possible on calculations is available with the object `SimulateStepRegressionCut`. The `p_OneFile` argument is omitted during construction.*

This object implements the method `oneStep`

```

1 void oneStep(std::vector<StateWithStocks > &p_statevector , Eigen::ArrayXXd &p_phiInOut)
```

where:

- `p_statevector` store the states for the all the simulations: this state is updated by application of the optimal command,
- `p_phiInOut` stores the gain/cost functions for all the simulations: it is updated by the function call. The size of the array is $(nb, nbSimul)$ where nb is given by the `getSimuFuncSize` method of the optimizer and $nbSimul$ the number of Monte Carlo simulations.

An example of the use of this method to simulate an optimal policy with distribution is given below:

```

1 // Copyright (C) 2019 EDF
2 // All Rights Reserved
3 // This code is published under the GNU Lesser General Public License (GNU LGPL)
4 #ifndef SIMULATEREGREGRESSIONCUTDIST_H
5 #define SIMULATEREGREGRESSIONCUTDIST_H
6 #include <functional>
7 #include <memory>
8 #include <Eigen/Dense>
9 #include <boost/mpi.hpp>
10 #include "geners/BinaryFileArchive.hh"
11 #include "StOpt/core/grids/FullGrid.h"
12 #include "StOpt/core/utils/StateWithStocks.h"
13 #include "StOpt/dp/SimulateStepRegressionCutDist.h"
14 #include "StOpt/dp/OptimizerDPCutBase.h"
15 #include "StOpt/dp/SimulatorDPBase.h"
16
17
18 /** \file SimulateRegressionCutDist.h
19 * \brief Defines a simple program showing how to use simulations when optimization achieved
20 * with transition problems solved with cuts.
21 * A simple grid is used
22 * \author Xavier Warin
23 */
24
25 /// \brief Simulate the optimal strategy , mpi version, Bellman cuts used to allow LP
26 resolution of transition problems
27 /// \param p_grid grid used for deterministic state (stocks for example)
28 /// \param p_optimize optimizer defining the optimization between two time
29 steps
30 /// \param p_funcFinalValue function defining the final value cuts
31 /// \param p_pointStock initial point stock
32 /// \param p_initialRegime regime at initial date
33 /// \param p_fileToDump name associated to dumped bellman values
34 /// \param p_bOneFile do we store continuation values in only one file
35 double SimulateRegressionCutDist(const std::shared_ptr<StOpt::FullGrid> &p_grid,
36 const std::shared_ptr<StOpt::OptimizerDPCutBase > &
37 p_optimize,
38 const std::function< Eigen::ArrayXd(const int &, const
39 Eigen::ArrayXd &, const Eigen::ArrayXd &)> &
40 p_funcFinalValue,
41 const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_pointStock,
42 const int &p_initialRegime,
43 const std::string &p_fileToDump,
44 const bool &p_bOneFile)
45 {
46 boost::mpi::communicator world;
47 // from the optimizer get back the simulator
48 std::shared_ptr< StOpt::SimulatorDPBase> simulator = p_optimize->getSimulator();
49 int nbStep = simulator->getNbStep();
50 std::vector< StOpt::StateWithStocks> states;
51 states.reserve(simulator->getNbSimul());
52 for (int is = 0; is < simulator->getNbSimul(); ++is)
53 states.push_back(StOpt::StateWithStocks(p_initialRegime, p_pointStock, Eigen::
54 ArrayXd::Zero(simulator->getDimension()));
55 std::string toDump = p_fileToDump ;
56 // test if one file generated
57 if (!p_bOneFile)
58 toDump += "_" + boost::lexical_cast<std::string>(world.rank());
59 gs::BinaryFileArchive ar(toDump.c_str(), "r");
60 // name for continuation object in archive
61 std::string nameAr = "Continuation";
62 // cost function
63 Eigen::ArrayXXd costFunction = Eigen::ArrayXXd::Zero(p_optimize->getSimuFuncSize(),
64 simulator->getNbSimul());

```

```

58     for (int istep = 0; istep < nbStep; ++istep)
59     {
60         StOpt::SimulateStepRegressionCutDist(ar, nbStep - 1 - istep, nameAr, p_grid,
        p_optimize, p_bOneFile).oneStep(states, costFunction);
61
62         // new stochastic state
63         Eigen::ArrayXXd particles = simulator->stepForwardAndGetParticles();
64         for (int is = 0; is < simulator->getNbSimul(); ++is)
65             states[is].setStochasticRealization(particles.col(is));
66
67     }
68     // final : accept to exercise if not already done entirely (here suppose one function
        to follow)
69     for (int is = 0; is < simulator->getNbSimul(); ++is)
70         costFunction(0, is) += p_funcFinalValue(states[is].getRegime(), states[is].
        getPtStock(), states[is].getStochasticRealization())(0);
71
72     return costFunction.mean();
73 }
74
75 #endif /* SIMULATEREGRESSIONCUTDIST_H */

```

The version of the previous example using a single archive storing the control/solution is given in the `SimulateRegressionCut.h` file.

9.3 Solving the problem for $X_2^{x,t}$ stochastic

In this part we suppose that $X_2^{x,t}$ is controlled but is stochastic.

9.3.1 Requirement to use the framework

In order to use the framework, a business object describing the business on one time step from one state is derived from `OptimizerNoRegressionDPBase` itself derived from `OptimizerBase`.

```

1 // Copyright (C) 2016 EDF
2 // All Rights Reserved
3 // This code is published under the GNU Lesser General Public License (GNU LGPL)
4 #ifndef OPTIMIZERNOREGRESSIONDPBASE_H
5 #define OPTIMIZERNOREGRESSIONDPBASE_H
6 #include <Eigen/Dense>
7 #include "StOpt/core/utils/StateWithStocks.h"
8 #include "StOpt/core/grids/SpaceGrid.h"
9 #include "StOpt/regression/BaseRegression.h"
10 #include "StOpt/regression/GridAndRegressedValue.h"
11 #include "StOpt/dp/SimulatorDPBase.h"
12 #include "StOpt/dp/OptimizerBaseInterp.h"
13
14 /** \file OptimizerNoRegressionDPBase.h
15  * \brief Define an abstract class for Dynamic Programming problems solve by Monte Carlo
        but without regression method
16  * to compute conditional expectation.
17  * \author Xavier Warin
18  */
19
20 namespace StOpt
21 {
22
23     /// \class OptimizerNoRegressionDPBase OptimizerNoRegressionDPBase.h
24     /// Base class for optimizer for Dynamic Programming solved without regression method to
        compute conditional expectation.
25     class OptimizerNoRegressionDPBase : public OptimizerBaseInterp

```

```

26 {
27
28
29 public :
30
31     OptimizerNoRegressionDPBase() {}
32
33     virtual ~OptimizerNoRegressionDPBase() {}
34
35     /// \brief defines the diffusion cone for parallelism
36     /// \param p_regionByProcessor      region (min max) treated by the processor for
37     /// the different regimes treated
38     /// \return returns in each dimension the min max values in the stock that can be
39     /// reached from the grid p_gridByProcessor for each regime
40     virtual std::vector< std::array< double, 2> > getCone(const std::vector< std::array<
41     double, 2> > &p_regionByProcessor) const = 0;
42
43     /// \brief defines the dimension to split for MPI parallelism
44     /// For each dimension return true is the direction can be split
45     virtual Eigen::Array< bool, Eigen::Dynamic, 1> getDimensionToSplit() const = 0 ;
46
47     /// \brief defines a step in optimization
48     /// \param p_stock      coordinates of the stock point to treat
49     /// \param p_valNext    Optimized values at next time step for each regime
50     /// \param p_regressorCur    Regressor at the current date
51     /// \return a pair :
52     /// - for each regimes (column) gives the solution for each particle (row)
53     /// - for each control (column) gives the optimal control for each
54     /// particle (rows)
55     virtual std::pair< Eigen::ArrayXXd, Eigen::ArrayXXd> stepOptimize(const Eigen::
56     ArrayXd &p_stock,
57     const std::vector< GridAndRegressedValue > &p_valNext,
58     std::shared_ptr< BaseRegression > p_regressorCur) const = 0;
59
60     /// \brief Defines a step in simulation using interpolation in controls
61     /// \param p_grid      grid at arrival step after command
62     /// \param p_control    defines the controls
63     /// \param p_state      defines the state value (modified)
64     /// \param p_phiInOut   defines the value function (modified): size number of
65     /// functions to follow
66     virtual void stepSimulateControl(const std::shared_ptr< StOpt::SpaceGrid> &p_grid,
67     const std::vector< StOpt::GridAndRegressedValue > &p_control,
68     StOpt::StateWithStocks &p_state,
69     Eigen::Ref<Eigen::ArrayXd> p_phiInOut) const = 0 ;
70
71     /// \brief Get the number of regimes allowed for the asset to be reached at the
72     /// current time step
73     /// If \f$ t \f$ is the current time, and \f$ dt \f$ the resolution step, this is
74     /// the number of regime allowed on \f$[ t- dt, t[\f$
75     virtual int getNbRegime() const = 0 ;
76
77     /// \brief get the simulator back
78     virtual std::shared_ptr< StOpt::SimulatorDPBase > getSimulator() const = 0;
79
80     /// \brief get back the dimension of the control
81     virtual int getNbControl() const = 0 ;
82
83     /// \brief get size of the function to follow in simulation
84     virtual int getSimuFuncSize() const = 0;
85
86 };
87 }
88 #endif /* OPTIMIZERDPBASE_H */

```

In addition to the methods of `OptimizerBase` the following method is needed:

- the `stepOptimize` method is used in optimization. We want to calculate the optimal value regressed at current t_i at a grid point `p_stock` using a grid `p_grid` at the next date t_{i+1} ,

From a grid point `p_stock` it calculates the function values regressed and the optimal controls regressed. It returns a pair where the

- first element is a matrix (first dimension is the number of functions in the regression, second dimension the number of regimes) giving the function value regressed,
- second element is a matrix (first dimension is the number of functions in the regression, second dimension the number of controls) giving the optimal control regressed.

In this case of the optimization of an actualized portfolio with dynamic:

$$dX_2^{x,t} = X_2^{x,t} \frac{dX_1^{x,t}}{X_1^{x,t}}$$

where $X_1^{x,t}$ is the risky asset value, the `Optimize` object is given in the `OptimizePortfolio.h` file.

9.3.2 The framework in optimization

Once an `Optimizer` is derived for the project, and supposing that a full grid is used for the stock discretization, the framework provides a `TransitionStepDPDist` object in MPI that permits to solve the optimization problem with distribution of the data on one time step with the following constructor:

```

1  TransitionStepDPDist(const shared_ptr<FullGrid> &p_pGridCurrent ,
2  const shared_ptr<FullGrid> &p_pGridPrevious ,
3  const std::shared_ptr<BaseRegression> &p_regressorCurrent ,
4  const std::shared_ptr<BaseRegression> &p_regressorPrevious ,
5  const shared_ptr<OptimizerNoRegressionDPBase > &p_pOptimize):
```

with

- `p_pGridCurrent` is the grid at the current time step (t_i),
- `p_pGridPrevious` is the grid at the previously treated time step (t_{i+1}),
- `p_regressorCurrent` is a regressor at the current date (to evaluate the function at the current date)
- `p_regressorPrevious` is a regressor at the previously treated time step (t_{i+1}) permitting to evaluate a function at date t_{i+1} ,
- `p_pOptimize` the optimizer object

Remark 14 A similar object is available without the MPI distribution framework `TransitionStepDP` with still enabling parallelization with threads and MPI on the calculations on the full grid points.

Remark 15 *The case of sparse grids is currently not treated in the framework.*

The main method is

```
1  std::pair< std::shared_ptr< std::vector< Eigen::ArrayXXd > > , std::shared_ptr< std::vector< Eigen::ArrayXXd > > > oneStep(const std::vector< Eigen::ArrayXXd > & p_phiIn)
```

with

- `p_phiIn` the vector (its size corresponds to the number of regimes) of matrix of optimal values calculated regressed at the previous time iteration for each regime. Each matrix is a number of function regressor at the previous date by number of stock points matrix.

returning a pair:

- first element is a vector of matrix with new optimal values regressed at the current time step (each element of the vector corresponds to a regime and each matrix is a number of regressed functions at the current date by the number of stock points matrix).
- second element is a vector of matrix with new optimal regressed controls at the current time step (each element of the vector corresponds to a control and each matrix is a number of regressed controls by the number of stock points matrix).

Remark 16 *All `TransitionStepDP` derive from a `TransitionStepBase` object having a pure virtual `OneStep` method.*

A second method is provided permitting to dump the the optimal control at each time step:

```
1  void dumpValues(std::shared_ptr<gs::BinaryFileArchive> p_ar ,  
2                const std::string &p_name, const int &p_iStep,  
3                const std::vector< Eigen::ArrayXXd > &p_control, const bool &p_bOneFile) const
```

with:

- `p_ar` is the archive where controls and solutions are dumped,
- `p_name` is a base name used in the archive to store the solution and the control,
- `p_control` stores the optimal controls calculated at the current time step,
- `p_bOneFile` is set to one if the optimal controls calculated by each processor are dumped on a single file. Otherwise the optimal controls calculated by each processor are dumped on different files (one by processor). If the problem gives optimal control values on the global grid that can be stored in the memory of the computation node, it can be more interesting to dump the control values in one file for the simulation of the optimal policy.

Remark 17 *As for the `TransitionStepDP`, its `dumpValues` does not need a `p_bOneFile` argument: obviously optimal controls are stored in a single file.*

We give here a simple example of a time resolution using this method when the MPI distribution of data is used

```

1 // Copyright (C) 2016 EDF
2 // All Rights Reserved
3 // This code is published under the GNU Lesser General Public License (GNU LGPL)
4 #ifndef USE_MPI
5 #include <fstream>
6 #include <boost/mpi.hpp>
7 #include <memory>
8 #include <functional>
9 #include <boost/lexical_cast.hpp>
10 #include <Eigen/Dense>
11 #include "generators/BinaryFileArchive.hh"
12 #include "StOpt/core/grids/FullGrid.h"
13 #include "StOpt/regression/LocalConstRegression.h"
14 #include "StOpt/regression/GridAndRegressedValue.h"
15 #include "StOpt/dp/FinalStepDPDist.h"
16 #include "StOpt/dp/TransitionStepDPDist.h"
17 #include "StOpt/core/parallelism/reconstructProcOMpi.h"
18 #include "test/c++/tools/dp/OptimizePortfolioDP.h"
19
20 using namespace std;
21 using namespace Eigen;
22
23 double DynamicProgrammingPortfolioDist(const shared_ptr<StOpt::FullGrid> &p_grid,
24                                       const shared_ptr<OptimizePortfolioDP> &p_optimize,
25                                       const ArrayXi &p_nbMesh,
26                                       const function<double(const int &, const ArrayXd &,
27                                                           const ArrayXd &)> &p_funcFinalValue,
28                                       const ArrayXd &p_initialPortfolio,
29                                       const string &p_fileToDump,
30                                       const bool &p_bOneFile
31 )
32 {
33     // initialize simulation
34     p_optimize->initializeSimulation();
35     // store regressor
36     shared_ptr<StOpt::LocalConstRegression> regressorPrevious;
37
38     // store final regressed values in object valuesStored
39     shared_ptr< vector< ArrayXXd > > valuesStored = make_shared< vector<ArrayXXd > >(
40         p_optimize->getNbRegime());
41     {
42         vector< shared_ptr< ArrayXXd > > valuesPrevious = StOpt::FinalStepDPDist(p_grid,
43             p_optimize->getNbRegime(), p_optimize->getDimensionToSplit())(p_funcFinalValue,
44             *p_optimize->getCurrentSim());
45         // regressor operator
46         regressorPrevious = make_shared<StOpt::LocalConstRegression>(false, *p_optimize->
47             getCurrentSim(), p_nbMesh);
48         for (int iReg = 0; iReg < p_optimize->getNbRegime(); ++iReg)
49             (*valuesStored)[iReg] = regressorPrevious->getCoordBasisFunctionMultiple(
50                 valuesPrevious[iReg]->transpose()).transpose();
51     }
52     boost::mpi::communicator world;
53     string toDump = p_fileToDump ;
54     // test if one file generated
55     if (!p_bOneFile)
56         toDump += "_" + boost::lexical_cast<string>(world.rank());
57     shared_ptr<gs::BinaryFileArchive> ar;
58     if ((!p_bOneFile) || (world.rank() == 0))
59         ar = make_shared<gs::BinaryFileArchive>(toDump.c_str(), "w");
60     // name for object in archive
61     string nameAr = "OptimizePort";
62     // iterate on time steps
63     for (int iStep = 0; iStep < p_optimize->getNbStep(); ++iStep)
64     {
65         // step backward for simulations
66         p_optimize->oneStepBackward();
67         // create regressor at the given date
68         bool bZeroDate = (iStep == p_optimize->getNbStep() - 1);

```



```

63     shared_ptr<StOpt::LocalConstRegression> regressorCur = make_shared<StOpt::
        LocalConstRegression>(bZeroDate, *p_optimize->getCurrentSim(), p_nbMesh);
64     // transition object
65     StOpt::TransitionStepDPDist transStep(p_grid, p_grid, regressorCur,
        regressorPrevious, p_optimize);
66     pair< shared_ptr< vector< ArrayXXd> >, shared_ptr< vector< ArrayXXd > > >
        valuesAndControl = transStep.oneStep(*valuesStored);
67     // dump control values
68     transStep.dumpValues(ar, nameAr, iStep, *valuesAndControl.second, p_bOneFile);
69     valuesStored = valuesAndControl.first;
70     // shift regressor
71     regressorPrevious = regressorCur;
72 }
73 // interpolate at the initial stock point and initial regime( 0 here) (take first
    particle)
74 shared_ptr<ArrayXXd> topRows = make_shared<ArrayXXd>((*valuesStored)[0].topRows(1));
75 return StOpt::reconstructProcOMpi(p_initialPortfolio, p_grid, topRows, p_optimize->
    getDimensionToSplit()).mean();
76 }
77 #endif

```

An example without distribution of the data can be found in the `DynamicProgrammingPortfolio.cpp` file.

9.3.3 The framework in simulation

Not special framework is available in simulation. Use the function `SimulateStepRegressionControl` or `SimulateStepRegressionControlDist` described in the section 9.2.2.

9.4 Solving stock problems with trees

In this section we detail how to solve problems

- Either by discretizing the control,
- Either by solving a Linear Program problem approximating the Bellman values by cuts.

9.4.1 Solving dynamic programming problems with control discretization

Requirement to use the framework

The `OptimizerDPTreeBase` is the based object from which each business object should be derived.

```

1 // Copyright (C) 2019 EDF
2 // All Rights Reserved
3 // This code is published under the GNU Lesser General Public License (GNU LGPL)
4 #ifndef OPTIMIZERDPTREEBASE_H
5 #define OPTIMIZERDPTREEBASE_H
6 #include <Eigen/Dense>
7 #include "StOpt/core/grids/SpaceGrid.h"
8 #include "StOpt/tree/Tree.h"
9 #include "StOpt/tree/StateTreeStocks.h"
10 #include "StOpt/tree/ContinuationValueTree.h"
11 #include "StOpt/tree/GridTreeValue.h"

```

```

12 #include "StOpt/dp/SimulatorDPBaseTree.h"
13 #include "StOpt/dp/OptimizerBase.h"
14
15 /** \file OptimizerDPTreeBase.h
16 * \brief Define an abstract class for Dynamic Programming problems solved by tree
    methods
17 * \author Xavier Warin
18 */
19
20 namespace StOpt
21 {
22
23 /// \class OptimizerDPTreeBase OptimizerDPTreeBase.h
24 /// Base class for optimizer for Dynamic Programming with tree methods
25 class OptimizerDPTreeBase : public OptimizerBase
26 {
27
28 public :
29
30     OptimizerDPTreeBase() {}
31
32     virtual ~OptimizerDPTreeBase() {}
33
34     /// \brief defines the diffusion cone for parallelism
35     /// \param p_regionByProcessor region (min max) treated by the processor for
    the different regimes treated
36     /// \return returns in each dimension the min max values in the stock that can be
    reached from the grid p_gridByProcessor for each regime
37     virtual std::vector< std::array< double, 2> > getCone(const std::vector< std::array<
    double, 2> > &p_regionByProcessor) const = 0;
38
39     /// \brief defines the dimension to split for MPI parallelism
40     /// For each dimension return true is the direction can be split
41     virtual Eigen::Array< bool, Eigen::Dynamic, 1> getDimensionToSplit() const = 0 ;
42
43     /// \brief defines a step in optimization
44     /// \param p_grid grid at arrival step after command
45     /// \param p_stock coordinates of the stock point to treat
46     /// \param p_condEsp continuation values for each regime
47     /// \return a pair :
48     /// - for each regimes (column) gives the solution for each node in the
    tree (row)
49     /// - for each control (column) gives the optimal control for each node in
    the tree (rows)
50     virtual std::pair< Eigen::ArrayXXd, Eigen::ArrayXXd> stepOptimize(const std::
    shared_ptr< StOpt::SpaceGrid> &p_grid, const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_stock,
    const std::vector< StOpt::ContinuationValueTree > &p_condEsp) const = 0;
51
52     /// \brief defines a step in simulation
53     /// Notice that this implementation is not optimal but is convenient if the control is
    discrete.
54     /// By avoiding interpolation in control we avoid non admissible control
55     /// Control are recalculated during simulation.
56     /// \param p_grid grid at arrival step after command
57     /// \param p_continuation defines the continuation operator for each regime
58     /// \param p_state defines the state value (modified)
59     /// \param p_phiInOut defines the value functions (modified) : size number of
    functions to follow
60     virtual void stepSimulate(const std::shared_ptr< StOpt::SpaceGrid> &p_grid, const std
    ::vector< StOpt::GridTreeValue > &p_continuation,
61     StOpt::StateTreeStocks &p_state,
62     Eigen::Ref<Eigen::ArrayXd> p_phiInOut) const = 0 ;
63
64     /// \brief Defines a step in simulation using interpolation in controls
65     /// \param p_grid grid at arrival step after command
66
67
68
69
70

```

```

71  /// \param p_control      defines the controls
72  /// \param p_state       defines the state value (modified)
73  /// \param p_phiInOut    defines the value function (modified): size number of
                          functions to follow
74  virtual void stepSimulateControl(const std::shared_ptr< StOpt::SpaceGrid> &p_grid,
                          const std::vector< StOpt::GridTreeValue > &p_control,
75                                  StOpt::StateTreeStocks &p_state,
76                                  Eigen::Ref<Eigen::ArrayXd> p_phiInOut) const = 0 ;
77
78
79
80  /// \brief Get the number of regimes allowed for the asset to be reached at the
                          current time step
81  /// If \f$ t \f$ is the current time, and \f$ dt \f$ the resolution step, this is
                          the number of regime allowed on \f$[ t- dt, t[\f$
82  virtual int getNbRegime() const = 0 ;
83
84  /// \brief get the simulator back
85  virtual std::shared_ptr< StOpt::SimulatorDPBaseTree > getSimulator() const = 0;
86
87  /// \brief get back the dimension of the control
88  virtual int getNbControl() const = 0 ;
89
90  /// \brief get size of the function to follow in simulation
91  virtual int getSimuFuncSize() const = 0;
92
93 };
94 }
95 #endif /* OPTIMIZERDPTREEBASE_H */

```

As the `OptimizerDPTreeBase` class is derived from `OptimizerBase`, we detail the additional methods required:

- the `stepOptimize` method is used in optimization. We want to calculate the optimal value at current t_i at a grid point `p_stock` using a grid `p_grid` at the next date t_{i+1} , the continuation values for all regimes `p_condEsp` permitting to calculate conditional expectation of the optimal value function calculated at the previously treated time step t_{i+1} . From a grid point `p_stock` it calculates the function values and the optimal controls. It returns a pair where the
 - first element is a matrix (first dimension is the number of nodes, second dimension the number of regimes) giving the function value,
 - second element is a matrix (first dimension is the number of nodes, second dimension the number of controls) giving the optimal control.
- the `stepSimulate` method is used after optimization using the continuation values calculated in the optimization part: this continuation values are stored in a `GridTreeValue` object for interpolation. From a state `p_state` (storing the $X^{x,t}$), the continuation values calculated in optimization `p_continuation`, the optimal functions values stored in `p_phiInOut`.
- the `stepSimulateControl` simulate the strategy by direct interpolation of the control for a given node in the tree (sampled) and a position in the stock.

The framework

Most object use with regression have their equivalent with tree methods.

In optimization:

`TransitionStepTreeDPDist` permits to solve the transition at one date for all the grid point and the nodes of the tree using distribution (MPI).

```
1 TransitionStepTreeDPDist(const std::shared_ptr<FullGrid> &p_pGridCurrent,
2                          const std::shared_ptr<FullGrid> &p_pGridPrevious,
3                          const std::shared_ptr<OptimizerDPTreeBase > &p_pOptimize
```

with

- `p_pGridCurrent` is the grid at the current time step (t_i),
- `p_pGridPrevious` is the grid at the previously treated time step (t_{i+1}),
- `p_pOptimize` the optimizer object

A similar object is available without the MPI distribution framework `TransitionStepTreeDP` with still enabling parallelization with threads and MPI on the calculations on the full grid points.

The main method is

```
1 std::pair< std::vector< std::shared_ptr< Eigen::ArrayXXd > >, std::vector< std:::
  shared_ptr< Eigen::ArrayXXd > > > oneStep(const std::vector< std::shared_ptr<
  Eigen::ArrayXXd > > &p_phiIn,
2      const std::shared_ptr< Tree> &p_condExp) const
```

with

- `p_phiIn` the vector (its size corresponds to the number of regimes) of matrix of optimal values calculated at the previous time iteration for each regime. Each matrix is a number of nodes at the following date by number of stock points matrix.
- `p_condExp` the conditional expectation operator,

returning a pair:

- first element is a vector of matrix with new optimal values at the current time step (each element of the vector corresponds to a regime and each matrix is a number of nodes at current date by number of stock points matrix).
- second element is a vector of matrix with new optimal controls at the current time step (each element of the vector corresponds to a control and each matrix is a number of nodes at the current date by number of stock points matrix).

A second method is provided permitting to dump the continuation values of the problem and the optimal control at each time step:

```
1 void dumpContinuationValues(std::shared_ptr<gs::BinaryFileArchive> p_ar,
2                             const std::string &p_name, const int &p_iStep,
3                             const std::vector< std::shared_ptr< Eigen::ArrayXXd > > &
4                             p_phiIn,
5                             const std::vector< std::shared_ptr< Eigen::ArrayXXd > > &
6                             p_control,
7                             const std::shared_ptr< Tree> &p_tree,
8                             const bool &p_bOneFile) const;
```

with:

- `p_ar` is the archive where controls and solutions are dumped,
- `p_name` is a base name used in the archive to store the solution and the control,
- `p_phiInPrev` is the solution at the previous time step used to calculate the continuation values that are stored,
- `p_control` stores the optimal controls calculated at the current time step,
- `p_tree` is the conditional expectation object permitting to calculate conditional expectation of functions defined at the previous time step treated `p_phiInPrev` and permitting to store a representation of the optimal control.
- `p_bOneFile` is set to one if the continuation and optimal controls calculated by each processor are dumped on a single file. Otherwise the continuation and optimal controls calculated by each processor are dumped on different files (one by processor).

Remark 18 *The `p_bOneFile` is not present for `TransitionStepTreeDP` objects.*

In simulation (see detail in section for regressions)

- A first object permitting the recalculation of the optimal control in simulation.

```
1 SimulateStepTreeDist(gs::BinaryFileArchive &p_ar,  const int &p_iStep,  const std::
   string &p_nameCont,
2                                     const  std::shared_ptr<FullGrid> &p_pGridFollowing,  const
   std::shared_ptr<OptimizerDPTreeBase > &p_pOptimize,
3                                     const bool &p_bOneFile)
```

where

- `p_ar` is the binary archive where the continuation values are stored,
- `p_iStep` is the number associated to the current time step (0 at the beginning date of simulation, the number is increased by one at each time step simulated),
- `p_nameCont` is the base name for continuation values,
- `p_GridFollowing` is the grid at the next time step (`p_iStep+1`),
- `p_Optimize` the Optimizer describing the transition from one time step to the following one,
- `p_OneFile` equal to `true` if a single archive is used to store continuation values.

This object implements the method `oneStep`

```
1 void oneStep(std::vector<StateTreeStocks > &p_statevector, Eigen::ArrayXXd &
   p_phiInOut) const
```

where:

- `p_statevector` store the states for the all the simulations: this state is updated by application of the optimal command,

- `p_phiInOut` stores the gain/cost functions for all the simulations: it is updated by the function call. The size of the array is $(nb, nbSimul)$ where nb is given by the `getSimuFuncSize` method of the optimizer and $nbSimul$ the number of Monte Carlo simulations.

Remark 19 *The version without distribution of the Bellman values is available in `SimulateStepTree` object.*

- A second object directly interpolating the control

```

1 SimulateStepTreeControlDist(gs::BinaryFileArchive &p_ar,  const int &p_iStep,  const
  std::string &p_nameCont,
2                                     const  std::shared_ptr<FullGrid> &p_pGridCurrent,
3                                     const  std::shared_ptr<FullGrid> &p_pGridFollowing,
4                                     const  std::shared_ptr<OptimizerDPTreeBase > &
  p_pOptimize,
5                                     const bool &p_bOneFile);

```

where

- `p_ar` is the binary archive where the continuation values are stored,
- `p_iStep` is the number associated to the current time step (0 at the beginning date of simulation, the number is increased by one at each time step simulated),
- `p_nameCont` is the base name for control values,
- `p_GridCurrent` is the grid at the current time step (`p_iStep`),
- `p_GridFollowing` is the grid at the next time step (`p_iStep+1`),
- `p_Optimize` is the Optimizer describing the transition from one time step to the following one,
- `p_OneFile` equals `true` if a single archive is used to store continuation values.

This object implements the method `oneStep`

```

1 void oneStep(std::vector<StateTreeStocks > &p_statevector, Eigen::ArrayXXd &
  p_phiInOut) const;

```

where:

- `p_statevector` stores for all the simulations the state: this state is updated by application of the optimal commands,
- `p_phiInOut` stores the gain/cost functions for all the simulations: it is updated by the function call. The size of the array is $(nb, nbSimul)$ where nb is given by the `getSimuFuncSize` method of the optimizer and $nbSimul$ the number of Monte Carlo simulations.

Remark 20 *The non distributed version is given by the `SimulateStepTreeControl` object.*

9.4.2 Solving Dynamic Programming by solving LP problems

This approach can only be used for continuous problems with convex or concave Bellman values. See section 9.2.3 for some explanation of the cut approximation.

Requirement to use the framework

The business object developed should derive from the `OptimizerDPCutBase` object derived from the `OptimizerBase` object.

```
1 // Copyright (C) 2019 EDF
2 // All Rights Reserved
3 // This code is published under the GNU Lesser General Public License (GNU LGPL)
4 #ifndef OPTIMIZERDPCUTTREEBASE_H
5 #define OPTIMIZERDPCUTTREEBASE_H
6 #include <Eigen/Dense>
7 #include "StOpt/core/utils/StateWithStocks.h"
8 #include "StOpt/core/grids/SpaceGrid.h"
9 #include "StOpt/tree/Tree.h"
10 #include "StOpt/tree/StateTreeStocks.h"
11 #include "StOpt/tree/ContinuationCutsTree.h"
12 #include "StOpt/dp/SimulatorDPBaseTree.h"
13 #include "StOpt/dp/OptimizerBase.h"
14
15 /** \file OptimizerDPCutBase.h
16 * \brief Define an abstract class for Dynamic Programming problems solved by tree
17 * methods using cust to approximate
18 * Bellman values
19 * \author Xavier Warin
20 */
21 namespace StOpt
22 {
23
24 /// \class OptimizerDPCutTreeBase OptimizerDPCutTreeBase.h
25 /// Base class for optimizer for Dynamic Programming with tree methods and cuts, so using
26 LP to solve transitional problems
27 class OptimizerDPCutTreeBase : public OptimizerBase
28 {
29
30 public :
31
32 OptimizerDPCutTreeBase() {}
33
34 virtual ~OptimizerDPCutTreeBase() {}
35
36 /// \brief defines the diffusion cone for parallelism
37 /// \param p_regionByProcessor region (min max) treated by the processor for
38 the different regimes treated
39 /// \return returns in each dimension the min max values in the stock that can be
40 reached from the grid p_gridByProcessor for each regime
41 virtual std::vector< std::array< double, 2> > getCone(const std::vector< std::array<
42 double, 2> > &p_regionByProcessor) const = 0;
43
44 /// \brief defines the dimension to split for MPI parallelism
45 /// For each dimension return true is the direction can be split
46 virtual Eigen::Array< bool, Eigen::Dynamic, 1> getDimensionToSplit() const = 0 ;
47
48 /// \brief defines a step in optimization
49 /// \param p_grid grid at arrival step after command
50 /// \param p_stock coordinates of the stock point to treat
51 /// \param p_condEsp continuation values for each regime
52 /// \return For each regimes (column) gives the solution for each particle , and cut
53 (row)
```

```

50  ///          For a given simulation , cuts components (C) at a point stock \S \bar S
51  \f$ are given such that the cut is given by
52  ///          \f$ C[0] + \sum_{i=1}^d C[i] (S_i - \bat S_i) \f$
53  virtual Eigen::ArrayXXd stepOptimize(const std::shared_ptr< StOpt::SpaceGrid> &
54  p_grid, const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_stock,
55  const std::vector< StOpt::ContinuationCutsTree
56  > &p_condEsp) const = 0;
57
58  /// \brief defines a step in simulation
59  /// Control are recalculated during simulation using a local optimization using the LP
60  /// \param p_grid grid at arrival step after command
61  /// \param p_continuation defines the continuation operator for each regime
62  /// \param p_state defines the state value (modified)
63  /// \param p_phiInOut defines the value functions (modified) : size number of
64  functions to follow
65  virtual void stepSimulate(const std::shared_ptr< StOpt::SpaceGrid> &p_grid, const std
66  ::vector< StOpt::ContinuationCutsTree > &p_continuation,
67  StOpt::StateTreeStocks &p_state,
68  Eigen::Ref<Eigen::ArrayXd> p_phiInOut) const = 0 ;
69
70  /// \brief Get the number of regimes allowed for the asset to be reached at the
71  current time step
72  /// If \f$ t \f$ is the current time, and \f$ dt \f$ the resolution step, this is
73  the number of regime allowed on \f$[ t- dt, t[\f$
74  virtual int getNbRegime() const = 0 ;
75
76  /// \brief get the simulator back
77  virtual std::shared_ptr< StOpt::SimulatorDPBaseTree > getSimulator() const = 0;
78
79  /// \brief get back the dimension of the control
80  virtual int getNbControl() const = 0 ;
81
82  /// \brief get size of the function to follow in simulation
83  virtual int getSimuFuncSize() const = 0;
84
85 };
86 }
87 #endif /* OPTIMIZERDPCUTTREEBASE_H */

```

We detail the different methods to implement in addition to the methods of `OptimizerBase`:

- the `stepOptimize` method is used in optimization. We want to calculate the optimal value and the corresponding sensibilities with respect to the stocks at current t_i at a grid point `p_stock` using a grid `p_grid` at the next date t_{i+1} , the continuation cuts values for all regimes `p_condEsp` permitting to calculate an upper estimation (when maximizing) of conditional expectation of the optimal values using some optimization calculated at the previously treated time step t_{i+1} . From a grid point `p_stock` it calculates the function values and the corresponding sensibilities. It returns a matrix (first dimension is the number of nodes at the current cate by the number of cuts components (number of storage +1), second dimension the number of regimes) giving the function value and sensibilities.
- the `stepSimulate` method is used after optimization using the continuation cuts values calculated in the optimization part. From a state `p_state` (storing the $X^{x,t}$), the continuation cuts values calculated in optimization `p_continuation`, the optimal cash flows are stored in `p_phiInOut`.

In the case of a gas storage the `Optimize` object is given in the `OptimizeGasStorageTreeCut.h` file.

The framework in optimization using some cuts methods

We process exactly as in section 9.2.3. The framework provides a `TransitionStepTreeDPCutDist` object in MPI that permits to solve the optimization problem with distribution of the data on one time step with the following constructor:

```
1 TransitionStepTreeDPCutDist(const std::shared_ptr<FullGrid> &p_pGridCurrent ,
2                             const std::shared_ptr<FullGrid> &p_pGridPrevious ,
3                             const std::shared_ptr<OptimizerDPCutTreeBase > &
                               p_pOptimize);
```

with

- `p_pGridCurrent` is the grid at the current time step (t_i),
- `p_pGridPrevious` is the grid at the previously treated time step (t_{i+1}),
- `p_pOptimize` the optimizer object

The construction is very similar to classical regression methods only using command discretization.

Remark 21 *A similar object is available without the MPI distribution framework `TransitionStepTreeDPCut` with still enabling parallelization with threads and MPI on the calculations on the full grid points.*

The main method is

```
1 std::vector< std::shared_ptr< Eigen::ArrayXXd > > oneStep(const std::vector< std:::
2   shared_ptr< Eigen::ArrayXXd > > &p_phiIn ,
   const std::shared_ptr< Tree> &p_condExp) const
```

with

- `p_phiIn` the vector (its size corresponds to the number of regimes) of matrix of optimal values and sensibilities calculated at the previous time iteration for each regime. Each matrix has a number of rows equal to the number of nodes at next date by the number of stock plus one. The number of columns is equal to the number of stock points on the grid. In the row, the number of simulations by the number of stock plus one value are stored as follows:
 - The first values (number of nodes at next date : NS) corresponds to the optimal Bellman values at a given stock point,
 - The NS values following corresponds to sensibilities $\frac{\partial V}{\partial S_1}$ to first storage
 - The NS values following corresponds to sensibilities to the second storage...
 - ...
- `p_condExp` the conditional expectation operator,

returning a vector of matrix with new optimal values and sensibilities at the current time step (each element of the vector corresponds to a regime and each matrix has a size equal to the (number of nodes at the current date by (the number of storage plus one)) by the number of stock points). The structure of the output is then similar to the input `p_phiIn`. A second method is provided permitting to dump the continuation values and cuts of the problem and the optimal control at each time step:

```

1 void dumpContinuationCutsValues(std::shared_ptr<gs::BinaryFileArchive> p_ar, const std
  ::string &p_name, const int &p_iStep,
2                               const std::vector< std::shared_ptr< Eigen::ArrayXXd > >
  &p_phiInPrev, const std::shared_ptr< Tree> &
3                               p_condExp,
                               const bool &p_bOneFile) const

```

with:

- `p_ar` is the archive where controls and solutions are dumped,
- `p_name` is a base name used in the archive to store the solution and the control,
- `p_phiInPrev` is the solution at the previous time step used to calculate the continuation cuts values that are stored,
- `p_condExp` is the conditional expectation object permitting to calculate conditional expectation of functions defined at the previous time step treated `p_phiInPrev`.
- `p_bOneFile` is set to one if the continuation cuts values calculated by each processor are dumped on a single file. Otherwise the continuation cuts values calculated by each processor are dumped on different files (one by processor).

We give here a simple example of a time resolution using this method when the MPI distribution of data is used

```

1 // Copyright (C) 2019 EDF
2 // All Rights Reserved
3 // This code is published under the GNU Lesser General Public License (GNU LGPL)
4 #ifndef USE_MPI
5 #include <fstream>
6 #include <memory>
7 #include <functional>
8 #include <boost/lexical_cast.hpp>
9 #include <boost/mpi.hpp>
10 #include <Eigen/Dense>
11 #include "geners/BinaryFileArchive.hh"
12 #include "StOpt/core/grids/FullGrid.h"
13 #include "StOpt/tree/Tree.h"
14 #include "StOpt/dp/FinalStepDPCutDist.h"
15 #include "StOpt/dp/TransitionStepTreeDPCutDist.h"
16 #include "StOpt/core/parallelism/reconstructProcOMpi.h"
17 #include "StOpt/dp/OptimizerDPCutTreeBase.h"
18 #include "StOpt/dp/SimulatorDPBaseTree.h"
19
20
21 using namespace std;
22 using namespace Eigen;
23
24 double DynamicProgrammingByTreeCutDist(const shared_ptr<StOpt::FullGrid> &p_grid,
25                                       const shared_ptr<StOpt::OptimizerDPCutTreeBase > &
26                                       p_optimize,
27                                       const function< ArrayXd(const int &, const ArrayXd
28                                       &, const ArrayXd &> &p_funcFinalValue,
29                                       const ArrayXd &p_pointStock,
30                                       const int &p_initialRegime,
31                                       const string &p_fileToDump,
32                                       const bool &p_bOneFile)
33 {
34   // from the optimizer get back the simulator
35   shared_ptr< StOpt::SimulatorDPBaseTree> simulator = p_optimize->getSimulator();
36   // final values

```

```

35     vector< shared_ptr< ArrayXXd > > valueCutsNext = StOpt::FinalStepDPCutDist(p_grid,
        p_optimize->getNbRegime(), p_optimize->getDimensionToSplit())(p_funcFinalValue,
        simulator->getNodes());
36     // dump
37     boost::mpi::communicator world;
38     string toDump = p_fileToDump ;
39     // test if one file generated
40     if (!p_bOneFile)
41         toDump += "_" + boost::lexical_cast<string>(world.rank());
42     shared_ptr<gs::BinaryFileArchive> ar;
43     if ((!p_bOneFile) || (world.rank() == 0))
44         ar = make_shared<gs::BinaryFileArchive>(toDump.c_str(), "w");
45     // name for object in archive
46     string nameAr = "ContinuationTree";
47     for (int iStep = 0; iStep < simulator->getNbStep(); ++iStep)
48     {
49         simulator->stepBackward();
50         // probabilities
51         std::vector<double> proba = simulator->getProba();
52         // get connection between nodes
53         std::vector< std::vector<std::array<int, 2> > > connected = simulator->
            getConnected();
54         // conditional expectation operator
55         shared_ptr<StOpt::Tree> tree = std::make_shared<StOpt::Tree>(proba, connected);
56         // transition object
57         StOpt::TransitionStepTreeDPCutDist transStep(p_grid, p_grid, p_optimize);
58         vector< shared_ptr< ArrayXXd > > valueCuts = transStep.oneStep(valueCutsNext, tree
            );
59         transStep.dumpContinuationCutsValues(ar, nameAr, iStep, valueCutsNext, tree,
            p_bOneFile);
60         valueCutsNext = valueCuts;
61     }
62     // reconstruct a small grid for interpolation
63     ArrayXd valSim = StOpt::reconstructProc0Mpi(p_pointStock, p_grid, valueCutsNext[
        p_initialRegime], p_optimize->getDimensionToSplit());
64     return ((world.rank() == 0) ? valSim(0) : 0.);
65 }
66 #endif

```

An example without distribution of the data can be found in the `DynamicProgrammingByTreeCut.cpp` file.

Using the framework in simulation

Similarly to section 9.2.3, we can use the cuts calculated in optimization to test the optimal strategy found. In order to simulate one step of the optimal policy, an object `SimulateStepTreeCutDist` is provided with constructor

```

1     SimulateStepTreeCutDist(gs::BinaryFileArchive &p_ar, const int &p_iStep, const std::
        string &p_nameCont,
2         const std::shared_ptr<FullGrid> &p_pGridFollowing,
3         const std::shared_ptr<OptimizerDPCutTreeBase > &p_pOptimize,
4         const bool &p_bOneFile);

```

where

- `p_ar` is the binary archive where the continuation values are stored,
- `p_iStep` is the number associated to the current time step (0 at the beginning date of simulation, the number is increased by one at each time step simulated),
- `p_nameCont` is the base name for continuation values,

- `p_GridFollowing` is the grid at the next time step (`p_iStep+1`),
- `p_Optimize` the Optimizer describing the transition problem solved using a LP program.
- `p_OneFile` equal to `true` if a single archive is used to store continuation values.

Remark 22 *A version without distribution of data but with multithreaded and with MPI possible on calculations is available with the object `SimulateStepTreeCut`. The `p_OneFile` argument is omitted during construction.*

This object implements the method `oneStep`

```
1 void oneStep(std::vector<StateTreeStocks > &p_statevector, Eigen::ArrayXXd &p_phiInOut)
   const
```

where:

- `p_statevector` store the states for the all the simulations: this state is updated by application of the optimal command,
- `p_phiInOut` stores the gain/cost functions for all the simulations: it is updated by the function call. The size of the array is $(nb, nbSimul)$ where nb is given by the `getSimuFuncSize` method of the optimizer and $nbSimul$ the number of Monte Carlo simulations.

An example of the use of this method to simulate an optimal policy with distribution is given below:

```
1 // Copyright (C) 2019 EDF
2 // All Rights Reserved
3 // This code is published under the GNU Lesser General Public License (GNU LGPL)
4 #ifndef SIMULATEREGTRECUTDIST_H
5 #define SIMULATEREGTRECUTDIST_H
6 #include <functional>
7 #include <memory>
8 #include <Eigen/Dense>
9 #include <boost/mpi.hpp>
10 #include "generators/BinaryFileArchive.hh"
11 #include "StOpt/core/grids/FullGrid.h"
12 #include "StOpt/tree/StateTreeStocks.h"
13 #include "StOpt/dp/SimulateStepTreeCutDist.h"
14 #include "StOpt/dp/OptimizerDPCutBase.h"
15 #include "StOpt/dp/SimulatorDPBase.h"
16
17
18 /** \file SimulateTreeCutDist.h
19  * \brief Defines a simple program showing how to use simulations when optimizatoin achieved
20  *         with transition problems solved with cuts and uncertainties on a tree
21  *         A simple grid is used
22  * \author Xavier Warin
23  */
24
25 /// \brief Simulate the optimal strategy , mpi version, Bellman cuts used to allow LP
26         resolution of transition problems when uncertainties are defined on a tree
27 /// \param p_grid grid used for deterministic state (stocks for example)
28 /// \param p_optimize optimizer defining the optimization between two time
29         steps
30 /// \param p_funcFinalValue function defining the final value cuts
```

```

29 /// \param p_pointStock          initial point stock
30 /// \param p_initialRegime      regime at initial date
31 /// \param p_fileToDump        name associated to dumped bellman values
32 /// \param p_bOneFile          do we store continuation values in only one file
33 double SimulateTreeCutDist(const std::shared_ptr<StOpt::FullGrid> &p_grid,
34                          const std::shared_ptr<StOpt::OptimizerDPCutTreeBase > &
35                          p_optimize,
36                          const std::function< Eigen::ArrayXd(const int &, const Eigen::
37                          ArrayXd &, const Eigen::ArrayXd &> &p_funcFinalValue,
38                          const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_pointStock,
39                          const int &p_initialRegime,
40                          const std::string &p_fileToDump,
41                          const bool &p_bOneFile)
42 {
43     boost::mpi::communicator world;
44     // from the optimizer get back the simulator
45     std::shared_ptr< StOpt::SimulatorDPBaseTree> simulator = p_optimize->getSimulator();
46     int nbStep = simulator->getNbStep();
47     std::vector< StOpt::StateTreeStocks> states;
48     states.reserve(simulator->getNbSimul());
49     for (int is = 0; is < simulator->getNbSimul(); ++is)
50         states.push_back(StOpt::StateTreeStocks(p_initialRegime, p_pointStock, 0));
51     std::string toDump = p_fileToDump ;
52     // test if one file generated
53     if (!p_bOneFile)
54         toDump += "_" + boost::lexical_cast<std::string>(world.rank());
55     gs::BinaryFileArchive ar(toDump.c_str(), "r");
56     // name for continuation object in archive
57     std::string nameAr = "ContinuationTree";
58     // cost function
59     Eigen::ArrayXXd costFunction = Eigen::ArrayXXd::Zero(p_optimize->getSimuFuncSize(),
60     simulator->getNbSimul());
61     for (int istep = 0; istep < nbStep; ++istep)
62     {
63         StOpt::SimulateStepTreeCutDist(ar, nbStep - 1 - istep, nameAr, p_grid, p_optimize,
64         p_bOneFile).oneStep(states, costFunction);
65
66         // new date
67         simulator->stepForward();
68         for (int is = 0; is < simulator->getNbSimul(); ++is)
69             states[is].setStochasticRealization(simulator->getNodeAssociatedToSim(is));
70     }
71     // final : accept to exercise if not already done entirely (here suppose one function
72     // to follow)
73     for (int is = 0; is < simulator->getNbSimul(); ++is)
74         costFunction(0, is) += p_funcFinalValue(states[is].getRegime(), states[is].
75         getPtStock(), simulator->getValueAssociatedToNode(states[is].
76         getStochasticRealization()))(0);
77
78     return costFunction.mean();
79 }
80 #endif /* SIMULATETREECUTDIST_H */

```

The version of the previous example using a single archive storing the control/solution is given in the `SimulateTreeCut.h` file.

Chapter 10

The Python API

10.1 Mapping to the framework

In order to use the Python API, it is possible to use only the mapping of the grids, continuation values, and regression object and to program an equivalent of `TransitionStepRegressionDP` and of `SimulateStepRegression`, `SimulateStepRegressionControl` in python. No mapping is currently available for `TransitionStepDP`. An example using python is given by

```
1 # Copyright (C) 2016 EDF
2 # All Rights Reserved
3 # This code is published under the GNU Lesser General Public License (GNU LGPL)
4 import numpy as np
5 import StOptReg as reg
6
7 class TransitionStepRegressionDP:
8
9     def __init__(self, p_pGridCurrent, p_pGridPrevious, p_pOptimize):
10
11         self.m_pGridCurrent = p_pGridCurrent
12         self.m_pGridPrevious = p_pGridPrevious
13         self.m_pOptimize = p_pOptimize
14
15     def oneStep(self, p_phiIn, p_condExp):
16
17         nbRegimes = self.m_pOptimize.getNbRegime()
18         phiOut = list(range(nbRegimes))
19         nbControl = self.m_pOptimize.getNbControl()
20         controlOut = list(range(nbControl))
21
22         # only if the processor is working
23         if self.m_pGridCurrent.getNbPoints() > 0:
24
25             # allocate for solution
26             for iReg in range(nbRegimes):
27                 phiOut[iReg] = np.zeros((p_condExp.getNbSimul(), self.m_pGridCurrent.
28                                         getNbPoints()))
29
30             for iCont in range(nbControl):
31                 controlOut[iCont] = np.zeros((p_condExp.getNbSimul(), self.m_pGridCurrent.
32                                               getNbPoints()))
33
34             # number of threads
35             nbThreads = 1
36
37             contVal = []
```

```

37         for iReg in range(len(p_phiIn)):
38             contVal.append(reg.ContinuationValue(self.m_pGridPrevious, p_condExp,
39                                                  p_phiIn[iReg]))
40
41             # create iterator on current grid treated for processor
42             iterGridPoint = self.m_pGridCurrent.getGridIteratorInc(0)
43
44             # iterates on points of the grid
45             for iIter in range(self.m_pGridCurrent.getNbPoints()):
46
47                 if iterGridPoint.isValid():
48                     pointCoord = iterGridPoint.getCoordinate()
49                     # optimize the current point and the set of regimes
50                     solutionAndControl = self.m_pOptimize.stepOptimize(self.m_pGridPrevious
51                                                                           , pointCoord, contVal, p_phiIn)
52
53                     # copy solution
54                     for iReg in range(self.m_pOptimize.getNbRegime()):
55                         phiOut[iReg][:,iterGridPoint.getCount()] = solutionAndControl[0][:,
56                                                                                       iReg]
57
58                     for iCont in range(nbControl):
59                         controlOut[iCont][:,iterGridPoint.getCount()] = solutionAndControl
60                                                                                   [1][:,iCont]
61
62                 iterGridPoint.nextInc(nbThreads)
63
64     res = []
65     res.append(phiOut)
66     res.append(controlOut)
67     return res

```

This object can be used as in a time step optimization as follows

```

1  # Copyright (C) 2016, 2018 EDF
2  # All Rights Reserved
3  # This code is published under the GNU Lesser General Public License (GNU LGPL)
4  import StOptReg
5  import StOptGeners
6  import dp.TransitionStepRegressionDP as trans
7  import dp.FinalStepDP as final
8
9
10 def DynamicProgrammingByRegression(p_grid, p_optimize, p_regressor, p_funcFinalValue,
11                                   p_pointStock, p_initialRegime, p_fileToDump, key1="Continuation" , key2 = "Control"):
12
13     # from the optimizer get back the simulation
14     simulator = p_optimize.getSimulator()
15     # final values
16     valuesNext = final.FinalStepDP(p_grid, p_optimize.getNbRegime()).operator(
17         p_funcFinalValue, simulator.getParticles())
18
19     archiveToWrite = StOptGeners.BinaryFileArchive(p_fileToDump, "w")
20     nsteps = simulator.getNbStep()
21     # iterate on time steps
22     for iStep in range(nsteps):
23         asset = simulator.stepBackwardAndGetParticles()
24
25         # conditional expectation operator
26         if iStep == (simulator.getNbStep() - 1):
27             p_regressor.updateSimulations(True, asset)
28         else:
29             p_regressor.updateSimulations(False, asset)
30
31     # transition object
32     transStep = trans.TransitionStepRegressionDP(p_grid, p_grid, p_optimize)
33     valuesAndControl = transStep.oneStep(valuesNext, p_regressor)
34     valuesNext = valuesAndControl[0]
35     control = valuesAndControl[1]

```

```

34     # Dump the continuation values in the archive:
35     archiveToWrite.dumpGridAndRegressedValue(key1, nsteps - 1 - iStep, valuesNext,
        p_regressor, p_grid)
36     archiveToWrite.dumpGridAndRegressedValue(key2, nsteps - 1 - iStep, control,
        p_regressor, p_grid)
37
38     # interpolate at the initial stock point and initial regime
39     return (p_grid.createInterpolator(p_pointStock).applyVec(valuesNext[p_initialRegime])).
        mean()

```

Some examples are available in the test directory (for example for swing options).

Another approach more effective in term of computational cost consists in mapping the simulator object derived from the `SimulatorDPBase` object and optimizer object derived from the `OptimizerDPBase` object and to use the high level python mapping of `TransitionStepRegressionDP` and `SimulateStepRegression`. In the test part of the library some Black-Scholes simulator and some Mean reverting simulator for a future curve deformation are developed and some examples of the mapping are achieved in the `Pybind11Simulators.cpp` file. Similarly the optimizer class for swings options, optimizer for a fictitious swing in dimension 2, optimizer for a gas storage, optimizer for a gas storage with switching cost are mapped to python in the `Pybind11Optimizers.cpp` file.

In the example below we describe the use of this high level interface for the swing options with a Black Scholes simulator: we give in this example the mapping of the mostly used objects:

```

1  # Copyright (C) 2016 EDF
2  # All Rights Reserved
3  # This code is published under the GNU Lesser General Public License (GNU LGPL)
4  import math
5  import imp
6  import numpy as np
7  import unittest
8  import StOptGrids
9  import StOptReg
10 import StOptGlobal
11 import StOptGeners
12 import Utils
13 import Simulators as sim
14 import Optimizers as opt
15
16 # unit test for global shape
17 #####
18
19 class OptimizerConstruction(unittest.TestCase):
20
21     def test(self):
22         try:
23             imp.find_module('mpi4py')
24             found = True
25         except:
26             print("Not parallel module found ")
27             found = False
28
29         if found :
30             from mpi4py import MPI
31             comm = MPI.COMM_WORLD
32             initialValues = np.zeros(1, dtype=np.float) + 1.
33             sigma = np.zeros(1) + 0.2
34             mu = np.zeros(1) + 0.05
35             corr = np.ones((1,1), dtype=np.float)
36             # number of step
37             nStep = 30
38             # exercise dates

```



```

39     dates = np.linspace(0., 1., nStep + 1)
40     T= dates[len(dates) - 1]
41     nbSimul = 10 # simulation number (optimization and simulation)
42     # simulator
43     #####
44     bsSim = sim.BlackScholesSimulator(initialValues, sigma, mu, corr, T, len(dates)
45         - 1, nbSimul, False)
46     strike = 1.
47     # Pay off
48     payOff= Uutils.BasketCall(strike)
49     # optimizer
50     #####
51     N = 3 # number of exercise dates
52     swiOpt = opt.OptimizerSwingBlackScholes(payOff,N)
53     # link simulator to optimizer
54     swiOpt.setSimulator(bsSim)
55     # archive
56     #####
57     ar = StOptGeners.BinaryFileArchive("Archive","w")
58     # regressor
59     #####
60     nMesh = np.array([1])
61     regressor = StOptReg.LocalLinearRegression(nMesh)
62     # Grid
63     #####
64     # low value for the meshes
65     lowValues =np.array([0.],dtype=np.float)
66     # size of the meshes
67     step = np.array([1.],dtype=np.float)
68     # number of steps
69     nbStep = np.array([N], dtype=np.int32)
70     gridArrival = StOptGrids.RegularSpaceGrid(lowValues,step,nbStep)
71     gridStart = StOptGrids.RegularSpaceGrid(lowValues,step,nbStep-1)
72     # pay off function for swing
73     #####
74     payOffBasket = Uutils.BasketCall(strike);
75     payoff = Uutils.PayOffSwing(payOffBasket,N)
76     dir(payoff)
77     # final step
78     #####
79     asset =bsSim.getParticles()
80     fin = StOptGlobal.FinalStepDP(gridArrival,1)
81     values = fin.set( payoff,asset)
82     # transition time step
83     #####
84     # on step backward and get asset
85     asset = bsSim.stepBackwardAndGetParticles()
86     # update regressor
87     regressor.updateSimulations(0,asset)
88     transStep = StOptGlobal.TransitionStepRegressionDP(gridStart,gridArrival,swiOpt
89         )
90     valuesNextAndControl=transStep.oneStep(values,regressor)
91     transStep.dumpContinuationValues(ar,"Continuation",1,valuesNextAndControl[0],
92         valuesNextAndControl[1],regressor)
93     # simulate time step
94     #####
95     nbSimul= 10
96     vecOfStates =[] # state of each simulation
97     for i in np.arange(nbSimul):
98         # one regime, all with same stock level (dimension 2), same realization of
99         # simulation (dimension 3)
100         vecOfStates.append(StOptGlobal.StateWithStocks(1, np.array([0.] ), np.zeros
101             (1)))
102     arRead = StOptGeners.BinaryFileArchive("Archive","r")
103     simStep = StOptGlobal.SimulateStepRegression(arRead,1,"Continuation",
104         gridArrival,swiOpt)
105     phi = np.zeros((1,nbSimul))
106     VecOfStateNext = simStep.oneStep(vecOfStates, phi)

```

```

102 if __name__ == '__main__':
103     unittest.main()

```

Its declination in term of a time nest for optimization is given below (please notice that the `TransitionStepRegressionDP` object is the result of the mapping between python and c++ and given in the `StOptGlobal` module)

```

1 # Copyright (C) 2016 EDF
2 # All Rights Reserved
3 # This code is published under the GNU Lesser General Public License (GNU LGPL)
4 import StOptGrids
5 import StOptReg
6 import StOptGlobal
7 import StOptGeners
8
9
10 def DynamicProgrammingByRegressionHighLevel(p_grid, p_optimize, p_regressor,
11      p_funcFinalValue, p_pointStock, p_initialRegime, p_fileToDump) :
12     # from the optimizer get back the simulation
13     simulator = p_optimize.getSimulator()
14     # final values
15     fin = StOptGlobal.FinalStepDP(p_grid, p_optimize.getNbRegime())
16     valuesNext = fin.set(p_funcFinalValue, simulator.getParticles())
17     ar = StOptGeners.BinaryFileArchive(p_fileToDump, "w")
18     nameAr = "Continuation"
19     nsteps = simulator.getNbStep()
20     # iterate on time steps
21     for iStep in range(nsteps) :
22         asset = simulator.stepBackwardAndGetParticles()
23         # conditional expectation operator
24         if iStep == (simulator.getNbStep() - 1):
25             p_regressor.updateSimulations(True, asset)
26         else:
27             p_regressor.updateSimulations(False, asset)
28
29     # transition object
30     transStep = StOptGlobal.TransitionStepRegressionDP(p_grid, p_grid, p_optimize)
31     valuesAndControl = transStep.oneStep(valuesNext, p_regressor)
32     transStep.dumpContinuationValues(ar, nameAr, nsteps - 1 -iStep, valuesNext,
33         valuesAndControl[1], p_regressor)
34     valuesNext = valuesAndControl[0]
35
36     # interpolate at the initial stock point and initial regime
37     return (p_grid.createInterpolator(p_pointStock).applyVec(valuesNext[p_initialRegime])).
38         mean()

```

Similarly a python time nest in simulation using the control previously calculated in optimization can be given as an example by:

```

1 # Copyright (C) 2016 EDF
2 # All Rights Reserved
3 # This code is published under the GNU Lesser General Public License (GNU LGPL)
4 import numpy as np
5 import StOptReg as reg
6 import StOptGrids
7 import StOptGeners
8 import StOptGlobal
9
10
11 # Simulate the optimal strategy , threaded version
12 # p_grid                grid used for deterministic state (stocks for example)
13 # p_optimize            optimizer defining the optimization between two time steps
14 # p_funcFinalValue     function defining the final value
15 # p_pointStock         initial point stock
16 # p_initialRegime     regime at initial date

```

```

17 # p_fileToDump          name of the file used to dump continuation values in
    optimization
18 def SimulateRegressionControl(p_grid, p_optimize, p_funcFinalValue, p_pointStock,
    p_initialRegime, p_fileToDump) :
19
20     simulator = p_optimize.getSimulator()
21     nbStep = simulator.getNbStep()
22     states = []
23     particle0 = simulator.getParticles()[:,0]
24
25     for i in range(simulator.getNbSimul()) :
26         states.append(StOptGlobal.StateWithStocks(p_initialRegime, p_pointStock, particle0)
    )
27
28     ar = StOptGens.BinaryFileArchive(p_fileToDump, "r")
29     # name for continuation object in archive
30     nameAr = "Continuation"
31     # cost function
32     costFunction = np.zeros((p_optimize.getSimuFuncSize(), simulator.getNbSimul()))
33
34     # iterate on time steps
35     for istep in range(nbStep) :
36         NewState = StOptGlobal.SimulateStepRegressionControl(ar, istep, nameAr, p_grid,
    p_optimize).oneStep(states, costFunction)
37         # different from C++
38         states = NewState[0]
39         costFunction = NewState[1]
40         # new stochastic state
41         particles = simulator.stepForwardAndGetParticles()
42
43         for i in range(simulator.getNbSimul()) :
44             states[i].setStochasticRealization(particles[:,i])
45
46     # final : accept to exercise if not already done entirely
47     for i in range(simulator.getNbSimul()) :
48         costFunction[0,i] += p_funcFinalValue.set(states[i].getRegime(), states[i].
    getPtStock(), states[i].getStochasticRealization()) * simulator.getActu()
49
50     # average gain/cost
51     return costFunction.mean()

```

Equivalent using MPI and the distribution of calculations and data can be used using the `mpi4py` package. An example of its use can be found in the MPI version of a swing optimization and valorization.

10.2 Special python binding

Some specific features have been added to the python interface to increase the flexibility of the library. A special mapping of the gens library has been achieved for some specific needs.

10.2.1 A first binding to use the framework

The `BinaryFileArchive` in the python module `StOptGens` permits for:

- a grid on point,
- a list of numpy array (dimension 2) of size the number of simulations used by the number of points on the grid (the size of the list corresponds to the number of regimes

used in case of a regime switching problem: if one regime, this list contains only one item which is a two dimensional array)

- a regressor

to create a set of regressed values of the numpy arrays values and store them in the archive. This functionality permits to store the continuation values associated to a problem. The dump method `dumpGridAndRegressedValue` in the `BinaryFileArchive` class permits this dump.

It is also possible to get back the continuation values obtained using the `readGridAndRegressedValue` method.

```
1 # Copyright (C) 2016 EDF
2 # All Rights Reserved
3 # This code is published under the GNU Lesser General Public License (GNU LGPL)
4 import numpy as np
5 import unittest
6 import random
7 import StOptGrids
8 import StOptReg
9 import StOptGeners
10
11
12 # unit test for dumping binary archive of regressed value and Read then
13 #####
14
15 class testBinaryArchiveStOpt(unittest.TestCase):
16
17     def testSimpleStorageAndLectureRecGrid(self):
18
19         # low value for the mesh
20         lowValues = np.array([1.,2.,3.], dtype=np.float)
21         # size of the mesh
22         step = np.array([0.7,2.3,1.9], dtype=np.float)
23         # number of step
24         nbStep = np.array([4,5,6], dtype=np.int32)
25         # degree of the polynomial in each direction
26         degree = np.array([2,1,3], dtype=np.int32)
27         # create the Legendre grid
28         grid = StOptGrids.RegularLegendreGrid(lowValues, step, nbStep, degree )
29
30
31
32         # simulate the perburbed values
33         #####
34         nbSimul =40000
35         np.random.seed(1000)
36         x = np.random.uniform(-1.,1., size=(1,nbSimul));
37         # mesh
38         nbMesh = np.array([16], dtype=np.int32)
39         # Create the regressor
40         #####
41         regressor = StOptReg.LocalLinearRegression(False,x,nbMesh)
42
43         # regressed values same values for each point of the grid
44         #####
45         toReal = (2+x[0,:]+(1+x[0,:])*(1+x[0,:]))
46         # function to regress
47         toRegress = toReal + 4*np.random.normal(0.,1,nbSimul)
48         # create a matrix (number of stock points by number of simulations)
49         toRegressMult = np.zeros(shape=(len(toRegress),grid.getNbPoints()))
50         for i in range(toRegressMult.shape[1]):
51             toRegressMult[:,i] = toRegress
52         # into a list : two times to test 2 regimes
53         listToReg = []
```

```

54 listToReg.append(toRegressMult)
55 listToReg.append(toRegressMult)
56
57
58 # Create the binary archive to dump
59 #####
60 archiveToWrite = StOptGenerators.BinaryFileArchive("MyArchive","w")
61 # step 1
62 archiveToWrite.dumpGridAndRegressedValue("toStore", 1,listToReg, regressor,grid)
63 # step 3
64 archiveToWrite.dumpGridAndRegressedValue("toStore", 3,listToReg, regressor,grid)
65
66
67 # Read the regressed values
68 #####
69 archiveToRead = StOptGenerators.BinaryFileArchive("MyArchive","r")
70 contValues = archiveToRead.readGridAndRegressedValue(3,"toStore")
71
72
73 # list of 2 continuation values
74 #####
75 stockPoint = np.array([1.5,3.,5.])
76 uncertainty = np.array([0.])
77 value =contValues[0].getValue(stockPoint,uncertainty)
78
79
80 # non regular grid
81 def testSimpleStorageAndLectureNonRegular(self):
82
83 # create the Legendre grid
84 grid = StOptGrids.GeneralSpaceGrid([[ 1., 1.7, 2.4, 3.1, 3.8 ],
85                                     [2., 4.3, 6.6, 8.9, 11.2, 15.],
86                                     [3., 4.9, 5.8, 7.7, 10.,20.]])
87
88 # simulate the perburbed values
89 #####
90 nbSimul =40000
91 np.random.seed(1000)
92 x = np.random.uniform(-1.,1.,size=(1,nbSimul));
93 # mesh
94 nbMesh = np.array([16],dtype=np.int32)
95 # Create the regressor
96 #####
97 regressor = StOptReg.LocalLinearRegression(False,x,nbMesh)
98
99 # regressed values same values for each point of the grid
100 #####
101 toReal = (2+x[0,:]+(1+x[0,:])*(1+x[0,:]))
102 # function to regress
103 toRegress = toReal + 4*np.random.normal(0.,1,nbSimul)
104 # create a matrix (number of stock points by number of simulations)
105 toRegressMult = np.zeros(shape=(len(toRegress),grid.getNbPoints()))
106 for i in range(toRegressMult.shape[1]):
107     toRegressMult[:,i] = toRegress
108 # into a list : two times to test 2 regimes
109 listToReg = []
110 listToReg.append(toRegressMult)
111 listToReg.append(toRegressMult)
112
113
114 # Create the binary archive to dump
115 #####
116 archiveToWrite = StOptGenerators.BinaryFileArchive("MyArchive","w")
117 # step 1
118 archiveToWrite.dumpGridAndRegressedValue("toStore", 1,listToReg, regressor,grid)
119 # step 3
120 archiveToWrite.dumpGridAndRegressedValue("toStore", 3,listToReg, regressor,grid)
121
122

```

```

123     # Read the regressed values
124     #####
125     archiveToRead = StOptGens.BinaryFileArchive("MyArchive","r")
126     contValues = archiveToRead.readGridAndRegressedValue(3,"toStore")
127
128
129     # list of 2 continuation values
130     #####
131     stockPoint = np.array([1.5,3.,5.])
132     uncertainty = np.array([0.])
133     value =contValues[0].getValue(stockPoint,uncertainty)
134
135 if __name__ == '__main__':
136     unittest.main()

```

10.2.2 Binding to store/read a regressor and some two dimensional array

Sometimes, users prefer to avoid the use of the framework provided and prefer to only use the python binding associated to the regression methods. When some regressions are achieved for different set of particles (meaning that one or more functions are regressed), it is possible to dump the regressor used and some values associated to these regressions:

- the `dumpSome2DArray`, `readSome2DArray` permits to dump and read 2 dimensional numpy arrays,
- the `dumpSomeRegressor`, `readSomeRegressor` permits to dump and read a regressor.

```

1 # Copyright (C) 2017 EDF
2 # All Rights Reserved
3 # This code is published under the GNU Lesser General Public License (GNU LGPL)
4 import numpy as np
5 import StOptReg
6 import StOptGens
7
8 # unit test to show how to store some regression object and basis function coefficients
9 # associated
10 #####
11
12 def createData():
13     X1=np.arange(0.0 , 2.2 , 0.01 )
14     X2=np.arange(0.0 , 1.1 , 0.005 )
15     Y=np.zeros((len(X1),len(X2)))
16     for i in range(len(X1)):
17         for j in range(len(X2)):
18             if i < len(X1)//2:
19                 if j < len(X2)//2:
20                     Y[i,j]=X1[i]+X2[j]
21                 else:
22                     Y[i,j]=4*X1[i]+4*X2[j]
23             else:
24                 if j < len(X2)//2:
25                     Y[i,j]=2*X1[i]+X2[j]
26                 else:
27                     Y[i,j]=2*X1[i]+3*X2[j]
28
29     XX1, XX2 = np.meshgrid(X1,X2)
30     Y=Y.T

```

```

31
32     r,c = XX1.shape
33
34     X = np.reshape(XX1,(r*c,1))[:,0]
35     I = np.reshape(XX2,(r*c,1))[:,0]
36     Y = np.reshape(Y,(r*c,1))[:,0]
37
38     xMatrix = np.zeros((2,len(X)))
39     xMatrix[0,:] = X
40     xMatrix[1,:] = I
41
42     return xMatrix, Y
43
44
45
46
47 # main
48
49 xMatrix, y = createData()
50
51 # 2 dimensional regression 2 by 2 meshes
52 nbMesh = np.array([2,2],dtype=np.int32)
53 regressor = StOptReg.LocalLinearRegression(False,xMatrix,nbMesh)
54
55 # coefficients
56 coeff = regressor.getCoordBasisFunction(y)
57
58 print("Regressed coeff", coeff)
59
60
61 # store them in a matrix
62 coeffList = np.zeros(shape=(1,3*2*2))
63 coeffList[0,:]=coeff.transpose()
64
65
66 # archive write for regressors
67 archiveWriteForRegressor =StOptGeners.BinaryFileArchive("archive","w")
68
69 # store
70 step =1
71 archiveWriteForRegressor.dumpSome2DArray("RegCoeff",step,coeff)
72 archiveWriteForRegressor.dumpSomeRegressor("Regressor",step,regressor)
73
74 # archive Read for regressors
75 archiveReadForRegressor =StOptGeners.BinaryFileArchive("archive","r")
76
77 # get back
78 values = archiveReadForRegressor.readSome2DArray("RegCoeff",step)
79 reg = archiveReadForRegressor.readSomeRegressor("Regressor",step)
80 print("Regressed coeff ", values)
81 print("Reg",reg)

```

Chapter 11

Using the C++ framework to solve some hedging problem

In this chapter we present an algorithm developed in StOpt to solve some hedging problem supposing that a mean variance criterion is chosen. The methodology follows the article [50] In this section we suppose that $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, (\mathcal{F}_t)_{t \in [0, T]})$ is a filtered probability space. We define a set of trading dates $\mathcal{T} = \{t_0 = 0, t_1, \dots, t_{N-1}, t_N = T\}$ and we suppose that we are given an asset used as an hedging product $(S_t)_{t_0, t_N}$ which is almost surely positive, square integrable so that $\mathbb{E}[S_t^2] < \infty$ and adapted so that S_t is \mathcal{F}_t -measurable for $t = t_0, \dots, t_N$. At last we suppose that the risk free rate is zero so that a bond has always a value of 1.

11.1 The problem

We suppose that we are given a contingent claim $H \in \mathcal{L}^2(P)$ which is supposed to be a \mathcal{F}_T -measurable random variable. In the case of a European call option on an asset S_t with strike K and maturity T , $H(\omega) = (S_T(\omega) - K)^+$.

We are only interested in self financing strategies with limited orders, so with bounded controls. Extending [35], [7] definition, we define:

Definition 1 A (\bar{m}, \bar{l}) self-financing strategy $\mathcal{V} = (\mathcal{V}_{t_i})_{i=0, \dots, N-1}$ is a pair of adapted process $(m_{t_i}, l_{t_i})_{i=0, \dots, N-1}$ defined for $(\bar{m}, \bar{l}) \in (0, \infty) \times (0, \infty)$ such that:

- $0 \leq m_{t_i} \leq \bar{m}, \quad 0 \leq l_{t_i} \leq \bar{l} \quad P.a.s. \quad \forall i = 0, \dots, N-1,$
- $m_{t_i} l_{t_i} = 0 \quad P.a.s. \quad \forall i = 0, \dots, N-1.$

In this definition m_t corresponds to the number of shares sold at date t , and l_t the number of share bought at this date.

Remark 23 The strategies defined in [35] and [7] do not impose that $m_t l_t = 0$ so a buy and sell control could happen at the same given date.

We note $\Theta^{(\bar{m}, \bar{l})}$ the set of (\bar{m}, \bar{l}) self-financing strategy and with obvious notations $\nu = (m, l)$ for $\nu \in \Theta^{(\bar{m}, \bar{l})}$.

We consider a model of proportional cost, so that an investor buying a share at date t will pay $(1 + \lambda)S_t$ and an investor selling this share will only receive $(1 - \lambda)S_t$. Assuming no transaction cost on the last date T , the terminal wealth of an investor with initial wealth x is given by:

$$x - \sum_{i=0}^{N-1} (1 + \lambda)l_{t_i}S_{t_i} + \sum_{i=0}^{N-1} (1 - \lambda)m_{t_i}S_{t_i} + \sum_{i=0}^{N-1} l_{t_i}S_{t_N} - \sum_{i=0}^{N-1} m_{t_i}S_{t_N}. \quad (11.1)$$

Remark 24 *The transaction costs on the last date T are related to the nature of the contract. In the case of a pure financial contract, the investor will sell the asset and then some transaction costs have to be paid to clear the final position. On energy market for example, the contract is often associated to physical delivery and no special fees are to be paid. Besides on these markets, even if the contract is purely financial, futures markets are rather illiquid meaning large transaction costs whereas spot markets are much more liquid so that neglecting final transaction costs is justified.*

As in [35] [7], we define the risk minimal strategy minimizing the \mathcal{L}^2 risk of the hedge portfolio:

Definition 2 *A (\bar{m}, \bar{l}) self-financing strategy $\hat{\mathcal{V}} = (\hat{m}, \hat{l})$ is global risk minimizing for the contingent claim H and the initial capital x if:*

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{\mathcal{V}} = \arg \min_{\nu=(m,l) \in \Theta(\bar{m}, \bar{l})} \mathbb{E}[(H - x + \sum_{i=0}^{N-1} (1 + \lambda)l_{t_i}S_{t_i} - \\ \sum_{i=0}^{N-1} (1 - \lambda)m_{t_i}S_{t_i} - \sum_{i=0}^{N-1} l_{t_i}S_{t_N} + \sum_{i=0}^{N-1} m_{t_i}S_{t_N})^2]. \end{aligned} \quad (11.2)$$

11.2 Theoretical algorithm

we suppose that the process is Markov and that the payoff H is a function of the asset value at maturity only to simplify the presentation for the Monte Carlo method proposed.

We introduce the global position $\nu = (\nu_i)_{i=0, \dots, N-1}$ with:

$$\nu_i = \sum_{j=0}^i (m_{t_j} - l_{t_j}), \forall i = 0, \dots, N-1.$$

Using the property that $m_{t_i}l_{t_i} = 0$, $\forall i = 0, \dots, N-1$, we get $|\nu_i - \nu_{i-1}| = l_{t_i} + m_{t_i}$ with the convention that $\nu_{-1} = 0$ and

$$G_T(\mathcal{V}) = \hat{G}_T(\nu) = x - \sum_{i=0}^{N-1} \lambda |\Delta \nu_{i-1}| S_{t_i} + \sum_{i=0}^{N-1} \nu_i \Delta S_i,$$

where $\Delta S_i = S_{t_{i+1}} - S_{t_i}$, $\Delta \nu_i = \nu_{i+1} - \nu_i$.

We then introduce $\hat{\Theta}(\bar{m}, \bar{l})$ the set of adapted random variable $(\nu_i)_{i=0, \dots, N-1}$ such that

$$-\bar{m} \leq \nu_i - \nu_{i-1} \leq \bar{l}, \forall i = 1, \dots, N-1.$$

The problem (11.2) can be rewritten as done in [42] finding $\hat{\nu} = (\hat{\nu}_i)_{i=0,\dots,N-1}$ satisfying:

$$\hat{\nu} = \arg \min_{\nu \in \hat{\Theta}(\bar{m}, \bar{l})} \mathbb{E}[(H - x - \hat{G}_T(\nu))^2]. \quad (11.3)$$

We introduce the spaces κ_i , $i = 0, \dots, N$ of the \mathcal{F}_{t_i} -measurable and square integrable random variables. We define for $i \in 0, \dots, N$, $V_i \in \kappa_i$ as:

$$\begin{aligned} V_N &= H, \\ V_i &= \mathbb{E}\left[H - \sum_{j=i}^{N-1} \nu_j \Delta S_j + \lambda \sum_{j=i}^{N-1} |\Delta \nu_{j-1}| S_{t_j} \mid \mathcal{F}_{t_i}\right], \forall i = 0, \dots, N-1. \end{aligned} \quad (11.4)$$

then

$$\mathbb{E}[(H - x - \hat{G}_T(\nu))^2] = E\left[\left((V_N - \nu_{N-1} \Delta S_{N-1} + \lambda |\Delta \nu_{N-2}| S_{t_{N-1}} - V_{N-1}) + \right. \right. \quad (11.5)$$

$$\left. \sum_{i=2}^{N-1} (V_i + \lambda |\Delta \nu_{i-2}| S_{t_{i-1}} - \nu_{i-1} \Delta S_{i-1} - V_{i-1}) + \right. \quad (11.6)$$

$$\left. (V_1 + \lambda |\nu_0| S_{t_0} - \nu_0 \Delta S_0 - x) \right)^2] \quad (11.7)$$

Due to the definition (11.4), we have that

$$E[V_i + \lambda |\Delta \nu_{i-2}| S_{t_{i-1}} - \nu_{i-1} \Delta S_{i-1} - V_{i-1} \mid \mathcal{F}_{t_{i-1}}] = 0, \forall i = 1, \dots, N, \quad (11.8)$$

so that

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbb{E}[(H - x - \hat{G}_T(\nu))^2] &= \mathbb{E}\left[\mathbb{E}[(V_N - \nu_{N-1} \Delta S_{N-1} + \lambda |\Delta \nu_{N-2}| S_{t_{N-1}} - V_{N-1})^2 \mid \mathcal{F}_{t_{N-1}}] + \right. \\ &\quad \mathbb{E}\left[\sum_{i=2}^{N-1} (V_i + \lambda |\Delta \nu_{i-2}| S_{t_{i-1}} - \nu_{i-1} \Delta S_{i-1} - V_{i-1})^2 + \right. \\ &\quad \left. \left. (V_1 + \lambda |\nu_0| S_{t_0} - \nu_0 \Delta S_0 - x)^2\right] \right] \end{aligned}$$

and iterating the process gives

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbb{E}[(H - x - \hat{G}_T(\nu))^2] &= \mathbb{E}[(V_N - \nu_{N-1} \Delta S_{N-1} + \lambda |\Delta \nu_{N-2}| S_{t_{N-1}} - V_{N-1})^2] + \\ &\quad \sum_{i=2}^{N-1} \mathbb{E}[(V_i + \lambda |\Delta \nu_{i-2}| S_{t_{i-1}} - \nu_{i-1} \Delta S_{i-1} - V_{i-1})^2] + \\ &\quad \mathbb{E}[(V_1 + \lambda |\nu_0| S_{t_0} - \nu_0 \Delta S_0 - x)^2] \end{aligned}$$

Then we can write the problem (11.3) as:

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{\nu} &= \arg \min_{\nu \in \hat{\Theta}(\bar{m}, \bar{l})} \mathbb{E}[(V_N - \nu_{N-1} \Delta S_{N-1} + \lambda |\Delta \nu_{N-2}| S_{t_{N-1}} - V_{N-1})^2] + \\ &\quad \sum_{i=2}^{N-1} \mathbb{E}[(V_i + \lambda |\Delta \nu_{i-2}| S_{t_{i-1}} - \nu_{i-1} \Delta S_{i-1} - V_{i-1})^2] + \\ &\quad \mathbb{E}[(V_1 + \lambda |\nu_0| S_{t_0} - \nu_0 \Delta S_0 - x)^2] \end{aligned} \quad (11.9)$$

We introduce the space

$$\rho_i^{\bar{m}, \bar{l}}(\eta) = \{(V, \nu)/V, \nu \text{ are } \mathbb{R} \text{ valued } \mathcal{F}_{t_i}\text{-adapted with } -\bar{m} \leq \nu - \eta \leq \bar{l}\},$$

and the space

$$\hat{\rho}_i^{\bar{m}, \bar{l}}(\eta) = \{(V, \nu_i, \dots, \nu_{N-1})/V \text{ is } \mathbb{R} \text{ valued, } \mathcal{F}_{t_i}\text{-adapted, the } \nu_j, j \geq i \text{ are } \mathbb{R} \text{ valued } \mathcal{F}_{t_j}\text{-adapted with } \bar{m} \leq \nu_i - \eta \leq \bar{l}, \bar{m} \leq \nu_{j+1} - \nu_j \leq \bar{l} \text{ for } i \leq j < N - 1\},$$

Similarly to the scheme introduced in [4] to improve the methodology proposed in [19] to solve Backward Stochastic Differential Equations, we can propose an algorithm where the update for \bar{R} is taken ω by ω and stores the optimal trading gain function on each trajectory. Then \bar{R} satisfies at date t_i with an asset value S_{t_i} for an investment ν_{i-1} chosen at date t_{i-1} :

$$\begin{aligned} \bar{R}(t_i, S_{t_i}, \nu_{i-1}) &= H - \sum_{j=i}^{N-1} \nu_j \Delta S_j + \lambda \sum_{j=i}^{N-1} |\Delta \nu_{j-1}| S_{t_j}, \\ &= R(t_{i+1}, S_{t_{i+1}}, \nu_i) - \nu_i \Delta S_i + \lambda |\Delta \nu_{i-1}| S_{t_i}, \end{aligned}$$

and at the date t_i according to equation (11.5) the optimal control is the control ν associated to the minimization problem:

$$\min_{(V, \nu) \in \rho_i^{\bar{m}, \bar{l}}(\nu_{i-1})} \mathbb{E}[(\bar{R}(t_{i+1}, S_{t_{i+1}}, \nu) - \nu \Delta S_i + \lambda |\nu - \nu_{i-1}| S_{t_i} - V)^2 | \mathcal{F}_{t_i}]$$

This leads to the Algorithm 10.

Algorithm 10 Backward resolution for \mathcal{L}^2 minimization problem avoiding conditional expectation iteration.

- 1: $\bar{R}(t_N, S_{t_{N-1}}(\omega), \nu_{N-1}) = H(\omega), \quad \forall \nu_{N-1}$
- 2: **for** $i = N, 2$ **do**
- 3:

$$\begin{aligned} (\tilde{V}(t_{i-1}, S_{t_{i-1}}, \nu_{i-2}), \nu_{i-1}) &= \arg \min_{(V, \nu) \in \rho_{i-1}^{\bar{m}, \bar{l}}(\nu_{i-2})} \mathbb{E}[(\bar{R}(t_i, S_{t_i}, \nu) - \\ &\quad \nu \Delta S_{i-1} + \lambda |\nu - \nu_{i-2}| S_{t_{i-1}} - V)^2 | \mathcal{F}_{t_{i-1}}] \end{aligned} \quad (11.10)$$

- 4: $\bar{R}(t_{i-1}, S_{t_{i-1}}, \nu_{i-2}) = \bar{R}(t_i, S_{t_i}, \nu_{i-1}) - \nu_{i-1} \Delta S_{i-1} + \lambda |\Delta \nu_{i-2}| S_{t_{i-1}}$
 - 5: **end for**
 - 6: $\nu_0 = \arg \min_{\nu \in [-\bar{m}, \bar{l}]} \mathbb{E}[(\bar{R}(t_1, S_{t_1}, \nu) + \lambda |\nu| S_{t_0} - \nu \Delta S_0 - x)^2]$
-

Remark 25 In order to treat the case of mean variance hedging that consists in finding the optimal strategy and the initial wealth to hedge the contingent claim the last line of Algorithm 10 is replaced by

$$(\tilde{V}, \nu_0) = \arg \min_{(V, \nu)} \mathbb{E}[(V(t_1, S_{t_1}, \nu) + \lambda |\nu| S_{t_0} - \nu \Delta S_0 - V)^2 + R(t_1, S_{t_1}, \nu)],$$

and last line of Algorithm 10 by

$$(\tilde{V}, \nu_0) = \arg \min_{(V, \nu) \in \mathbb{R} \times [-\bar{m}, \bar{l}]} \mathbb{E}[(\bar{R}(t_1, S_{t_1}, \nu) + \lambda |\nu| S_{t_0} - \nu \Delta S_0 - V)^2].$$

Remark 26 *In the two algorithm presented an argmin has to be achieved: a discretization in ν_{i-2} has to be achieved on a grid $[\nu_{i-1} - m, \nu_{i-1} + l]$.*

11.3 Practical algorithm based on Algorithm 10

Starting from the theoretical Algorithm 10, we aim at getting an effective implementation based on a representation of the function \tilde{V} depending on time, S_t and the position ν_t in the hedging assets.

- In order to represent the dependency in the hedging position we introduce a time dependent grid

$$\mathcal{Q}_i := (\xi k)_{k=-(i+1)\lfloor \frac{\bar{m}}{\xi} \rfloor, \dots, (i+1)\lfloor \frac{\bar{l}}{\xi} \rfloor}$$

where ξ is the mesh size associated to the set of grids $(\mathcal{Q}_i)_{i=0, N}$ and, if possible, chosen such that $\frac{\bar{l}}{\xi} = \lfloor \frac{\bar{l}}{\xi} \rfloor$ and $\frac{\bar{m}}{\xi} = \lfloor \frac{\bar{m}}{\xi} \rfloor$.

- To represent the dependency in S_t we will use a Monte Carlo method using simulated path $\left((S_{t_i}^{(j)})_{i=0, \dots, N} \right)_{j=1, \dots, M}$ and calculate the arg min in equation (11.10) using a methodology close to the one described in [9]: suppose that we are given at each date t_i $(D_q^i)_{q=1, \dots, Q}$ a partition of $[\min_{j=1, M} S_{t_i}^{(j)}, \max_{j=1, M} S_{t_i}^{(j)}]$ such that each cell contains the same number of samples. We use the Q cells $(D_q^i)_{q=1, \dots, Q}$ to represent the dependency of \tilde{V} and ν in the S_{t_i} variable.

On each cell q we search for \hat{V}^q a linear approximation of the function \tilde{V} at a given date t_i and for a position $k\xi$ so that $\hat{V}^q(t_i, S, k) = a_i^q + b_i^q S$ is an approximation of $\tilde{V}(t_i, S, k\xi)$. On the cell q the optimal numerical hedging command $\hat{\nu}^q(k)$ for a position $k\xi$ can be seen as a sensibility so it is natural to search for a constant control per cell q when the value function is represented as a linear function.

Let us note $(l_i^q(j))_{j=1, \frac{M}{Q}}$ the set of all samples belonging to the cell q at date t_i . On each mesh the optimal control $\hat{\nu}^q$ is obtained by discretizing the command ν on a grid $\eta = ((k+r)\xi)_{r=-\lfloor \frac{\bar{m}}{\xi} \rfloor, \dots, \lfloor \frac{\bar{l}}{\xi} \rfloor}$, and by testing the one giving a \hat{V}^q value minimizing the \mathcal{L}^2 risk so solving equation (11.10).

The Algorithm 11 permits to find the optimal $\nu_i^{(j)}(k)$ command using Algorithm 10 at date t_i , for a hedging position $k\xi$ and for all the Monte Carlo simulations j . For each command tested on the cell q the corresponding \hat{V}^q function is calculated by regression.

Remark 27 *It is possible to use different discretization ξ to define the set η and the set \mathcal{Q}_i . Then an interpolation is needed to get the \bar{R} values at a position not belonging to the grid. An example of the use of such an interpolation for gas storage problem tracking the optimal cash flow generated along the Monte Carlo strategies can be found in [47].*

Remark 28 *This algorithm permits to add some global constraint on the global liquidity of the hedging asset. This is achieved by restricting the possible hedging positions to a subset of \mathcal{Q}_i at each date t_i .*

Then the global discretized version of Algorithm 10 is given on Algorithm 12 where $H^{(j)}$ correspond to the j the Monte Carlo realization of the payoff.

Algorithm 11 Optimize minimal hedging position $(\hat{\nu}_{t_i}^{(l)}(k))_{l=1,\dots,M}$ at date t_{i-1}

```

1: procedure OPTIMALCONTROL(  $\bar{R}(t_{i+1}, \cdot, \cdot), k, S_{t_i}, S_{t_{i+1}}$  )
2:   for  $q = 1, Q$  do
3:      $P = \infty,$ 
4:     for  $k = -\lfloor \frac{\bar{m}}{\xi} \rfloor, \dots, \lfloor \frac{\bar{l}}{\xi} \rfloor$  do
5:        $(a_i^q, b_i^q) = \arg \min_{(a,b) \in \mathbb{R}^2} \sum_{j=1}^{\frac{M}{Q}} (\bar{R}(t_{i+1}, S_{t_{i+1}}^{l_i^q(j)}, (k+l)\xi) -$ 
         $(k+l)\xi \Delta S_{t_i}^{l_i^q(j)} +$ 
         $\lambda |l\xi| S_{t_i}^{l_i^q(j)} - (a + b S_{t_i}^{l_i^q(j)}))^2$ 
6:        $\tilde{P} = \sum_{j=1}^{\frac{M}{Q}} (\bar{R}(t_{i+1}, S_{t_{i+1}}^{l_i^q(j)}, (k+l)\xi) - (k+l)\xi \Delta S_{t_i}^{l_i^q(j)} +$ 
         $\lambda |l\xi| S_{t_i}^{l_i^q(j)} - (a_i^q + b_i^q S_{t_i}^{l_i^q(j)}))^2$ 
7:       if  $\tilde{P} < P$  then
8:          $\nu^q = k\xi, P = \tilde{P}$ 
9:       end if
10:    end for
11:    for  $j = 1, \frac{M}{Q}$  do
12:       $\hat{\nu}_i^{(l_i^q(j))}(k) = \nu^q$ 
13:    end for
14:  end for return  $(\hat{\nu}_{t_i}^{(j)}(k))_{j=1,\dots,M}$ 
15: end procedure

```

Algorithm 12 Global backward resolution algorithm, optimal control and optimal variance calculation

```

1: for  $\nu \in \mathcal{Q}_{N-1}$  do
2:   for  $j \in [1, M]$  do
3:      $\bar{R}(t_N, S_{t_N}^{(j)}, \nu) = H^{(j)}$ 
4:   end for
5: end for
6: for  $i = N, 2$  do
7:   for  $k\xi \in \mathcal{Q}_{i-2}$  do
8:      $(\nu_{i-1}^{(j)}(k))_{j=1, M} = \text{OptimalControl}(\bar{R}(t_i, \cdot, \cdot), k, S_{t_{i-1}}, S_{t_i}),$ 
9:     for  $j \in [1, M]$  do
10:       $\bar{R}(t_{i-1}, S_{t_{i-1}}^{(j)}, k\xi) = \bar{R}(t_i, S_{t_i}^{(j)}, \nu_{i-1}^{(j)}(k)) -$ 
11:         $\nu_{i-1}^{(j)}(k)\Delta S_{i-1}^{(j)} + \lambda|\nu_{i-1}^{(j)}(k) - k\xi|S_{t_{i-1}}^{(j)}$ 
12:     end for
13:   end for
14:    $P = \infty,$ 
15:   for  $k = -\lfloor \frac{\bar{m}}{\xi} \rfloor, \dots, \lfloor \frac{\bar{l}}{\xi} \rfloor$  do
16:      $\tilde{P} = \sum_{j=1}^M (\bar{R}(t_1, S_{t_1}^{(j)}, k\xi) - k\xi\Delta S_0^{(j)} + \lambda|k|\xi S_0 - x)^2$ 
17:     if  $\tilde{P} < P$  then
18:        $\nu_0 = k\xi, P = \tilde{P}$ 
19:     end if
20:   end for
21:  $Var = \frac{1}{M} \sum_{j=1}^M (\bar{R}(t_1, S_{t_1}^{(j)}, \nu_0) - \nu_0\Delta S_0^{(j)} + \lambda|\nu_0|S_0 - x)^2$ 

```

Part IV

Semi-Lagrangian methods

For the semi-Lagrangian methods the C++ API is the only one available (no python API is currently developed).

Chapter 12

Theoretical background

In this part, we are back to the resolution of equation (2.1).

12.1 Notation and regularity results

We denote by \wedge the minimum and \vee the maximum. We denote by $|\cdot|$ the Euclidean norm of a vector, $Q := (0, T] \times \mathbb{R}^d$. For a bounded function w , we set

$$|w|_0 = \sup_{(t,x) \in Q} |w(t, x)|, \quad [w]_1 = \sup_{(s,x) \neq (t,y)} \frac{|w(s, x) - w(t, y)|}{|x - y| + |t - s|^{\frac{1}{2}}}$$

and $|w|_1 = |w|_0 + [w]_1$. $C_1(Q)$ will stand for the space of functions with a finite $|\cdot|_1$ norm. For t given, we denote

$$\|w(t, \cdot)\|_\infty = \sup_{x \in \mathbb{R}^d} |w(t, x)|$$

We use the classical assumption on the data of (2.1) for a given \hat{K} :

$$\sup_a |g|_1 + |\sigma_a|_1 + |b_a|_1 + |f_a|_1 + |c_a|_1 \leq \hat{K} \quad (12.1)$$

A classical result [25] gives us the existence and uniqueness of the solution in the space of bounded Lipschitz functions:

Proposition 1 *If the coefficients of the equation (2.1) satisfy (12.1), there exists a unique viscosity solution of the equation (2.1) belonging to $C_1(Q)$. If u_1 and u_2 are respectively sub and super solution of equation (2.1) satisfying $u_1(0, \cdot) \leq u_2(0, \cdot)$ then $u_1 \leq u_2$.*

A spatial discretization length of the problem Δx being given, thereafter $(i_1 \Delta x, \dots, i_d \Delta x)$ with $\bar{i} = (i_1, \dots, i_d) \in \mathbf{Z}^d$ will correspond to the coordinates of a mesh $M_{\bar{i}}$ defining a hypercube in dimension d . For an interpolation grid $(\xi_i)_{i=0, \dots, N} \in [-1, 1]^N$, and for a mesh \bar{i} , the point $y_{\bar{i}, \tilde{j}}$ with $\tilde{j} = (j_1, \dots, j_d) \in [0, N]^d$ will have the coordinate $(\Delta x(i_1 + 0.5(1 + \xi_{j_1})), \dots, \Delta x(i_d + 0.5(1 + \xi_{j_d})))$. We denote $(y_{\bar{i}, \tilde{j}})_{\bar{i}, \tilde{j}}$ the set of all the grids points on the whole domain.

We notice that for regular mesh with constant volume Δx^d , we have the following relation for all $x \in \mathbb{R}^d$:

$$\min_{\bar{i}, \tilde{j}} |x - y_{\bar{i}, \tilde{j}}| \leq \Delta x. \quad (12.2)$$

12.2 Time discretization for HJB equation

The equation (2.1) is discretized in time by the scheme proposed by Camilli Falcone [14] for a time discretization h .

$$\begin{aligned} v_h(t+h, x) &= \inf_{a \in A} \left[\sum_{i=1}^q \frac{1}{2q} (v_h(t, \phi_{a,h,i}^+(t, x)) + v_h(t, \phi_{a,h,i}^-(t, x))) \right. \\ &\quad \left. + f_a(t, x)h + c_a(t, x)hv_h(t, x) \right] \\ &:= v_h(t, x) + \inf_{a \in A} L_{a,h}(v_h)(t, x) \end{aligned} \quad (12.3)$$

with

$$\begin{aligned} L_{a,h}(v_h)(t, x) &= \sum_{i=1}^q \frac{1}{2q} (v_h(t, \phi_{a,h,i}^+(t, x)) + v_h(t, \phi_{a,h,i}^-(t, x)) - 2v_h(t, x)) \\ &\quad + hc_a(t, x)v_h(t, x) + hf_a(t, x) \\ \phi_{a,h,i}^+(t, x) &= x + b_a(t, x)h + (\sigma_a)_i(t, x)\sqrt{hq} \\ \phi_{a,h,i}^-(t, x) &= x + b_a(t, x)h - (\sigma_a)_i(t, x)\sqrt{hq} \end{aligned}$$

where $(\sigma_a)_i$ is the i -th column of σ_a . We note that it is also possible to choose other types of discretization in the same style as those defined in [36].

In order to define the solution at each date, a condition on the value chosen for v_h between 0 and h is required. We choose a time linear interpolation once the solution has been calculated at date h :

$$v_h(t, x) = (1 - \frac{t}{h})g(x) + \frac{t}{h}v_h(h, x), \forall t \in [0, h]. \quad (12.4)$$

We first recall the following result:

Proposition 2 *Under the condition on the coefficients given by equation (12.1), the solution v_h of equations (12.3) and (12.4) is uniquely defined and belongs to $C_1(Q)$. We check that if $h \leq (16 \sup_a \{|\sigma_a|_1^2 + |b_a|_1^2 + 1\} \wedge 2 \sup_a |c_a|_0)^{-1}$, there exists C such that*

$$|v - v_h|_0 \leq Ch^{\frac{1}{4}}. \quad (12.5)$$

Moreover, there exists C independent of h such that

$$|v_h|_0 \leq C, \quad (12.6)$$

$$|v_h(t, x) - v_h(t, y)| \leq C|x - y|, \forall (x, y) \in Q^2. \quad (12.7)$$

12.3 Space interpolation

The space resolution of equation (12.3) is achieved on a grid. The ϕ^+ and ϕ^- have to be computed by the use of an interpolator I such that:

$$\begin{aligned} v_h(t, \phi_{a,h,i}^+(t, x)) &\simeq I(v_h(t, \cdot))(\phi_{a,h,i}^+(t, x)), \\ v_h(t, \phi_{a,h,i}^-(t, x)) &\simeq I(v_h(t, \cdot))(\phi_{a,h,i}^-(t, x)). \end{aligned}$$

In order to easily prove the convergence of the scheme to the viscosity solution of the problem, the monotony of the scheme is generally required leading to some linear interpolator slowly converging. An adaptation to high order interpolator where the function is smooth can be achieved using Legendre grids and Sparse grids with some truncation (see [49], [48]).

Chapter 13

C++ API

In order to achieve the interpolation and calculate the semi-Lagrangian value

$$\sum_{i=1}^q \frac{1}{2q} (v_h(t, \phi_{a,h,i}^+(t, x)) + v_h(t, \phi_{a,h,i}^-(t, x)))$$

a first object `SemiLagrangEspCond` is available:

```
1 // Copyright (C) 2016 EDF
2 // All Rights Reserved
3 // This code is published under the GNU Lesser General Public License (GNU LGPL)
4 #ifndef SEMILAGRANGESPCOND_H
5 #define SEMILAGRANGESPCOND_H
6 #include <Eigen/Dense>
7 #include <map>
8 #include <array>
9 #include <vector>
10 #include "StOpt/core/utils/constant.h"
11 #include "StOpt/core/grids/InterpolatorSpectral.h"
12
13 /** \file SemiLagrangEspCond.h
14 *  \brief Semi Lagrangian method for process \f$ d x_t = b dt + \sigma dW_t \f$
15 *  where \f$ X_t, b \f$ with values in \f$ \{\mathbb{R}\}^n \f$, \f$ \sigma \f$ a \f$ \mathbb{R}^n
16 *  \times \mathbb{R}^m \f$ matrix and \f$ W_t \f$ with values in \f$ \mathbb{R}^m \f$
17 */
18
19 namespace StOpt
20 {
21
22   /// \class SemiLagrangEspCond SemiLagrangEspCond.h
23   /// calculate semi Lagrangian operator for previously defined process.
24   class SemiLagrangEspCond
25   {
26     ///\brief interpolator
27     std::shared_ptr<InterpolatorSpectral> m_interpolator;
28
29     /// \brief store extremal values for the grid (min, max coordinates in each dimension)
30     std::vector<std::array<double, 2>> m_extremalValues;
31
32     /// \brief Do we use modification of volatility to stay in the domain
33     bool m_bModifVol ;
34
35   public :
36
37     /// \brief Constructor
38     /// \param p_interpolator Interpolator storing the grid
39     /// \param p_extremalValues Extremal values of the grid
```

```

40  /// \param p_bModifVol      do we modify volatility to stay in the domain.
41  ///                        If activated, when not modification of volatility give a
42  point inside the domain, truncation is achieved
43  SemilagrangEspCond(const std::shared_ptr<InterpolatorSpectral> &p_interpolator, const
44  std::vector<std::array< double, 2> > &p_extremalValues, const bool &p_bModifVol);
45
46  /// \brief Calculate \f$ \frac{1}{2d} \sum_{i=1}^d \phi(x+ b dt + \sigma_i \sqrt{dt})+
47  \phi(x+ b dt - \sigma_i \sqrt{dt}) \f$
48  /// where \f$ \sigma_i \f$ is column \f$ i \f$ of \f$ \sigma \f$
49  /// \param p_x              beginning point
50  /// \param p_b              trend
51  /// \param p_sig           volatility matrix
52  /// \param p_dt           Time step size
53  /// \return (the value calculated,true) if point inside the domain, otherwise (0.,
54  false)
55  std::pair<double, bool> oneStep(const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_x, const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_b
56  , const Eigen::ArrayXXd &p_sig, const double &p_dt) const;
57
58 };
59 }
60 #endif

```

Its constructor uses the following arguments:

- a first one `p_interpolator` defines a “spectral” interpolator on a grid: this “spectral” interpolator is constructed from a grid and a function to interpolate (see section 3). In our case, it will be used to interpolate the solution from the previous time step,
- a second one `p_extremalValues` defines for each dimension the minimal and maximal coordinates of points belonging to the grid,
- a third one `p_bModifVol` if set to `true` permits to achieve a special treatment when points to interpolate are outside the grid: the volatility of the underlying process is modified (keeping the same mean and variance) trying to keep points inside the domain (see [49]).

This object has the method `oneStep` taking

- `p_x` the foot of the characterize (for each dimension),
- `p_b` the trend of the process (for each dimension),
- `p_sig` the matrix volatility of the process,

such that the interpolation is achieved for a time step h at points $p_x + p_b h \pm p_{sig} \sqrt{h}$. It returns a pair (a, b) where a contains the calculated value if the b value is `true`. When the interpolation is impossible to achieve, the b value is set to `false`.

In order to use the API, an object deriving from the `OptimizerSLBase` object has to be constructed. This object permits to define the PDE to solve (with it optimization problem if any).

```

1 // Copyright (C) 2016 EDF
2 // All Rights Reserved
3 // This code is published under the GNU Lesser General Public License (GNU LGPL)
4 #ifndef OPTIMIZERSLBASE_H
5 #define OPTIMIZERSLBASE_H

```

```

6 #include <vector>
7 #include <Eigen/Dense>
8 #include "StOpt/core/grids/SpaceGrid.h"
9 #include "StOpt/core/grids/FullGrid.h"
10 #include "StOpt/core/grids/InterpolatorSpectral.h"
11 #include "StOpt/semilagrangien/SemiLagrangEspCond.h"
12
13 /** \file OptimizerSLBase.h
14 * \brief Define an abstract class for Dynamic Programming problems
15 * \author Xavier Warin
16 */
17
18 namespace StOpt
19 {
20
21 /// \class OptimizerSLBase OptimizerSLBase.h
22 /// Base class for optimizer for resolution by semi Lagrangian methods of HJB equations
23 class OptimizerSLBase
24 {
25
26
27 public :
28
29     OptimizerSLBase() {}
30
31     virtual ~OptimizerSLBase() {}
32
33
34     /// \brief define the diffusion cone for parallelism
35     /// \param p_regionByProcessor region (min max) treated by the processor for
36     /// the different regimes treated
37     /// \return returns in each dimension the min max values in the stock that can be
38     /// reached from the grid p_gridByProcessor for each regime
39     virtual std::vector< std::array< double, 2> > getCone(const std::vector< std::array<
40     double, 2> > &p_regionByProcessor) const = 0;
41
42
43     /// \brief defines the dimension to split for MPI parallelism
44     /// For each dimension return true is the direction can be split
45     virtual Eigen::Array< bool, Eigen::Dynamic, 1> getDimensionToSplit() const = 0 ;
46
47
48     /// \brief defines a step in optimization
49     /// \param p_point coordinates of the point to treat
50     /// \param p_semiLag semi Lagrangian operator for each regime for solution at the
51     /// previous step
52     /// \param p_time current date
53     /// \param p_phiInPt value of the function at the previous time step at p_point for
54     /// each regime
55     /// \return a pair :
56     /// - first an array of the solution (for each regime)
57     /// - second an array of the optimal controls ( for each control)
58     virtual std::pair< Eigen::ArrayXd, Eigen::ArrayXd> stepOptimize(const Eigen::ArrayXd
59     &p_point,
60     const std::vector< std::shared_ptr<SemiLagrangEspCond> > &p_semiLag,
61     const double &p_time,
62     const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_phiInPt) const = 0;
63
64
65     /// \brief defines a step in simulation
66     /// \param p_gridNext grid at the next step
67     /// \param p_semiLag semi Lagrangian operator at the current step in each regime
68     /// \param p_state state array (can be modified)
69     /// \param p_iReg regime number
70     /// \param p_gaussian unitary Gaussian realization
71     /// \param p_phiInPt value of the function at the next time step at p_point for
72     /// each regime
73     /// \param p_phiInOut defines the value functions (modified) to follow
74     virtual void stepSimulate(const SpaceGrid &p_gridNext,
75     const std::vector< std::shared_ptr< StOpt::
76     SemiLagrangEspCond> > &p_semiLag,

```

```

67         Eigen::Ref<Eigen::ArrayXd> p_state,    int &p_iReg,
68         const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_gaussian,
69         const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_phiInPt,
70         Eigen::Ref<Eigen::ArrayXd> p_phiInOut) const = 0 ;
71
72
73     /// \brief defines a step in simulation using the control calculated in optimization
74     /// \param p_gridNext      grid at the next step
75     /// \param p_controlInterp the optimal controls interpolator
76     /// \param p_state         state array (can be modified)
77     /// \param p_iReg          regime number
78     /// \param p_gaussian      unitary Gaussian realization
79     /// \param p_phiInOut      defines the value functions (modified) to follow
80     virtual void stepSimulateControl(const SpaceGrid &p_gridNext,
81                                     const std::vector< std::shared_ptr<
82                                         InterpolatorSpectral> > &p_controlInterp,
83                                     Eigen::Ref<Eigen::ArrayXd> p_state,    int &p_iReg,
84                                     const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_gaussian,
85                                     Eigen::Ref<Eigen::ArrayXd> p_phiInOut) const = 0 ;
86
87     /// \brief get number of regimes
88     virtual int getNbRegime() const = 0 ;
89
90     /// \brief get back the dimension of the control
91     virtual int getNbControl() const = 0 ;
92
93     /// \brief do we modify the volatility to stay in the domain
94     virtual bool getBModifVol() const = 0 ;
95
96     /// \brief get the number of Brownians involved in semi Lagrangian for simulation
97     virtual int getBrownianNumber() const = 0 ;
98
99     /// \brief get size of the function to follow in simulation
100    virtual int getSimuFuncSize() const = 0;
101
102    /// \brief Permit to deal with some boundary points that do not need boundary
103    conditions
104    /// Return false if all points on the boundary need some boundary conditions
105    /// \param p_point potentially on the boundary
106    virtual bool isNotNeedingBC(const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_point) const = 0;
107 };
108 }
109 #endif /* OPTIMIZERSLBASE_H */

```

The main methods associated to this object are:

- `stepOptimize` is use to calculate the solution of the PDE at one point.
 - It takes a point of the grid used `p_point`,
 - and apply the semi-Lagrangian scheme `p_semiLag` at this point,
 - at a date given by `p_time`.

It returns a pair containing:

- the function value calculated at `p_point` for each regime,
 - the optimal control calculated at `p_point` for each control.
- `stepSimulate` is used when the PDE is associated to an optimization problem and we want to simulate an optimal policy using the function values calculated in the optimization part. The arguments are:

- `p_gridNext` defining the grid used at the following time step,
 - `p_semiLag` the semi-Lagrangian operator constructed with an interpolator using the following time solution,
 - `p_state` the vector defining the current state for the current regime,
 - `p_iReg` the current regime number,
 - `p_gaussian` is the vector of gaussian random variables used to calculate the Brownian involved in the underlying process for the current simulation,
 - `p_phiInP` at the value of the function calculated in optimization at next time step for the given point,
 - `p_phiInOut` storing the cost functions: the size of the array is the number of functions to follow in simulation.
- `stepSimulateControl` is used when the PDE is associated to an optimization problem and we want to simulate an optimal policy using the optimal controls calculated in the optimization part. The arguments are:
 - `p_gridNext` defining the grid used at the following time step,
 - `p_controlInterp` a vector (for each control) of interpolators in controls
 - `p_state` the vector defining the current state for the current regime,
 - `p_iReg` the current regime number,
 - `p_gaussian` is the vector of gaussian random variables used to calculate the Brownian involved in the underlying process for the current simulation.
 - `p_phiInOut` storing the cost functions: the size of the array is the number of functions to follow in simulation.

On return the `p_state` vector is modified, the `p_iReg` is modified and the cost function `p_phiInOut` is modified for the current trajectory.

- the `getCone` method is only relevant if the distribution for data (so MPI) is used. As argument it take a vector of size the dimension of the grid. Each component of the vector is an array containing the minimal and maximal coordinates values of points of the current grid defining an hyper cube $H1$. It returns for each dimension, the coordinates min and max of the hyper cube $H2$ containing the points that can be reached by applying a command from a grid point in $H1$. If no optimization is achieved, it returns the hyper cube $H2$ containing the points reached by the semi-Lagrangian scheme. For explanation of the parallel formalism see chapter 9.
- the `getDimensionToSplit` method is only relevant if the distribution for data (so MPI) is used. The method permits to define which directions to split for solution distribution on processors. For each dimension it returns a Boolean where `true` means that the direction is a candidate for splitting,
- the `isNotNeedingBC` permits to define for a point on the boundary of the grid if a boundary condition is needed (`true` is returned) or if no boundary is needed (return `false`).

And example of the derivation of such an optimizer for a simple stochastic target problem (described in paragraph 5.3.4 in [49]) is given below:

```

1 #include <iostream>
2 #include "StOpt/core/utils/constant.h"
3 #include "test/c++/tools/semilagrangien/OptimizeSLCase3.h"
4
5 using namespace StOpt;
6 using namespace Eigen ;
7 using namespace std ;
8
9 OptimizerSLCase3::OptimizerSLCase3(const double &p_mu, const double &p_sig, const double &
  p_dt, const double &p_alphaMax, const double &p_stepAlpha):
10     m_dt(p_dt), m_mu(p_mu), m_sig(p_sig), m_alphaMax(p_alphaMax), m_stepAlpha(p_stepAlpha)
  {}
11
12 vector< array< double, 2> > OptimizerSLCase3::getCone(const vector< array< double, 2> >
  &p_xInit) const
13 {
14     vector< array< double, 2> > xReached(1);
15     xReached[0][0] = p_xInit[0][0] - m_alphaMax * m_mu / m_sig * m_dt - m_alphaMax * sqrt
  (m_dt);
16     xReached[0][1] = p_xInit[0][1] + m_alphaMax * sqrt(m_dt) ;
17     return xReached;
18 }
19
20 pair< ArrayXd, ArrayXd> OptimizerSLCase3::stepOptimize(const ArrayXd &p_point,
21     const vector< shared_ptr<SemiLagrangEspCond> > &p_semiLag, const double &, const
  Eigen::ArrayXd &) const
22 {
23     pair< ArrayXd, ArrayXd> solutionAndControl;
24     solutionAndControl.first.resize(1);
25     solutionAndControl.second.resize(1);
26     ArrayXd b(1);
27     ArrayXXd sig(1, 1) ;
28     double vMin = StOpt::infy;
29     for (int iA1 = 0; iA1 < m_alphaMax / m_stepAlpha; ++iA1)
30     {
31         double alpha = iA1 * m_stepAlpha;
32         b(0) = -alpha * m_mu / m_sig; // trend
33         sig(0) = alpha; // volatility with one Brownian
34         pair<double, bool> lagrang = p_semiLag[0]->oneStep(p_point, b, sig, m_dt); // test
  the control
35         if (lagrang.second)
36         {
37             if (lagrang.first < vMin)
38             {
39                 vMin = lagrang.first;
40                 solutionAndControl.second(0) = alpha;
41             }
42         }
43     }
44
45     solutionAndControl.first(0) = vMin;
46     return solutionAndControl;
47 }
48
49 void OptimizerSLCase3::stepSimulate(const StOpt::SpaceGrid &p_gridNext,
50     const std::vector< shared_ptr< StOpt::
  SemiLagrangEspCond > > &p_semiLag,
51     Eigen::Ref<Eigen::ArrayXd> p_state, int &,
52     const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_gaussian, const Eigen::ArrayXd
  &,
53     Eigen::Ref<Eigen::ArrayXd>) const
54 {
55     double vMin = StOpt::infy;
56     double alphaOpt = -1;
57     ArrayXd b(1);

```

```

58   ArrayXd sig(1, 1) ;
59   ArrayXd proba = p_state ;
60   // recalculate the optimal alpha
61   for (int iA1 = 0; iA1 < m_alphaMax / m_stepAlpha; ++iA1)
62   {
63       double alpha = iA1 * m_stepAlpha;
64       b(0) = -alpha * m_mu / m_sig; // trend
65       sig(0) = alpha; // volatility with one Brownian
66       pair<double, bool> lagrang = p_semiLag[0]->oneStep(proba, b, sig, m_dt); // test the
        control
67       if (lagrang.second)
68       {
69           if (lagrang.first < vMin)
70           {
71               vMin = lagrang.first;
72               alphaOpt = alpha;
73           }
74       }
75   }
76   proba(0) += alphaOpt * p_gaussian(0) * sqrt(m_dt);
77   // truncate if necessary
78   p_gridNext.truncatePoint(proba);
79   p_state = proba ;
80
81 }
82
83
84 void OptimizerSLCase3:: stepSimulateControl(const SpaceGrid      &p_gridNext ,
85      const vector< shared_ptr< InterpolatorSpectral> >      &p_controlInterp ,
86      Eigen::Ref<Eigen::ArrayXd> p_state,      int &,
87      const ArrayXd &p_gaussian,
88      Eigen::Ref<Eigen::ArrayXd>) const
89 {
90     ArrayXd proba = p_state ;
91     double alphaOpt = p_controlInterp[0]->apply(p_state);
92     proba(0) += alphaOpt * p_gaussian(0) * sqrt(m_dt);
93     // truncate if necessary
94     p_gridNext.truncatePoint(proba);
95     p_state = proba ;
96 }

```

13.1 PDE resolution

Once the problem is described, a time recursion can be achieved using the Transition StepSemilagrang object in a sequential resolution of the problem. This object permits to solve the problem on one time step.

```

1 // Copyright (C) 2016 EDF
2 // All Rights Reserved
3 // This code is published under the GNU Lesser General Public License (GNU LGPL)
4 #ifndef TRANSITIONSTEPSEMILAGRANG_H
5 #define TRANSITIONSTEPSEMILAGRANG_H
6 #ifdef OMP
7 #include <omp.h>
8 #endif
9 #include <functional>
10 #include <memory>
11 #include <Eigen/Dense>
12 #include "geners/BinaryFileArchive.hh"
13 #include "StOpt/semilagrangien/TransitionStepSemilagrangBase.h"
14 #include "StOpt/core/grids/SpaceGrid.h"
15 #include "StOpt/core/grids/InterpolatorSpectral.h"
16 #include "StOpt/semilagrangien/OptimizerSLBase.h"
17

```

```

18 /** \file TransitionStepSemilagrang.h
19 * \brief Solve one step of explicit semi Lagrangian scheme
20 * \author Xavier Warin
21 */
22
23
24 namespace StOpt
25 {
26
27 /// \class TransitionStepSemilagrang TransitionStepSemilagrang.h
28 /// One step of semi Lagrangian scheme
29 class TransitionStepSemilagrang : public TransitionStepSemilagrangBase
30 {
31 private :
32
33     std::shared_ptr<SpaceGrid> m_gridCurrent ; ///< global grid at current time step
34     std::shared_ptr<SpaceGrid> m_gridPrevious ; ///< global grid at previous time step
35     std::shared_ptr<OptimizerSLBase > m_optimize ; ///< optimizer solving the problem for
36         one point and one step
37
38 public :
39
40     /// \brief Constructor
41     TransitionStepSemilagrang(const std::shared_ptr<SpaceGrid> &p_gridCurrent,
42                             const std::shared_ptr<SpaceGrid> &p_gridPrevious,
43                             const std::shared_ptr<OptimizerSLBase > &p_optimize);
44
45     /// \brief One time step for resolution
46     /// \param p_phiIn for each regime the function value ( on the grid)
47     /// \param p_time current date
48     /// \param p_boundaryFunc Function at the boundary to impose Dirichlet conditions (
49     /// depending on regime and position)
50     /// \return solution obtained after one step of dynamic programming and the optimal
51     /// control
52     std::pair< std::vector< std::shared_ptr< Eigen::ArrayXd > >, std::vector< std::
53     shared_ptr< Eigen::ArrayXd > > > oneStep(const std::vector< std::shared_ptr<
54     Eigen::ArrayXd > > &p_phiIn, const double &p_time, const std::function<double(
55     const int &, const Eigen::ArrayXd &)> &p_boundaryFunc) const;
56
57     /// \brief Permits to dump continuation values on archive
58     /// \param p_ar archive to dump in
59     /// \param p_name name used for object
60     /// \param p_iStep Step number or identifier for time step
61     /// \param p_phiIn for each regime the function value
62     /// \param p_control for each control, the optimal value
63     void dumpValues(std::shared_ptr<gs::BinaryFileArchive> p_ar, const std::string &p_name,
64                    const int &p_iStep, const std::vector< std::shared_ptr< Eigen::ArrayXd > > &
65                    p_phiIn,
66                    const std::vector< std::shared_ptr< Eigen::ArrayXd > > &p_control)
67                    const;
68 };
69 }
70
71 #endif /* TRANSITIONSTEPSEMILAGRANG_H */

```

Its constructor takes the following arguments:

- `p_gridCurrent` a grid describing the meshes at the current date,
- `p_gridPrevious` a grid describing the meshes at the previously treated date,
- `p_optimize` an object derived from the `OptimizerSLBase` and describing the problem to solve at a given date and a given point of the current grid.

A first method `oneStep` takes the following arguments:

Table 13.1: Which `TransitionStepSemilagrang` object to use depending on the grid used and the type of parallelization used.

	Full grid	Sparse grid
Sequential	<code>TransitionStepSemilagrang</code>	<code>TransitionStepSemilagrang</code>
Parallelization on calculations threads and MPI	<code>TransitionStepSemilagrang</code>	<code>TransitionStepSemilagrang</code>
Distribution of calculations and data (MPI)	<code>TransitionStepSemilagrangDist</code>	Not available

- `p_phiIn` describes for each regime the solution previously calculated on the grid at the previous time,
- `p_time` is the current time step,
- `p_boundaryFunc` is a function giving the Dirichlet solution of the problem depending on the number of regimes and the position on the boundary.

It gives back an estimation of the solution at the current date on the current grid for all the regimes and an estimation of the optimal control calculated for all the controls.

A last method `dumpValues` method permits to dump the solution calculated `p_phiIn` at the step `p_istep+1` and the optimal control at step `p_istep` in an archive `p_ar`.

A version using the distribution of the data and calculations can be found in the `TransitionStepSemilagrangDist` object. An example of a time recursion in sequential can be found in the `semiLagrangianTime` function and an example with distribution can be found in the `semiLagrangianTimeDist` function. In both functions developed in the test chapter the analytic solution of the problem is known and compared to the numerical estimation obtained with the semi-Lagrangian method.

13.2 Simulation framework

Once the optimal controls and the value functions are calculated, one can simulate the optimal policy by using the function values (recalculating the optimal control for each simulation) or using directly the optimal controls calculated in optimization

- Calculate the optimal strategy in simulation by using the function values calculated in optimization:

In order to simulate one step of the optimal policy, an object `SimulateStepSemilagrangDist` is provided with constructor

```

1   SimulateStepSemilagrangDist(gs::BinaryFileArchive &p_ar,  const int &p_iStep,
2   const std::string &p_name ,
3   const std::shared_ptr<FullGrid> &p_gridNext, const std
   ::shared_ptr<OptimizerSLBase > &p_pOptimize ,
   const bool &p_bOneFile);

```

where

- `p_ar` is the binary archive where the continuation values are stored,

- `p_iStep` is the number associated to the current time step (0 at the beginning date of simulation, the number is increased by one at each time step simulated),
- `p_name` is the base name to search in the archive,
- `p_GridNext` is the grid at the next time step (`p_iStep+1`),
- `p_Optimize` is the Optimizer describing the transition from one time step to the following one,
- `p_OneFile` equals `true` if a single archive is used to store continuation values.

Remark 29 *A version without distribution of data but only multithreaded and parallelized with MPI on data is available with the object `SimulateStepSemilagrang`.*

This object implements the method `oneStep`

```
1 void oneStep(const Eigen::ArrayXXd & p_gaussian, Eigen::ArrayXXd & p_statevector , Eigen
  ::ArrayXi & p_iReg, Eigen::ArrayXd & p_phiInOuts)
```

where:

- `p_gaussian` is a two dimensional array (number of Brownian in the modelization by the number of Monte Carlo simulations).
- `p_statevector` store the continuous state (continuous state size by number of simulations)
- `p_iReg` for each simulation give the current regime number,
- `p_phiInOut` stores the gain/cost functions for all the simulations: it is updated by the function call. The size of the array is $(nb, nbSimul)$ where nb is given by the `getSimuFuncSize` method of the optimizer and $nbSimul$ the number of Monte Carlo simulations.

Remark 30 *The previous object `SimulateStepSemilagrangDist` is used with MPI for problems of quite high dimension. In the case of small dimension (below or equal to three), the parallelization with MPI or the sequential calculations can be achieved by the `SimulateStepSemilagrang` object.*

An example of the use of this method to simulate an optimal policy with distribution is given below:

```
1 // Copyright (C) 2016 EDF
2 // All Rights Reserved
3 // This code is published under the GNU Lesser General Public License (GNU LGPL)
4 #ifndef USE_MPI
5 #include <boost/random.hpp>
6 #include <memory>
7 #include <Eigen/Dense>
8 #include "generators/BinaryFileArchive.hh"
9 #include "StOpt/semilagrangien/OptimizerSLBase.h"
10 #include "StOpt/semilagrangien/SimulateStepSemilagrangDist.h"
11
12 using namespace std;
13
```

```

14 double semiLagrangianSimuDist(const shared_ptr<StOpt::FullGrid> &p_grid,
15                               const shared_ptr<StOpt::OptimizerSLBase > &p_optimize,
16                               const function<double(const int &, const Eigen::ArrayXd
17                                       &)> &p_funcFinalValue,
18                               const int &p_nbStep,
19                               const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_stateInit,
20                               const int &p_initialRegime,
21                               const int &p_nbSimul,
22                               const string &p_fileToDump,
23                               const bool &p_bOneFile)
24 {
25     boost::mpi::communicator world;
26     // store states in a regime
27     Eigen::ArrayXXd states(p_stateInit.size(), p_nbSimul);
28     for (int is = 0; is < p_nbSimul; ++is)
29         states.col(is) = p_stateInit;
30     // store the regime number
31     Eigen::ArrayXi regime = Eigen::ArrayXi::Constant(p_nbSimul, p_initialRegime);
32     // test if one file generated
33     string toDump = p_fileToDump ;
34     if (!p_bOneFile)
35         toDump += "_" + boost::lexical_cast<string>(world.rank());
36     gs::BinaryFileArchive ar(toDump.c_str(), "r");
37     // name for continuation object in archive
38     string nameAr = "Continuation";
39     // cost function
40     Eigen::ArrayXXd costFunction = Eigen::ArrayXXd::Zero(p_optimize->getSimuFuncSize
41         (), p_nbSimul);
42     // random generator and Gaussian variables
43     boost::mt19937 generator;
44     boost::normal_distribution<double> normalDistrib;
45     boost::variate_generator<boost::mt19937 &, boost::normal_distribution<double> >
46         normalRand(generator, normalDistrib);
47     Eigen::ArrayXXd gaussian(p_optimize->getBrownianNumber(), p_nbSimul);
48     // iterate on time steps
49     for (int istep = 0; istep < p_nbStep; ++istep)
50     {
51         for (int is = 0; is < gaussian.cols(); ++is)
52             for (int id = 0; id < gaussian.rows(); ++id)
53                 gaussian(id, is) = normalRand();
54
55         StOpt::SimulateStepSemilagrangDist(ar, p_nbStep - 1 - istep, nameAr, p_grid,
56             p_optimize, p_bOneFile).oneStep(gaussian, states, regime, costFunction);
57     }
58     // final cost to add
59     for (int is = 0; is < p_nbSimul; ++is)
60         costFunction(0, is) += p_funcFinalValue(regime(is), states.col(is));
61     // average gain/cost
62     return costFunction.mean();
63 }
64 #endif

```

A sequential or parallelized on calculations version of the previous example is given in the `semiLagrangianSimuDist.cpp` file.

- Calculate the optimal strategy in simulation

by interpolation of the optimal control calculated in optimization:

In order to simulate one step of the optimal policy, an object `SimulateStepSemilagrangControlDist` is provided with constructor

```

1     SimulateStepSemilagrangControlDist(gs::BinaryFileArchive &p_ar, const int &
2         p_iStep, const std::string &p_name,
3         const std::shared_ptr<FullGrid> &p_gridCur,
4         const std::shared_ptr<FullGrid> &p_gridNext,
5         const std::shared_ptr<OptimizerSLBase > &
6         p_pOptimize,

```

5

`const bool &p_bOneFile)`

where

- `p_ar` is the binary archive where the continuation values are stored,
- `p_iStep` is the number associated to the current time step (0 at the beginning date of simulation, the number is increased by one at each time step simulated),
- `p_name` is the base name to search in the archive,
- `p_GridCur` is the grid at the current time step (`p_iStep`),
- `p_GridNext` is the grid at the next time step (`p_iStep+1`),
- `p_Optimize` is the Optimizer describing the transition from one time step to the following one,
- `p_OneFile` equals `true` if a single archive is used to store continuation values.

Remark 31 *The previous object `SimulateStepSemilagrangControlDist` is used with MPI distribution of data for problems of quite high dimension. In the case of small dimension (below or equal to three), the parallelization with MPI or the sequential calculations can be achieved by the `SimulateStepSemilagrangControl` object.*

This object implements the method `oneStep`

```
1 void oneStep((const Eigen::ArrayXXd & p_gaussian, Eigen::ArrayXXd &p_statevector ,
Eigen::ArrayXi &p_iReg, Eigen::ArrayXd &p_phiInOuts)
```

where:

- `p_gaussian` is a two dimensional array (number of Brownian in the modelization by the number of Monte Carlo simulations).
- `p_statevector` stores the continuous state (continuous state size by number of simulations)
- `p_iReg` for each simulation gives the current regime number,
- `p_phiInOut` stores the gain/cost functions for all the simulations: it is updated by the function call. The size of the array is $(nb, nbSimul)$ where nb is given by the `getSimuFuncSize` method of the optimizer and $nbSimul$ the number of Monte Carlo simulations.

An example of the use of this method to simulate an optimal policy with distribution is given below:

```
1 // Copyright (C) 2016 EDF
2 // All Rights Reserved
3 // This code is published under the GNU Lesser General Public License (GNU LGPL)
4 #ifdef USE_MPI
5 #include <memory>
6 #include <boost/random.hpp>
7 #include <Eigen/Dense>
8 #include "generators/BinaryFileArchive.hh"
9 #include "StOpt/semilagrangien/OptimizerSLBase.h"
```

```

10 #include "StOpt/semilagrangien/SimulateStepSemilagrangControlDist.h"
11
12 using namespace std;
13
14 double semiLagrangianSimuControlDist(const shared_ptr<StOpt::FullGrid> &p_grid,
15                                     const shared_ptr<StOpt::OptimizerSLBase > &
16                                     p_optimize,
17                                     const function<double(const int &, const Eigen::
18                                     ArrayXd &)> &p_funcFinalValue,
19                                     const int &p_nbStep,
20                                     const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_stateInit,
21                                     const int &p_initialRegime,
22                                     const int &p_nbSimul,
23                                     const string &p_fileToDump,
24                                     const bool &p_bOneFile)
25 {
26     boost::mpi::communicator world;
27     // store states in a regime
28     Eigen::ArrayXXd states(p_stateInit.size(), p_nbSimul);
29     for (int is = 0; is < p_nbSimul; ++is)
30         states.col(is) = p_stateInit;
31     // store the regime number
32     Eigen::ArrayXi regime = Eigen::ArrayXi::Constant(p_nbSimul, p_initialRegime);
33     // test if one file generated
34     string toDump = p_fileToDump ;
35     if (!p_bOneFile)
36         toDump += "_" + boost::lexical_cast<string>(world.rank());
37     gs::BinaryFileArchive ar(toDump.c_str(), "r");
38     // name for continuation object in archive
39     string nameAr = "Continuation";
40     // cost function
41     Eigen::ArrayXXd costFunction = Eigen::ArrayXXd::Zero(p_optimize->getSimuFuncSize
42     (), p_nbSimul);
43     // random generator and Gaussian variables
44     boost::mt19937 generator;
45     boost::normal_distribution<double> normalDistrib;
46     boost::variate_generator<boost::mt19937 &, boost::normal_distribution<double> >
47     normalRand(generator, normalDistrib);
48     Eigen::ArrayXXd gaussian(p_optimize->getBrownianNumber(), p_nbSimul);
49     // iterate on time steps
50     for (int istep = 0; istep < p_nbStep; ++istep)
51     {
52         for (int is = 0; is < gaussian.cols(); ++is)
53             for (int id = 0; id < gaussian.rows(); ++id)
54                 gaussian(id, is) = normalRand();
55
56         StOpt::SimulateStepSemilagrangControlDist(ar, p_nbStep - 1 - istep, nameAr,
57         p_grid, p_grid, p_optimize, p_bOneFile).oneStep(gaussian, states, regime,
58         costFunction);
59     }
60     // final cost to add
61     for (int is = 0; is < p_nbSimul; ++is)
62         costFunction(0, is) += p_funcFinalValue(regime(is), states.col(is));
63     // average gain/cost
64     return costFunction.mean();
65 }
66 #endif

```

The sequential (or parallelized on calculations) version of the previous example is given in the `semiLagrangianSimuControl.cpp` file.

Remark 32 *In the previous example, we suppose that only one function is followed in simulation, and that we send back an average for this value function as a result.*

Table 13.2: Which simulation object to use depending on the TransitionStepSemilagrang object used.

	TransitionStepSemilagrang	TransitionStepSemilagrangDist bOneFile = true	TransitionStepSemilagrangDist bOneFile = false
SimulateStepSemilagrang	Yes	Yes	No
SimulateStepSemilagrangControl	Yes	Yes	No
SimulateStepSemilagrangDist	No	Yes	Yes
SimulateStepSemilagrangControlDist	No	Yes	Yes

Part V

An example with both dynamic
programming with regression and
PDE

In this chapter we give an example where both dynamic programming with regressions and PDE can be used. It permits to compare the resolution and the solution obtained by both methods.

In this example we take the following notations:

- D_t is a demand process (in electricity) with an Ornstein–Uhlenbeck dynamic:

$$dD_t = \alpha(m - D_t)dt + \sigma dW_t,$$

- Q_t is the cumulative carbon emission due to electricity production to satisfy the demand,

$$dQ_t = (D_t - L_t)^+ dt,$$

- L_t the total investment capacity in non emissive technology to produce electricity

$$L_t = \int_0^t l_s ds$$

where l_s is an intensity of investment in non emissive technology at date s ,

- Y_t is the carbon price where

$$Y_t = \mathbb{E}_t(\lambda 1_{Q_T \geq H}),$$

with λ and H given.

We introduce the following functions:

- the electricity price function which is a function of demand and the global investment of non emissive technology.

$$p_t = (1 + D_t)^2 - L_t,$$

- the profit function by selling electricity is given by

$$\Pi(D_t, L_t) = p_t D_t - (D_t - L_t)^+,$$

- $\tilde{c}(l_t, L_t)$ is the investment cost for new capacities of non emissive technology.

$$\tilde{c}(l, L) = \bar{\beta}(c_\infty + (c_0 - c_\infty)e^{\beta L})(1 + l)l$$

The value of the firm selling electricity is given by $V(t, D_t, Q_t, L_t)$. It satisfies the coupling equations:

$$\begin{cases} \partial_t v + \alpha(m - D)\partial_D v + \frac{1}{2}\sigma^2\partial_{DD}^2 v + (D - L)^+\partial_Q v + \Pi(D, L) \\ + sL^{1-\alpha} - y(D - L)^+ + \sup_l \{l\partial_L v - \tilde{c}(l, L)\} = 0 \\ v_T = 0 \end{cases} \quad (13.1)$$

and the carbon price $y(t, D_t, Q_t, L_t)$ is given by:

$$\begin{cases} \partial_t y + \alpha(m - D)\partial_D y + \frac{1}{2}\sigma^2\partial_{DD}^2 y + (D - L)^+\partial_Q y + l^*\partial_L y = 0 \\ y_T = \lambda 1_{Q_T \geq K} \end{cases} \quad (13.2)$$

and l^* is the optimal control in equation (13.1). The previous equation can be solved with the semi-Lagrangian method.

After a time discretization with a step δt a dynamic programming equation can be given by

$$\begin{aligned} v(T - \delta t, D, Q, L) &= \sup_l (\Pi(D, L) + sL^{1-\alpha} - y_{T-\delta t}(D - L)^+ - \tilde{c}(l, L))\delta t + \\ &\quad \mathbb{E}_{T-\delta t}(V(T, D_T^{T-\delta t, D}, Q + (D - L)^+\delta t, L + l\delta t)) \end{aligned} \quad (13.3)$$

$$Y(T - \delta t, D, Q, L) = \mathbb{E}_{T-\delta t}(Y(T, D_T^{T-\delta t, D}, Q + (D - L)^+\delta t, L + l^*\delta t)) \quad (13.4)$$

The previous equations (13.3) and (13.4) can be solved with the regression methods.

In order to use the previously developed frameworks in parallel, we have to define for both method some common variables.

- The number of regimes to use (obtained by the `getNbRegime` method) is 2: one to store the v value, one for the y value,
- In the example we want to follow during simulations the functions values v and y so we set the number of function obtained by the `getSimuFuncSize` method to 2.
- In order to test the controls in optimization and simulation we define a maximal intensity of investment `lMax` and a discretization step to test the controls `lStep`.

In the sequel we store the optimal functions in optimization and recalculate the optimal control in simulation.

13.3 The dynamic programming with regression approach

All we have to do is to specify an optimizer (`OptimizedDPEmissive`) defining the methods used to optimize and simulate, and the `getCone` method for parallelization:

```

1 // Copyright (C) 2016 EDF
2 // All Rights Reserved
3 // This code is published under the GNU Lesser General Public License (GNU LGPL)
4 #include "StOpt/core/utils/constant.h"
5 #include "OptimizedDPEmissive.h"
6
7 using namespace std ;
8 using namespace StOpt;
9 using namespace Eigen;
10
11
12 // constructor
13 OptimizedDPEmissive::OptimizedDPEmissive(const double &p_alpha,
14                                           const std::function<double(double, double)> &p_PI,
15                                           const std::function< double(double, double) > &
16                                           p_cBar, const double &p_s, const double &
17                                           p_lambda,
```

```

16         const double &p_dt,
17         const double &p_maturity,
18         const double &p_lMax, const double &p_lStep, const
           std::vector <std::array< double, 2> > &
           p_extrem):
19     m_alpha(p_alpha), m_PI(p_PI),
20     m_cBar(p_cBar), m_s(p_s), m_lambda(p_lambda), m_dt(p_dt), m_maturity(p_maturity),
           m_lMax(p_lMax), m_lStep(p_lStep),
21     m_extrem(p_extrem)
22 {}
23
24 Array< bool, Dynamic, 1> OptimizeDPEmissive::getDimensionToSplit() const
25 {
26     Array< bool, Dynamic, 1> bDim = Array< bool, Dynamic, 1>::Constant(2, true);
27     return bDim ;
28 }
29
30 // for parallelism
31 std::vector< std::array< double, 2> > OptimizeDPEmissive::getCone(const vector< std::
array< double, 2> > &p_xInit) const
32 {
33     vector< array< double, 2> > xReached(2);
34     xReached[0][0] = p_xInit[0][0] ; // Q only increases
35     xReached[0][1] = m_extrem[0][1] ; // whole domain due to demand which is unbounded
36     xReached[1][0] = p_xInit[1][0] ; // L only increases
37     xReached[1][1] = p_xInit[1][1] + m_lMax * m_dt ; // maximal increase given by the
           control
38     return xReached;
39 }
40
41 // one step in optimization from stock point for all simulations
42 std::pair< ArrayXXd, ArrayXXd> OptimizeDPEmissive::stepOptimize(const std::shared_ptr<
StOpt::SpaceGrid> &p_grid, const ArrayXd &p_stock,
43     const std::vector< ContinuationValue> &p_condEsp,
44     const std::vector < std::shared_ptr< ArrayXXd > > &) const
45 {
46     std::pair< ArrayXXd, ArrayXXd> solutionAndControl;
47     // to store final solution (here two regimes)
48     solutionAndControl.first = ArrayXXd::Constant(m_simulator->getNbSimul(), 2, -StOpt::
infty);
49     solutionAndControl.second = ArrayXXd::Constant(m_simulator->getNbSimul(), 1, -StOpt::
infty);
50     // demand
51     ArrayXd demand = m_simulator->getParticles().array().row(0).transpose();
52     // Gain (size number of simulations)
53     ArrayXd gain(m_simulator->getNbSimul());
54     double gainSubvention = m_s * pow(p_stock(1), 1. - m_alpha); // subvention for non
emissive energy
55     for (int is = 0 ; is < m_simulator->getNbSimul(); ++is)
56         gain(is) = m_PI(demand(is), p_stock(1)) + gainSubvention ; // gain by production
           and subvention
57     ArrayXd ptStockNext(2);
58     // time to maturity
59     double timeToMat = m_maturity - m_simulator->getCurrentStep();
60     // interpolator at the new step
61     for (int is = 0 ; is < m_simulator->getNbSimul(); ++is)
62     {
63         for (int iA1 = 0; iA1 < m_lMax / m_lStep ; ++iA1) // test all command for
           investment between 0 and lMax
64         {
65             double l = iA1 * m_lStep;
66             // interpolator at the new step
67             ptStockNext(0) = p_stock(0) + std::max(demand(is) - p_stock(1), 0.) * m_dt;
68             ptStockNext(1) = p_stock(1) + l * m_dt ;
69             // first test we are inside the domain
70             if (p_grid->isInside(ptStockNext))
71             {
72                 // create an interpolator at the arrival point
73                 std::shared_ptr<StOpt::Interpolator> interpolator = p_grid->

```

```

        createInterpolator(ptStockNext);
74 // calculate Y for this simulation with the optimal control
75 double yLoc = p_condEsp[1].getASimulation(is, *interpolator);
76 // local gain
77 double gainLoc = (gain(is) - yLoc * std::max(demand(is) - p_stock(1), 0.) -
        m_cBar(1, p_stock(1))) * m_dt;
78 // gain + conditional expectation of future gains
79 double condExp = gainLoc + p_condEsp[0].getASimulation(is, *interpolator);
80 if (condExp > solutionAndControl.first(is, 0)) // test optimality of the
        control
81 {
82     solutionAndControl.first(is, 0) = condExp;
83     solutionAndControl.first(is, 1) = yLoc;
84     solutionAndControl.second(is, 0) = 1;
85 }
86 }
87 }
88 // test if solution acceptable
89 if (StOpt::almostEqual(solutionAndControl.first(is, 0), - StOpt::infy, 10))
90 {
91     // fix boundary condition
92     solutionAndControl.first(is, 0) = timeToMat * (m_PI(demand(is), p_stock(1)) +
        m_s * pow(p_stock(1), 1. - m_alpha) - m_lambda * std::max(demand(is) -
        p_stock(1), 0.));
93     solutionAndControl.first(is, 1) = m_lambda ; // Q est maximal !!
94     solutionAndControl.second(is, 0) = 0. ; // fix control to zero
95 }
96 }
97 return solutionAndControl;
98 }
99
100 // one step in simulation for current simulation
101 void OptimizeDPEmissive::stepSimulate(const std::shared_ptr< StOpt::SpaceGrid> &p_grid,
        const std::vector< StOpt::GridAndRegressedValue > &p_continuation,
102                                     StOpt::StateWithStocks &p_state,
103                                     Ref<ArrayXd> p_phiInOut) const
104 {
105     ArrayXd ptStock = p_state.getPtStock();
106     ArrayXd ptStockNext(ptStock.size());
107     double vOpt = - StOpt::infy;
108     double gainOpt = 0.;
109     double lOpt = 0. ;
110     double demand = p_state.getStochasticRealization()(0); // demand for this simulation
111     ptStockNext(0) = ptStock(0) + std::max(demand - ptStock(1), 0.) * m_dt;
112     double gain = m_PI(demand, ptStock(1)) + m_s * pow(ptStock(1), 1. - m_alpha) ; //
        gain from production and subvention
113     double yOpt = 0. ;
114     for (int iA1 = 0; iA1 < m_lMax / m_lStep ; ++iA1) // test all command for investment
        between 0 and lMax
115     {
116         double l = iA1 * m_lStep;
117         // interpolator at the new step
118         ptStockNext(1) = ptStock(1) + l * m_dt ;
119         // first test we are inside the domain
120         if (p_grid->isInside(ptStockNext))
121         {
122             // calculate Y for this simulation with the control
123             double yLoc = p_continuation[1].getValue(ptStockNext, p_state.
                getStochasticRealization());
124             // local gain
125             double gainLoc = (gain - yLoc * std::max(demand - ptStock(1), 0.) - m_cBar(1,
                ptStock(1))) * m_dt;
126             // gain + conditional expectation of future gains
127             double condExp = gainLoc + p_continuation[0].getValue(ptStockNext, p_state.
                getStochasticRealization());
128
129             if (condExp > vOpt) // test optimality of the control
130             {
131                 vOpt = condExp;

```

```

132         gainOpt = gainLoc;
133         l0pt = 1;
134         y0pt = yLoc;
135     }
136 }
137 }
138 p_phiInOut(0) += gainOpt; // follow v value
139 p_phiInOut(1) = y0pt ; // follow y value
140 ptStockNext(1) = ptStock(1) + l0pt * m_dt ; // update state due to control
141 p_state.setPtStock(ptStockNext);
142 }

```

This case in dimension 2 for the stocks can be treated with interpolation on the full 2 dimensional grid and on a 2 dimensional sparse grid. Both versions of the resolution are given in a test case (testDPNonEmissive.cpp).

13.4 The PDE approach

We can do the same with the PDE approach using a simulator for the OU demand (AR1Simulator). We then define an optimizer (OptimizeSLEmissive) and the methods used to optimize and simulate, and the getCone method for parallelization:

```

1 #include <iostream>
2 #include "StOpt/core/utils/constant.h"
3 #include "OptimizeSLEmissive.h"
4
5 using namespace StOpt;
6 using namespace Eigen ;
7 using namespace std ;
8
9 // constructor
10 OptimizeSLEmissive::OptimizeSLEmissive(const double &p_alpha, const double &p_m, const
    double &p_sig, const std::function<double(double, double)> &p_PI,
11     const std::function< double(double, double) > &
    p_cBar, const double &p_s, const double &p_dt
12     ,
    const double &p_lMax, const double &p_lStep, const
    std::vector <std::array< double, 2> > &
    p_extrem):
13     m_alpha(p_alpha), m_m(p_m), m_sig(p_sig), m_PI(p_PI), m_cBar(p_cBar), m_s(p_s), m_dt(
    p_dt),
14     m_lMax(p_lMax), m_lStep(p_lStep), m_extrem(p_extrem) {}
15
16 Array< bool, Dynamic, 1> OptimizeSLEmissive::getDimensionToSplit() const
17 {
18     Array< bool, Dynamic, 1> bDim = Array< bool, Dynamic, 1>::Constant(3, true);
19     return bDim ;
20 }
21
22
23 // for parallelism
24 vector< array< double, 2> > OptimizeSLEmissive::getCone(const vector< array< double, 2>
    > &p_xInit) const
25 {
26     vector< array< double, 2> > xReached(3);
27     xReached[0][0] = p_xInit[0][0] + m_alpha * (m_m - m_extrem[0][1]) * m_dt - m_sig *
    sqrt(m_dt); // demand "cone" driven by maximal value allowed for demand
28     xReached[0][1] = p_xInit[0][1] + m_alpha * m_m * m_dt + m_sig * sqrt(m_dt) ; // low
    value for demand is taken equal to 0
29     xReached[1][0] = p_xInit[1][0] ;// Q only increases
30     xReached[1][1] = p_xInit[1][1] + m_extrem[0][1] * m_dt ; // Q increase bounded by
    maximal demand
31     xReached[2][0] = p_xInit[2][0] ; // L only increases

```

```

32     xReached[2][1] = p_xInit[2][1] + m_lMax * m_dt ;// maximal increase given by the
        control
33     return xReached;
34 }
35
36
37 // one step in optimization from current point
38 std::pair< ArrayXd, ArrayXd> OptimizeSLEmissive::stepOptimize(const ArrayXd &p_point,
39     const vector< shared_ptr<SemiLagrangEspCond> > &p_semiLag,
40     const double &, const ArrayXd &) const
41 {
42     pair< ArrayXd, ArrayXd> solutionAndControl;
43     solutionAndControl.first.resize(2);
44     solutionAndControl.second.resize(1);
45     ArrayXXd sig = ArrayXXd::Zero(3, 1) ;
46     sig(0, 0) = m_sig;
47     double vOpt = - StOpt::infy;
48     double yOpt = 0. ;
49     double lOpt = 0 ;
50     ArrayXd b(3);
51     b(0) = m_alpha * (m_m - p_point(0)) ; // trend
52     b(1) = max(p_point(0) - p_point(2), 0.);
53     // gain already possible to calculate (production and subvention)
54     double gainFirst = m_PI(p_point(0), p_point(2)) + m_s * pow(p_point(2), 1. - m_alpha)
        ;
55     for (int iAl = 0; iAl < m_lMax / m_lStep ; ++iAl) // test all command for investment
        between 0 and lMax
56     {
57         double l = iAl * m_lStep;
58         b(2) = l ;
59         pair<double, bool> lagrangY = p_semiLag[1]->oneStep(p_point, b, sig, m_dt); // for
            the control calculate y
60         if (lagrangY.second) // is the control admissible
61         {
62             pair<double, bool> lagrang = p_semiLag[0]->oneStep(p_point, b, sig, m_dt); //
                one step for v
63             // gain function
64             double gain = m_dt * (gainFirst - lagrangY.first * b(1) - m_cBar(l, p_point(2)
                ));
65             double arbitrage = gain + lagrang.first;
66             if (arbitrage > vOpt) // optimality of the control
67             {
68                 vOpt = arbitrage; // upgrade solution v
69                 yOpt = lagrangY.first; // store y
70                 lOpt = l; // upgrade optimal control
71             }
72         }
73     }
74
75     if (StOpt::almostEqual(vOpt, - StOpt::infy, 10))
76     {
77         std::cout << " Reduce time step " << std::endl ;
78         abort();
79     }
80     solutionAndControl.first(0) = vOpt; // send back v function
81     solutionAndControl.first(1) = yOpt; // send back y function
82     solutionAndControl.second(0) = lOpt; // send back optimal control
83     return solutionAndControl;
84 }
85
86 // one step in simulation for current simulation
87 void OptimizeSLEmissive::stepSimulate(const SpaceGrid &p_gridNext,
88     const std::vector< std::shared_ptr< StOpt::
        SemiLagrangEspCond> > &p_semiLag,
89     Ref<ArrayXd> p_state, int &,
90     const ArrayXd &p_gaussian,
91     const ArrayXd &,
92     Ref<ArrayXd> p_phiInOut) const
93 {

```



```

94   ArrayXd state = p_state;
95   ArrayXXd sig = ArrayXXd::Zero(3, 1) ; // diffusion matrix for semi Lagrangian
96   sig(0, 0) = m_sig;
97   double vOpt = - StOpt::infty;
98   double lOpt = 0 ;
99   double yOpt = 0;
100  ArrayXd b(3);
101  b(0) = m_alpha * (m_m - p_state(0)) ; // trend for D (independent of control)
102  b(1) = max(p_state(0) - p_state(2), 0.); // trend for Q (independent of control)
103  double gainFirst = m_PI(p_state(0), p_state(2)) + m_s * pow(p_state(2), 1. - m_alpha)
    ; // gain for production and subvention
104  for (int iA1 = 0; iA1 < m_lMax / m_lStep ; ++iA1) // recalculate the optimal control
105  {
106      double l = iA1 * m_lStep;
107      b(2) = l ;
108      pair<double, bool> lagrangY = p_semiLag[1]->oneStep(p_state, b, sig, m_dt); //
    calculate y for this control
109      if (lagrangY.second)
110      {
111          pair<double, bool> lagrang = p_semiLag[0]->oneStep(p_state, b, sig, m_dt); //
    calculate the function value v
112          // gain function
113          double gain = m_dt * (gainFirst - lagrangY.first * b(1) - m_cBar(l, p_state(2)
    ));
114          double arbitrage = gain + lagrang.first;
115          if (arbitrage > vOpt) // arbitrage
116          {
117              vOpt = arbitrage; // upgrade solution
118              yOpt = lagrangY.first; // upgrade y value
119              lOpt = l; // upgrade optimal control
120          }
121      }
122  }
123  // gain function
124  p_phiInOut(0) += m_dt * (gainFirst - yOpt * b(1) - m_cBar(lOpt, state(2))); // store v
    value
125  p_phiInOut(1) = yOpt; // store y value
126  // update state
127  state(0) += m_alpha * (m_m - p_state(0)) * m_dt + m_sig * p_gaussian(0) * sqrt(m_dt);
    // demand (no control)
128  state(1) += b(1) * m_dt; //Q
129  state(2) += lOpt * m_dt; //L
130  // truncate if necessary to stay inside domain.
131  p_gridNext.truncatePoint(state);
132  p_state = state ;
133 }

```

The three dimensional grids used can be some full grids or some sparse grids. Both versions of the resolution can be found in a test case (testSLNonEmissive.cpp).

Part VI

**Stochastic Dual Dynamic
Programming**

Chapter 14

SDDP algorithm

14.1 Some general points about SDDP

Stochastic Dual Dynamic Programming (SDDP) is an approximate dynamic programming algorithm developed by Pereira and Pinto in 1991 [38].

To describe how SDDP works, we will consider a class of linear programs that have $T + 1$ stages denoted $\{0, 1, \dots, t, \dots, T\}$. We restrict our class of problems to linear programs with relatively complete recourse: the feasible region of the linear program in each stage is nonempty and bounded.

Let us formalize now the variables and constraints used in the SDDP problem.

Notations used

The notations described here are used in the general case.

- x_t is the decision variable at time t . If the data process is stagewise independent, x_t also denotes the state at time $t + 1$.
- $\omega_t \in \Omega_t$ is the random data process at time t , where Ω_t is the set of random data.
- c_t is the cost vector at time t .
- A_t and E_t denote constraints matrices.
- $Q_t(x_{t-1}, \omega_t)$ is the expected value of the problem at time t , knowing the state x_{t-1} and the random data ω_t .
- $\mathcal{Q}_t(x_{t-1}) = \mathbb{E}[Q_t(x_{t-1}, \omega_t)]$.

Decision process

The random data process ω_t is discovered gradually. Thus from an initial state x_0 , the state variables $(x_t)_{t \in \{0, 1, \dots, T\}}$ are determined in a non-anticipative way. The scheme is the following:

$x_0 \rightarrow$ observation of $\omega_1 \rightarrow$ decision of $x_1 \dots$
 \rightarrow decision of $x_{T-1} \rightarrow$ observation of $\omega_T \rightarrow$ decision of x_T

A rigorous formulation of the multistage stochastic linear program to solve is the following:

$$V^* = \min_{\substack{A_0 x_0 = \omega_0 \\ x_0 \geq 0}} c_0^\top x_0 + \mathbb{E} \left[\min_{\substack{E_1 x_0 + A_1 x_1 = \omega_1 \\ x_1 \geq 0}} c_1^\top x_1 + \mathbb{E} \left[\dots + \mathbb{E} \left[\min_{\substack{E_T x_{T-1} + A_T x_T = \omega_T \\ x_T \geq 0}} c_T^\top x_T \right] \right] \right] \quad (14.1)$$

The deterministic equivalent of this problem (14.1) is achieved by discretizing ω_t (or by using directly ω_t if discrete). The number of variables of this problem increases exponentially with the number of stages. It cannot be solved directly even if T or $(\Omega_t)_{t \in \{0,1,\dots,T\}}$ are of reasonable size.

Dynamic programming principle

Dynamic programming involves splitting up the problem (14.1) in a series of sub-problem bounded together by a state variable. The aim is to compute backwards the functions Q_t and \mathcal{Q}_t . They fulfill the following equations:

$$[LP_t] \begin{cases} Q_t(x_{t-1}, \omega_t) = \min c_t^\top x_t + \mathcal{Q}_{t+1}(x_t) \\ \text{s.c.} \quad A_t x_t = \omega_t - E_t x_{t-1}, \quad [\pi_t(\omega_t)] \\ x_t \geq 0 \end{cases} \quad (14.2)$$

$$\mathcal{Q}_t(x_{t-1}) = \mathbb{E}[Q_t(x_{t-1}, \omega_t)] \quad (14.3)$$

The function $Q(x_{t-1}, \omega_t)$ stands for the expected value of a future cost knowing the state x_{t-1} and the random data ω_t . $\mathcal{Q}_t(x_{t-1})$ is the expected value of the future cost knowing the state x_{t-1} . The dynamic programming principle ensures that $V^* = \mathcal{Q}_1(x_0)$.

Given $\mathcal{Q}_T(\cdot)$, the successive computations are achieved backwards switching between the resolution of the linear sub-problem (14.2) and the computation of (14.3).

The implementation of dynamic programming involves approximating successively the two value functions with equations (14.2 - 14.3) by discretizing the state space and solving the linear sub-problems. The number of discretization points increases exponentially with the dimension of the state vector and becomes huge for our applications (“curse of dimensionality”). Besides a linear approximation of $\mathcal{Q}_{t+1}(x_t)$ must be available in order to cast the transition problem into a LP.

SDDP algorithm

SDDP is a method used to solve stochastic multi-stage problem described in [38]. SDDP is based on Benders decomposition described in [5]. Please note that SDDP was developed in order to solve hydro thermal scheduling problem.

SDDP limits the curse of dimensionality by avoiding *a priori* complete discretization of the state space. Each SDDP iteration is a two-stage process. The first step involves generating a sequence of realistic states x_t^* from which in the second step the value functions

are estimated in their neighborhood. By repeating successively these two steps the approximation of the value function becomes more and more accurate. SDDP is also made of two passes computed alternatively:

- a backward pass: the aim is to improve the number of Benders cut in the neighborhood of well-chosen candidate states. It provides also a lower bound of the optimal cost.
- a forward pass: the aim is to provide a set of new candidate states. An estimation of the upper bound of the optimal cost is also computed.

On the other hand SDDP method stands on the shape of the future value function $\mathcal{Q}_t(x_{t-1})$. Indeed in the frame of a linear problem with complete recourse the value function is convex and piecewise linear. It can therefore be approximated by taking the supremum of a family of minoring affine functions. These affine functions are called *optimality cuts* or *Benders cuts*.

14.2 A method, different algorithms

The method implemented in this library is based on the different situations shown in a technical report of PSR program [37] where three different cases of the basic problem are solved by SDDP. The three cases are implemented in the library. Other cases could be added to those existing in the future.

Notations

These notations will be used to present the different algorithms of SDDP.

- \bar{z} denotes the optimal cost obtained in forward pass.
- \underline{z} denotes the optimal cost obtained in backward pass.
- β_t^j denotes the slope of the j^{th} Benders cut.
- α_t^j denotes the intercept of the j^{th} Benders cut.

14.2.1 The basic case

To describe this case the notations shown above are used. We focus on stochastic multi-stage problems with the following properties.

- Random quantities in different stages are independent.
- The random quantities at time t is summarized in ω_t .
- At each stage, the linear sub-problem solution space is non-empty and bounded.

In this case the functions $\mathcal{Q}_t(\cdot)$ are convex. The primal and dual solutions of the linear problem exist and define optimal cuts. We can now describe precisely how the implemented algorithm is working.

Initialization

The following values are fixed:

- $\{0, 1, \dots, T\}$, the set of stages, where T is the time horizon.
- $n = 0$, is the counter of the number of iterations (*backward-forward*). n is incremented at the end of each iteration.
- $p \in \mathbb{R}$, the precision to reach for the convergence test.
- $n_{step} \in \mathbb{N}$, the number of iterations achieved between 2 convergence tests.
- $n_{iterMax} \in \mathbb{N}$, the maximal number of iterations.
- $x_0 \in \mathbb{R}_+^n$, the initial vector state.
- $L \in \mathbb{N}$, the number of scenarios used in the backward pass.
- $G \in \mathbb{N}$, the number of scenarios used in the forward pass. It gives also the number of new cuts computed at every iteration (*backward-forward*) and the number of states near which the Benders cuts are computed.

Forward pass

The aim of this pass is to explore new feasible vector state and to get an estimation of the upper bound of the optimal cost. To this end the current strategy is simulated for a set of G scenarios. The set of scenarios could be historical chronicles or random draws. Algorithm 13 presents the forward pass at the n -th iteration of the SDDP method.

Backward pass

The aim of the backward pass is to add, at each stage, a set of new Benders cuts and to provide a new estimation of the lower bound of the optimal operational cost. To this end we have scenarios set of the random quantities (dimension of the set is L) recorded during the initialization. At each time step G cuts are added using the G visited states $(x_t^g)_{g=1, \dots, G}$ obtained during the forwards pass. Algorithm 14 presents the backward pass.

Stopping test

In the literature about SDDP lots of stopping criterion were used and their efficiency has been proved. However a criterion is suitable for each particular problem. Thus it is tough to bring out one which is generic. Due to genericity requirements, two classical criterion are implemented in the library. These can be customized by the user. The first one defines a maximal number of iterations $n_{iterMax}$ (an iteration is made of the succession of *backward-forward* passes) which shall not be exceeded. The second one is a test of convergence towards each other between the forward and the backward cost. The convergence test uses the following indicator:

$$\psi_{n_{step}i} = \left| \frac{\bar{z}_{n_{step}i} - \underline{z}_{n_{step}i}}{\bar{z}_{n_{step}i}} \right|, \quad \text{with } i \in \mathbb{N} \quad (14.10)$$

This one is computed every n_{step} iterations. If it is lesser than a threshold p the process stops, otherwise it goes on. The threshold is fixed by the user.

Algorithm 13 Run of forward pass (n^{th} iteration)

- 1: Simulate sets $\{(\omega_t^g), t \in \{1, \dots, T\}\}$ of equally distributed scenarios: for $g \in \Omega^g = \{1, \dots, G\}$.
- 2: **for** $g \in \Omega^g$ **do**
- 3: Solve the following linear sub-problem.

$$[AP_0^n] \left\{ \begin{array}{l} Q_0 = \min_{x_0, \theta_1} c_0^\top x_0 + \theta_1 \\ \text{u.c.} \quad A_0 x_0 = \omega_0, \quad [\pi_0(\omega_0)] \\ x_0 \geq 0 \\ \theta_1 + (\beta_1^j)^\top x_0 \geq \alpha_1^j, \quad j \in \{1, \dots, G, \dots, nG\} \end{array} \right. \quad (14.4)$$

- 4: Store the primal solution (x_0^g) of the problem $[AP_{0,g}^n]$.
- 5: **for** $t \in \{1, \dots, T\}$ **do**
- 6: Solve the following linear sub-problem.

$$[AP_{t,g}^n] \left\{ \begin{array}{l} Q_t^g(x_{t-1}^g, \omega_t^g) = \min_{x_t, \theta_{t+1}} c_t^\top x_t + \theta_{t+1} \\ \text{s.c.} \quad A_t x_t = \omega_t^g - E_t x_{t-1}^g, \quad [\pi_t(\omega_t^g)] \\ x_t \geq 0 \\ \theta_{t+1} + (\beta_{t+1}^j)^\top x_t \geq \alpha_{t+1}^j, \quad j \in \{1, \dots, G, \dots, nG\} \end{array} \right. \quad (14.5)$$

- 7: Store the primal solution (x_t^g) of the problem $[AP_{t,g}^n]$.
 - 8: **end for**
 - 9: Compute the cost for scenario g , at iteration n : $\bar{z}_n^g = \sum_{t=0}^T c_t x_t^g$.
 - 10: **end for**
 - 11: Compute the total cost in forward pass at iteration n : $\bar{z}_n = \frac{1}{G} \sum_{g=1}^G \bar{z}_n^g$.
-

14.2.2 Dependence of the random quantities

In the previous case we restrict our problem to independent random quantities in the different stages. The resolution of the SDDP was achieved on the state vector x_t in the basic case.

But sometimes in real life the random quantities can be temporarily correlated. In a hydraulic problem for example there exists time-related dependency of the outcomes. Time-related dependencies can also exist in the demand. Yet with time-related random quantities the Bellman recurrence formula (14.2 - 14.3) does not hold and the classical SDDP can not be applied.

However if the Bellman functions are convex with respect to the time-related random quantities one has only to increase the dimension of the state vector by the dimension of the time-related random quantities to be back in the configuration of the basic case. In this case solving a linear program of reasonable size for each hazard draw is enough to compute new Benders cuts computation in the neighborhood of a candidate state.

There exists a few options to represent the time-related dependency of the random quantities. However in order to not increase too much the dimension of the problem, an ARMA process of order 1 is often chosen. In the random data vector ω_t two different parts has to

Algorithm 14 Run of backward pass

- 1: **for** $t = T, T - 1, \dots, 1$ **do**
- 2: **for** $x_{t-1}^g, g \in \{1, \dots, G\}$ **do**
- 3: **for** $\omega_t^l, l \in \{1, \dots, L\}$ **do**
- 4: Solve the following linear sub-problem.

$$[AP_{t,l}^{n,g}] \begin{cases} Q_t^l(x_{t-1}^g, \omega_t^l) = \min_{x_t, \theta_{t+1}} c_t^\top x_t + \theta_{t+1} \\ \text{s.c.} \quad A_t x_t = \omega_t^l - E_t x_{t-1}^g, \quad [\pi_t(\omega_t^l)] \\ x_t \geq 0 \\ \theta_{t+1} + (\beta_{t+1}^j)^\top x_t \geq \alpha_{t+1}^j, \quad j \in \{1, \dots, G, \dots, (n+1)G\} \end{cases} \quad (14.6)$$

- 5: Store the dual solution $\pi_t(\omega_t^l)$ and the primal one $Q_t^l(x_{t-1}^g, \omega_t^l)$ of the linear sub-problem $[AP_{t,l}^{n,g}]$.
- 6: Compute the cut that goes with the l^{th} hazard draw:

$$\begin{cases} \alpha_{t,l}^g = Q_t^l(x_{t-1}^g, \omega_t^l) + \pi_t(\omega_t^l)^\top E_t x_{t-1}^g \\ \beta_{t,l}^g = E_t^\top \pi_t(\omega_t^l) \end{cases} \quad (14.7)$$

- 7: **end for**
- 8: Compute the g^{th} new Benders cut at time t at iteration n . It is defined as the mean value of the cuts obtained before:

$$\begin{cases} \alpha_t^k = \frac{1}{L} \sum_{l=1}^L \alpha_{t,l}^g \\ \beta_t^k = \frac{1}{L} \sum_{l=1}^L \beta_{t,l}^g \end{cases} \quad \text{where } k = nG + g \quad (14.8)$$

- 9: **end for**
- 10: **end for**
- 11: Solve the following linear sub-problem:

$$[AP_0^n] \begin{cases} Q_0 = \min_{x_0, \theta_1} c_0^\top x_0 + \theta_1 \\ \text{s.c.} \quad A_0 x_0 = \omega_0, \quad [\pi_0(\omega_0)] \\ x_0 \geq 0 \\ \theta_1 + (\beta_1^j)^\top x_0 \geq \alpha_1^j, \quad j \in \{1, \dots, G, \dots, (n+1)G\} \end{cases} \quad (14.9)$$

- 12: Save the cost *backward* $z_n = Q_0$.
-

be distinguished from now on:

- ω_t^{ind} is the random data vector corresponding to the independent random quantities.

- ω_t^{dep} is the random data vector corresponding to the time-related random quantities.

And ω_t^{dep} fulfills the following recurrence equation:

$$\frac{\omega_t^{\text{dep}} - \mu_{\omega,t}}{\sigma_{\omega,t}} = \psi_1 \frac{\omega_{t-1}^{\text{dep}} - \mu_{\omega,t-1}}{\sigma_{\omega,t-1}} + \psi_2 \epsilon_t \quad (14.11)$$

To apply the Bellman recurrence formula the vector state should be made of the decision variable x_t and the time-related random quantities ω_t^{dep} . Dimension of the vector state is then increased. $x_t^{\text{dep}} = (x_t, \omega_t^{\text{dep}})^\top$ denotes the new state vector. The Bellman function satisfies from now on the following two-stages linear problem at time t :

$$[LP'_t] \begin{cases} Q_t(x_{t-1}, \omega_{t-1}^{\text{dep}}, \omega_t) = \min c_t^\top x_t + \mathcal{Q}_{t+1}(x_t, \omega_t^{\text{dep}}) \\ u.c. \quad A_t x_t = P \omega_t^{\text{dep}} - E_t x_{t-1}, \quad [\pi_t(\omega_t)] \\ x_t \geq 0 \end{cases} \quad (14.12)$$

with P the matrix such that $\omega_t = P \omega_t^{\text{dep}}$.

The variable ω_t^{dep} is a random process. Thus the above problem is solved using specific values ω_t^l of this variable. To get them we apply a Markov process that is we simulate different values of the white noise ϵ_t^l .

The new form of the state vector implies changes in the sensitivity of the Bellman function. Thus it is a function depending on the decision variable x_t but also on the the time-related random quantity vector ω_t^{dep} . The computation of Benders cuts is then a bit different:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial Q_t(x_{t-1}, \omega_{t-1}^{\text{dep}}, \omega_t)}{\partial \omega_{t-1}^{\text{dep}}} &= \frac{\partial Q_t(x_{t-1}, \omega_{t-1}^{\text{dep}}, \omega_t)}{\partial \omega_t^{\text{dep}}} \frac{\partial \omega_t^{\text{dep}}}{\partial \omega_{t-1}^{\text{dep}}} \\ &= \pi_t(\omega_t)^\top P \psi_1 \frac{\sigma_{\omega,t}}{\sigma_{\omega,t-1}}, \end{aligned} \quad (14.13)$$

Backward pass has to be modified as presented in Algorithm 15. Some new computation steps have to be taken into account.

14.2.3 Non-convexity and conditional cuts

Some random quantities may introduce non-convexity preventing us to apply the classical algorithm of SDDP. Indeed when the random quantities appear on the left-hand side of the linear constraints or in the cost function (typically A_t and/or c_t become random) the convexity property of the Bellman functions with respect to the random quantities is not anymore observed.

In the frame of a management production problem the situation happened often. For example sometimes the unit operation cost of plants are random. It is also observed when we deal with spot price uncertainty for use in stochastic mid-term scheduling.

In a technical report, Pereira, Campodonico, and Kelman [37] suggested a new algorithm in order to efficiently approximate the Bellman functions using explicitly the dependence

Algorithm 15 Run of backward pass with time-related random quantities (AR1 process)

- 1: Pick up the set of the following pairs: $\{x_t^g, \omega_t^{\text{dep},g}\}$ for $g \in \{1, \dots, G\}$, $t \in \{1, \dots, T\}$.
- 2: **for** $t = T, T - 1, \dots, 1$ **do**
- 3: **for** $(x_{t-1}^g, \omega_{t-1}^{\text{dep},g})$, $g \in \{1, \dots, G\}$ **do**
- 4: **for** $l \in \{1, \dots, L\}$ **do**
- 5: Produce a value for the white noise ϵ_t^l .
- 6: Compute the element $\hat{\omega}_t^l$ knowing the previous random quantity $\omega_{t-1}^{\text{dep},g}$:

$$\hat{\omega}_t^l = \sigma_{\omega,t} \left(\psi_1 \frac{\omega_{t-1}^{\text{dep},g} - \mu_{\omega,t-1}}{\sigma_{\omega,t-1}} + \psi_2 \epsilon_t^l \right) + \mu_{\omega,t} \quad (14.14)$$

- 7: Solve the following linear sub-problem.

$$[AP'_{t,l}{}^{n,g}] \begin{cases} Q_t^l(x_{t-1}^g, \omega_{t-1}^{\text{dep},g}, \hat{\omega}_t^l) = \min_{x_t, \theta_{t+1}} c_t^\top x_t + \theta_{t+1} \\ u.c. \quad A_t x_t = P \hat{\omega}_t^l - E_t x_{t-1}^g, \quad [\pi_t(\hat{\omega}_t^l)] \\ x_t \geq 0 \\ \theta_{t+1} + (\beta_{t+1}^j)^\top x_t + (\gamma_{t+1}^j)^\top \hat{\omega}_t^l \geq \alpha_{t+1}^j, \quad j \in \{1, \dots, G, \dots, (n+1)G\} \end{cases} \quad (14.15)$$

- 8: Store the dual solution $\pi_t(\hat{\omega}_t^l)$ and the primal one $Q_t^l(x_{t-1}^g, \omega_{t-1}^{\text{dep},g}, \hat{\omega}_t^l)$ of the primal problem $[AP'_{t,l}{}^{n,g}]$.
- 9: Compute the cut that goes with the l^{th} hazard draw:

$$\begin{cases} \alpha_{t,l}^g = Q_t^l(x_{t-1}^g, \omega_{t-1}^{\text{dep},g}, \hat{\omega}_t^l) + \pi_t(\hat{\omega}_t^l)^\top \left(E_t x_{t-1}^g - \psi_1 \frac{\sigma_{\omega,t}}{\sigma_{\omega,t-1}} P \omega_{t-1}^{\text{dep},g} \right) \\ \beta_{t,l}^g = E_t^\top \pi_t(\hat{\omega}_t^l) \\ \gamma_{t,l}^g = \psi_1 \frac{\sigma_{\omega,t}}{\sigma_{\omega,t-1}} P^\top \pi_t(\hat{\omega}_t^l) \end{cases} \quad (14.16)$$

- 10: **end for**
- 11: Compute the g^{th} new Benders cut at time t at iteration n defined as the mean value of the cuts obtained before for $k = nG + g$:

$$\alpha_t^k = \frac{1}{L} \sum_{l=1}^L \alpha_{t,l}^g, \quad \beta_t^k = \frac{1}{L} \sum_{l=1}^L \beta_{t,l}^g, \quad \gamma_t^k = \frac{1}{L} \sum_{l=1}^L \gamma_{t,l}^g$$

- 12: **end for**
- 13: **end for**
- 14: Solve the following linear sub-problem.

$$[AP'_0{}^{n}] \begin{cases} Q_0 = \min_{x_0, \theta_1} c_0^\top x_0 + \theta_1 \\ u.c. \quad A_0 x_0 = \omega_0, \quad [\pi_0(\omega_0)] \\ x_0 \geq 0 \\ \theta_1 + (\beta_1^j)^\top x_0 + (\gamma_1^j)^\top \omega_0^{\text{dep}} \geq \alpha_1^j, \quad j \in \{1, \dots, G, \dots, (n+1)G\} \end{cases} \quad (14.17)$$

- 15: Save the backward cost $z_n = Q_0$.

of the Bellman functions with respect to these random quantities. This new algorithm is based on a combination of SDDP and ordinary stochastic dynamic programming. The SDP part deals with the non-convex random quantities, whereas the other random quantities are treated in the SDDP part. It is an extension of the classical SDDP algorithm. It is described in detail in [37] and in [18].

In the library, we propose two approaches to deal with this non convexity:

A tree approach

In [18] spot price p_t is regarded as a state. The set of feasible spot price is discretized into a set of M points ζ_1, \dots, ζ_M . The following Markov model is then used:

$$\mathbb{P}(p_t = \zeta_j | p_{t-1} = \zeta_i) = \rho_{ij}(t),$$

This model makes easier the implementation of the SDP. But it implies discretization mistakes that are hard to quantify. It is also tough to discretize with efficiency a random process when only a small number of scenarios is available.

However when the dimension of the non convex uncertainties is low, it is an approach to consider. The finite number of states, and the probabilities linking states between two successive time step leads to a tree representation of the uncertainties. As the approach is classical, we don't detail this version of the algorithm. We only detail the second approach which is in fact in spirit very similar.

A regression based approach

In that case the modelization used in the library is somewhat different from the one described in both articles. In order to avoid tree discretization in this second approach, the evolution of the non-convex random quantities is decided by Monte Carlo simulations. At each stage, a fixed number of Monte-Carlo simulations is provided. Anyway in spite of this difference the global view of this brand new algorithm is similar to that one described in both articles:

- The non-convex random quantities depend on the realization of the previous one according to a mathematical model (Markov chain).
- At each stage, Bellman functions are approximated through the conditional realization of these random quantities.
- We used conditional cuts to give an estimation of the Bellman functions. These conditional cuts are computed using the methods in section 4: two methods are available in the library. Both use adaptive support. The first uses a constant per cell approximation while the second uses a linear per cell approximation.

In our algorithm the features of the conditional cuts are revealed thanks to a conditional expectation computation.

Yet conditional expectation computations are not easy when the exact distribution of the random variable is not known. A few techniques exist but in the library a specific one is used and described above in chapter 4: it is based on local linear regression.

Regression, stochastic dynamic programming and SDDP

The run of the backward pass in the new algorithm combining SDDP and SDP using local linear regression is described below.

Before describing in detail this algorithm, let us introduce a few notations:

- S is the space of the non-convex random quantities.
- d is the dimension of the space of the non-convex random quantities S
- At each stage, U Monte Carlo simulations in S are provided. Thus we get U scenarios denoted s_t^u at each stage t
- \tilde{I} is a partition of the space of the non-convex random quantities S .

$$\tilde{I} = \{\underline{I} = (i_1, \dots, i_d), i_1 \in \{1, \dots, I_1\}, \dots, i_d \in \{1, \dots, I_d\}\}$$

- $\{D_{\underline{I}}\}_{\underline{I} \in \tilde{I}}$ is the set of meshes of the set of scenarios.
- $M_M = \prod_{k=1}^d I_k$ denotes the number of meshes at each stage.

The backward step with both time-related and non-convex random quantities is presented in Algorithm 16.

Algorithm 16 Run of the backward pass with time-related (AR1) and non-convex random quantities

- 1: Pick up the set of the following pairs: $\{x_t^g, \omega_t^{\text{dep},g}\}$ for $g \in \{1, \dots, G\}, t \in \{1, \dots, T\}$.
- 2: **for** $t = T, T - 1, \dots, 1$ **do**
- 3: Generate values for the non-convex random quantities at time t knowing the scenarios at time $t - 1$: $s_t^u, u \in \{1, \dots, U\}$.
- 4: **for** $(x_{t-1}^g, \omega_{t-1}^{\text{dep},g}), g \in \{1, \dots, G\}$ **do**
- 5: **for** $u \in \{1, \dots, U\}$ **do**
- 6: Consider a scenario s_t^u in the mesh D_L .
- 7: **for** $l \in \{1, \dots, L\}$ **do**
- 8: Produce a value for the white noise ϵ_t^l .
- 9: Compute the element $\hat{\omega}_t^l$ knowing the previous random quantity $\omega_{t-1}^{\text{dep},g}$:

$$\hat{\omega}_t^l = \sigma_{\omega,t} \left(\psi_1 \frac{\omega_{t-1}^{\text{dep},g} - \mu_{\omega,t-1}}{\sigma_{\omega,t-1}} + \psi_2 \epsilon_t^l \right) + \mu_{\omega,t} \quad (14.18)$$

- 10: Pick up the cuts corresponding the mesh D_L : $\{\alpha_{t+1}^{L,j}(s), \beta_{t+1}^{L,j}(s), \gamma_{t+1}^{L,j}(s)\}, j \in \{1, \dots, (n+1)G\}$.
- 11: Solve the following linear sub-problem:

$$[AP'_{t,l}{}^{n,g}] \begin{cases} Q_t^l(x_{t-1}^g, \omega_{t-1}^{\text{dep},g}, \hat{\omega}_t^l, s_t^u) = \min_{x_t, \theta_{t+1}} c_t(s_t^u)^\top x_t + \theta_{t+1}(s_t^u) \\ s.c. \quad A_t(s_t^u)x_t = P\hat{\omega}_t^l - E_t x_{t-1}^g, \quad [\pi_t(\hat{\omega}_t^l, s_t^u)] \\ x_t \geq 0 \\ \theta_{t+1}(s_t^u) + (\beta_{t+1}^{L,j}(s_t^u))^\top x_t + (\gamma_{t+1}^{L,j}(s_t^u))^\top \hat{\omega}_t^l \geq \alpha_{t+1}^{L,j}(s_t^u), \\ j \in \{1, \dots, G, \dots, nG\} \end{cases} \quad (14.19)$$

- 12: Store the dual solution $\pi_t(\hat{\omega}_t^l)$ and the primal solution $Q_t^l(x_{t-1}^g, \omega_{t-1}^{\text{dep},g}, \hat{\omega}_t^l, s_t^u)$ of the problem $[AP'_{t,l}{}^{n,g}]$.
- 13: Calculate the corresponding cut at the l^{th} draw of uncertainties:

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{\alpha}_{t,l}^{g,I}(s_t^u) &= Q_t^l(x_{t-1}^g, \omega_{t-1}^{\text{dep},g}, \hat{\omega}_t^l) + \pi_t(\hat{\omega}_t^l)^\top \left(E_t x_{t-1}^g - \psi_1 \frac{\sigma_{\omega,t}}{\sigma_{\omega,t-1}} P \omega_{t-1}^{\text{dep},g} \right) \\ \hat{\beta}_{t,l}^{g,I}(s_t^u) &= E_t^\top \pi_t(\hat{\omega}_t^l) \\ \hat{\gamma}_{t,l}^{g,I}(s_t^u) &= \psi_1 \frac{\sigma_{\omega,t}}{\sigma_{\omega,t-1}} P^\top \pi_t(\hat{\omega}_t^l) \end{aligned}$$

- 14: **end for**
-

15: Compute the cut for a non-convex random quantity s_t^u at time t at iteration n : it is defined as the weighted average on the L Benders cut obtained before:

$$\begin{aligned}\hat{\alpha}_t^{g,I}(s_t^u) &= \frac{1}{L} \sum_{l=1}^L \hat{\alpha}_{t,l}^{g,I}(s_t^u) \\ \hat{\beta}_t^{g,I}(s_t^u) &= \frac{1}{L} \sum_{l=1}^L \hat{\beta}_{t,l}^{g,I}(s_t^u), \quad j = nG + g \\ \hat{\gamma}_t^{g,I}(s_t^u) &= \frac{1}{L} \sum_{l=1}^L \hat{\gamma}_{t,l}^{g,I}(s_t^u)\end{aligned}$$

16: **end for**

17: **for** $\underline{I}_i, i \in \{1, \dots, M_M\}$ **do**

18: Compute the g^{th} new cut of the mesh $D_{\underline{I}_i}$ at time t at iteration n defined as the conditional expectation with respect to the scenario u at time t :

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \alpha_t^{j,I}(s_{t-1}^u) = \mathbb{E} \left[\hat{\alpha}_t^{g,I}(s_t^u) | s_{t-1}^u \right], \\ \beta_t^{j,I}(s_{t-1}^u) = \mathbb{E} \left[\hat{\beta}_t^{g,I}(s_t^u) | s_{t-1}^u \right], \\ \gamma_t^{j,I}(s_{t-1}^u) = \mathbb{E} \left[\hat{\gamma}_t^{g,I}(s_t^u) | s_{t-1}^u \right] \end{array} \right., \quad j = nG + g \quad (14.20)$$

19: **end for**

20: **end for**

21: **end for**

22: Solve the initial linear sub problem $[AP_0'^n]$.

23: Save the backward cost $z_n = Q_0$.

14.3 C++ API

The SDDP part of the stochastic library is in C++ code. This unit is a classical black box: specific inputs have to be provided in order to get the expected results. In the SDDP unit backward and forward pass are achieved successively until the stopping criterion is reached. In this unit the succession of passes is realized by

- the `backwardForwardSDDPTree` class for the tree method,
- the `backwardForwardSDDP` class for the regression based approach.

These classes takes as input three non-defined classes.

14.3.1 Inputs

The user has to implement three classes.

- One class where the transition problem is described which is denoted in the example `TransitionOptimizer`. This class is at the core of the problem resolution. Therefore much flexibility is let to the user to implement this class. The class is used both with the tree approach and the regression based approach.

In some ways this class is the place where the technical aspects of the problem are adjusted. This class describes backward and forward passes. Four methods should be implemented:

- `updateDates`: establishes the new set of dates: $(t, t + dt)$.
- `oneStepForward`: solves the different transition linear problems during the forward pass for a particle, a random vector and an initial state:
 - * the state $(x_{t-dt}, w_t^{\text{dep}})$ is given as input of the function.
 - * the s_t values are restored by the simulator.
 - * the LP is solved between dates t and $t + dt$ for the given s_t and the constraints due to w_t^{dep} (demand, flow constraints) and permits to get the optimal x_t .
 - * Using iid sampling, w_{t+dt}^{dep} is estimated.
 - * return $(x_t, w_{t+dt}^{\text{dep}})$ as the following state and (x_t, w_t^{dep}) that will be used as the state to visit during next backward resolution.
- `oneStepBackward`: solves the different transition linear problems during the backward pass for a particle, a random vector and an initial state.
 - * The vector (x_t, w_t^{dep}) is given as input if $t \geq 0$; otherwise, the input is $(x_{-dt}, w_0^{\text{dep}})$.
 - * If $t \geq 0$, sample to calculate w_{t+dt}^{dep} in order to get the state $(x_t, w_{t+dt}^{\text{dep}})$ at the beginning of the period of resolution of the LP. If $t < 0$, the state is $(x_{-dt}, w_0^{\text{dep}})$.
 - * Solve the LP from date t to next date $t + dt$ (if equally spaced periods) for the variable x_{t+dt} .

- * Return the function value and the dual that will be used for cuts estimations.
- oneAdmissibleState: returns an admissible state at time t (respect only the constraints).

TransitionOptimizer should derive from the OptimizerSDDPBase class defined below.

```

1 // Copyright (C) 2016 EDF
2 // All Rights Reserved
3 // This code is published under the GNU Lesser General Public License (GNU LGPL)
4 #ifndef OPTIMIZERSDDPBASE_H
5 #define OPTIMIZERSDDPBASE_H
6 #include <Eigen/Dense>
7 #include "StOpt/sddp/SDDPCutOptBase.h"
8 #include "StOpt/core/grids/OneDimRegularSpaceGrid.h"
9 #include "StOpt/core/grids/OneDimData.h"
10 #include "StOpt/sddp/SimulatorSDDPBase.h"
11 #include "StOpt/sddp/SimulatorSDDPBaseTree.h"
12
13
14 /** \file OptimizerSDDPBase.h
15 * \brief Define an abstract class for Stochastic Dual Dynamic Programming problems
16 * \author Xavier Warin
17 */
18
19 namespace StOpt
20 {
21
22 /// \class OptimizerSDDPBase OptimizerSDDPBase.h
23 /// Base class for optimizer for Dynamic Programming
24 class OptimizerSDDPBase
25 {
26
27
28 public :
29
30     OptimizerSDDPBase() {}
31
32     virtual ~OptimizerSDDPBase() {}
33
34
35     /// \brief Optimize the LP during backward resolution
36     /// \param p_linCut cuts used for the PL (Benders for the Bellman value at the end of
37     /// the time step)
38     /// \param p_aState store the state, and 0.0 values
39     /// \param p_particle the particle n dimensional value associated to the regression
40     /// \param p_isample sample number for independant uncertainties
41     /// \return a vector with the optimal value and the derivatives if the function value
42     /// with respect to each state
43     virtual Eigen::ArrayXd oneStepBackward(const StOpt::SDDPCutOptBase &p_linCut, const std
44     ::tuple< std::shared_ptr<Eigen::ArrayXd>, int, int > &p_aState, const Eigen::
45     ArrayXd &p_particle, const int &p_isample) const = 0;
46
47     /// \brief Optimize the LP during forward resolution
48     /// \param p_aParticle a particule in simulation part to get back cuts
49     /// \param p_linCut cuts used for the PL (Benders for the Bellman value at the end of
50     /// the time step)
51     /// \param p_state store the state, the particle number used in optimization and mesh
52     /// number associated to the particle. As an input it contains the current state
53     /// \param p_stateToStore for backward resolution we need to store \f$(S_t, A_{t-1}, D_{
54     t-1}) \f$ where p_state in output is \f$(S_t, A_{t}, D_{t}) \f$
55     /// \param p_isimu number of teh simulation used
56     virtual double oneStepForward(const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_aParticle, Eigen::ArrayXd &
57     p_state, Eigen::ArrayXd &p_stateToStore, const StOpt::SDDPCutOptBase &p_linCut,
58     const int &p_isimu) const = 0 ;
59
60

```



```

51
52
53     /// \brief update the optimizer for new date
54     ///     - In Backward mode, LP resolution achieved at date p_dateNext,
55     ///     starting with uncertainties given at date p_date and evolving to give
56     ///     uncertainty at date p_dateNext,
57     ///     - In Forward mode, LP resolution achieved at date p_date,
58     ///     and uncertainties evolve till date p_dateNext
59     ///
60     virtual void updateDates(const double &p_date, const double &p_dateNext) = 0 ;
61
62     /// \brief Get an admissible state for a given date
63     /// \param p_date current date
64     /// \return an admissible state
65     virtual Eigen::ArrayXd oneAdmissibleState(const double &p_date) = 0 ;
66
67     /// \brief get back state size
68     virtual int getStateSize() const = 0;
69
70     /// \brief get the backward simulator back
71     virtual std::shared_ptr< StOpt::SimulatorSDDPBase > getSimulatorBackward() const = 0;
72
73     /// \brief get the forward simulator back
74     virtual std::shared_ptr< StOpt::SimulatorSDDPBase > getSimulatorForward() const = 0;
75 };
76 }
77 #endif /* OPTIMIZERSDDPBASE_H */

```

- A simulator for forward pass: SimulatorSim
- A simulator for backward pass: SimulatorOpt. This simulator can use an underlying process to generate scenarios, a set of historical chronicles or a discrete set of scenarios. Often in the realized test case a Boolean is enough to distinguish the forward and the backward simulator.

At the opposite of the class where the transition is described, the simulator are of course different for the tree approach and the regression based approach as the first gives only a finite number of states.

An abstract class for simulators using the regression based methods is defined below:

```

1 // Copyright (C) 2016 EDF
2 // All Rights Reserved
3 // This code is published under the GNU Lesser General Public License (GNU LGPL)
4 #ifndef SIMULATOR_SDDPBASE_H
5 #define SIMULATOR_SDDPBASE_H
6 #include <Eigen/Dense>
7
8 /* \file SimulatorBase.h
9 * \brief Abstract class for simulators for SDDP method
10 * \author Xavier Warin
11 */
12 namespace StOpt
13 {
14     /// \class SimulatorSDDPBase SimulatorSDDPBase.h
15     /// Abstract class for simulators used for SDDP
16     class SimulatorSDDPBase
17     {
18     public :
19
20         /// \brief Constructor
21         SimulatorSDDPBase() {}
22

```

```

23     /// \brief Destructor
24     virtual ~SimulatorSDDPBase() {}
25
26     /// \brief Get back the number of particles (used in regression part)
27     virtual int getNbSimul() const = 0;
28     /// \brief Get back the number of sample used (simulation at each time step , these
29     ///     simulations are independent of the state)
30     virtual int getNbSample() const = 0;
31     /// \brief Update the simulator for the date :
32     /// \param p_idateCurr index in date array
33     virtual void updateDateIndex(const int &p_idateCur) = 0;
34     /// \brief get one simulation
35     /// \param p_isim simulation number
36     /// \return the particle associated to p_isim
37     virtual Eigen::VectorXd getOneParticle(const int &p_isim) const = 0;
38     /// \brief get current Markov state
39     virtual Eigen::MatrixXd getParticles() const = 0;
40     /// \brief Reset the simulator (to use it again for another SDDP sweep)
41     virtual void resetTime() = 0;
42     /// \brief in simulation part of SDDP reset time and reinitialize uncertainties
43     /// \param p_nbSimul Number of simulations to update
44     virtual void updateSimulationNumberAndResetTime(const int &p_nbSimul) = 0;
45 };
46 }
47 #endif /* SIMULATORSDDPBASE_H */

```

An abstract class derived from the previous class for simulators using tree methods is defined below:

```

1 // Copyright (C) 2019 EDF
2 // All Rights Reserved
3 // This code is published under the GNU Lesser General Public License (GNU LGPL)
4 #ifndef SIMULATORSDDPBASSETREE_H
5 #define SIMULATORSDDPBASSETREE_H
6 #include <memory>
7 #include <Eigen/Dense>
8 #include "geners/BinaryFileArchive.hh"
9 #include "StOpt/core/utils/comparisonUtils.h"
10 #include "StOpt/dp/SimulatorDPBaseTree.h"
11 #include "StOpt/sddp/SimulatorSDDPBase.h"
12
13 /* \file SimulatorBaseTree.h
14 * \brief Base class for simulators for SDDP method with uncertainties breaking concavity/
15 *     convexity in a tree
16 * \author Xavier Warin
17 */
18 namespace StOpt
19 {
20     /// \class SimulatorSDDPBaseTree SimulatorSDDPBaseTree.h
21     /// Base class for simulators used for SDDP with uncertainties breaking concavity/
22     /// convexity in a Tree
23     class SimulatorSDDPBaseTree : public SimulatorSDDPBase, public SimulatorDPBaseTree
24     {
25     public :
26
27         /// \brief Constructor
28         /// \param p_binforTree binary generators archive with structure
29         ///     - dates -> eigen array of dates, size ndate
30         ///     - nodes -> nDate array , each array containing nodes coordinates with
31         ///     size (ndim, nbNodes)
32         ///     - proba -> for a point i at a given date and a point j at next date ,
33         ///     prob(i,j) gives the probability to go from node i to node j.
34         SimulatorSDDPBaseTree(const std::shared_ptr<gs::BinaryFileArchive> &p_binForTree):
35             SimulatorDPBaseTree(p_binForTree) {}
36     };
37 }

```

```

34
35     /// \brief Destructor
36     virtual ~SimulatorSDDPBaseTree() {}
37
38     /// \brief
39     /// \brief Get back the number of particles
40     virtual int getNbSimul() const
41     {
42         return 0;
43     }
44
45     /// \brief Get back the number of sample used (simulation at each time step , these
46     ///     simulations are independent of the state)
47     virtual int getNbSample() const
48     {
49         return 0 ;
50     }
51
52     /// \brief get one simulation
53     /// \param p_isim simulation number
54     /// \return the particle associated to p_isim
55     virtual Eigen::VectorXd getOneParticle(const int &p_isim) const
56     {
57         return m_nodesCurr.col(getNodeAssociatedToSim(p_isim));
58     }
59
60     /// \brief get current Markov state
61     virtual Eigen::MatrixXd getParticles() const
62     {
63         return Eigen::MatrixXd();
64     }
65
66     /// \brief Reset the simulator (to use it again for another SDDP sweep)
67     virtual void resetTime() {}
68
69     /// \brief in simulation part of SDDP reset time and reinitialize uncertainties
70     /// \param p_nbSimul Number of simulations to update
71     virtual void updateSimulationNumberAndResetTime(const int &p_nbSimul) {}
72
73     /// \brief Update the simulator for the date :
74     /// \param p_idateCurr index in date array
75     virtual void updateDateIndex(const int &p_idateCur)
76     {
77         load(p_idateCur);
78     }
79
80
81 };
82 }
83
84 #endif /* SIMULATORSDDPBASETREE_H */

```

14.3.2 Architecture

We only detail the SDDP architecture for the regression based approach as the tree approach uses the same algorithm.

The SDDP handling part of the library is built following the scheme described below.

In the following pseudo-code you have to keep in mind that some small shortcuts have been used in view of making the reading reader-friendly (for example linear sub-problem in the initial case ($t = 0$) should be a bit different than the the one in other time-steps, **forwardSDDP**, **backwardSDDP**, **backwardForwardSDDP** inputs have been omitted for simplification). A more rigorous theoretical explanation is available in the previous part.

Remark 33 *In order to use the tree method, **forwardSDDP**, **backwardSDDP**, **backwardforwardSDDP** can be replaced by some specialized version for trees called **forwardSDDPtree**, **backwardSDDPtree**, **backwardforwardSDDPtree** in the library.*

Three colors have been used: blue parts correspond to the use of functions implemented in the **TransitionOptimizer** class, red parts correspond to the use of **Simulator** (Sim or Opt) functions while grey parts correspond to generic functions totally handled by the library. To be more accurate, what you have to implement as an StOpt user is only the **TransitionOptimizer** and the **Simulator** (blue and red parts), other functions and described loops are already implemented and managed by the library.

Algorithm 17 Run of **backwardforwardSDDP()**,the main function)

- 1: Init: $x_t^g = \mathbf{TransitionOptimizer.oneAdmissibleState}(t)$, for $g \in \{1, \dots, G\}$ and $t \in \{1, \dots, T - 1\}$, $n = 0$, $\psi = \infty$.
 - 2: **while** $\psi > \epsilon$ and $n < n_{max}$ **do**
 - 3: **StOpt**
 - 4: $V_b = \mathbf{backwardSDDP}()$ *Using the previously computed set $(x_t^g)_{t,g}$ and creating a set of cuts.*
 - 5: $V_f = \mathbf{forwardSDDP}()$ *Simulation using the cuts created in all the backward passes and update the set $(x_t^g)_{t,g}$.*
 - 6:
$$\psi = \frac{V_f - V_b}{V_f}$$
 - 7:
$$n = n + 1$$
 - 8: **end while**
-

14.3.3 Implement your problem

In the following section, some tips and explanations will be given in view of helping you implementing your problem in the library. It is advised to have a look at the examples

Algorithm 18 Run of forwardSDDP (n^{th} iteration)

```

1: for  $g \in \Omega_g$  do
2:    $iStep = 0$ : index of the date stored in the simulator
3:   for  $t \in \{0, \dots, T\}$  do
4:     TransitionOptimizer.updateDates( $t, t + 1$ ): update the required data following the current time step (iterator over current time step, average demand,...)
5:     SimulatorSim.updateDateIndex( $iStep$ ): give the random quantities ( $\omega_t^g$ ) for the scenario  $g$  at time  $t$ 
6:     StOpt Read the previously computed files to gather  $\alpha_{t+1}^j, \beta_{t+1}^j$ , for  $j \in \{1, \dots, G, \dots, nG\}$ 
7:     TransitionOptimizer.oneStepForward():
      Solve the following linear sub-problem.
      
$$[AP_{t,g}^n] \begin{cases} s.c. & Q_t^g(x_{t-1}^g, \omega_t^g) = \min_{x_t, \theta_{t+1}} c_t^\top x_t + \theta_{t+1} \\ & A_t x_t = \omega_t^g - E_t x_{t-1}^g, \quad [\pi_t(\omega_t^g)] \\ & x_t \geq 0 \\ & \theta_{t+1} + (\beta_{t+1}^j)^\top x_t \geq \alpha_{t+1}^j, \quad j \in \{1, \dots, G, \dots, nG\} \end{cases} \quad (14.21)$$

      Compute the cost for current time step  $c_t^\top x_t^g$ 
      Return: the primal solution ( $x_t^g$ ) of the problem
8:     StOpt Store the primal solution ( $x_t^g$ ) of the problem  $[AP_{t,g}^n]$ 
9:      $iStep = iStep + 1$ 
10:  end for
11:  StOpt Compute the cost for scenario  $g$ , at iteration  $n$ :  $\bar{z}_n^g = \sum_{t=0}^T c_t x_t^g$ 
12: end for
13: StOpt Compute the total cost in forward pass at iteration  $n$ :  $\bar{z}_n = \frac{1}{G} \sum_{g=1}^G \bar{z}_n^g$ 

```

provided by the library. It will give you a better understanding of what is needed to compute the SDDP method through StOpt (folder `test/c++/tools/sddp` for the optimizer examples, `test/c++/tools/simulators` for the simulators one, and `test/c++/functional` for the main instances).

Implement your own TransitionOptimizer class

As described above, your **TransitionOptimizer** class should be specific to your problem (it is given as an argument of the `backwardForwardSDDP` function). Hence, you have to implement it by yourself following certain constraints in view of making it fitting the library requirements.

First, make it sure that your **TransitionOptimizer** class inherits from the class `OptimizerSDDPBase`. You will then have to implement the following functions.

Algorithm 19 Run of backwardSDDP

```
1:  $iStep = NbStep$ : update the simulator time index to give the uncertainty at  $T$ 
2: for  $t = T, T - 1, \dots, 0$  do
3:   StOpt Read the previously computed files to gather  $x_{t-1}^g$ , for  $g \in \{1, \dots, G\}$ 
4:   TransitionOptimizer.updateDates( $t - 1, t$ ): update the required data following
   the current time step (iterator over current time step, average demand,...)
5:   SimulatorOpt.updateDateIndex( $iStep$ ): give the random quantities for the  $L$ 
   scenarios at time  $t$ 
6:   StOpt Read the previously computed files to gather  $\alpha_{t+1}^j, \beta_{t+1}^j$ , for  $j \in$ 
    $\{1, \dots, G, \dots, nG\}$ 
7:   for  $x_{t-1}^g, g \in \{1, \dots, G\}$  do
8:     for  $\omega_t^l, l \in \{1, \dots, L\}$  do
9:       TransitionOptimizer.oneStepBackward()
       Solve the following linear sub-problem.
       
$$[AP_{t,l}^{n,g}] \begin{cases} Q_t^l(x_{t-1}^g, \omega_t^l) = \min_{x_t, \theta_{t+1}} c_t^\top x_t + \theta_{t+1} \\ \text{s.c.} & A_t x_t = \omega_t^l - E_t x_{t-1}^g, \quad [\pi_t(\omega_t^l)] \\ & x_t \geq 0 \\ & \theta_{t+1} + (\beta_{t+1}^j)^\top x_t \geq \alpha_{t+1}^j, \quad j \in \{1, \dots, G, \dots, (n+1)G\} \end{cases} \quad (14.22)$$

       Return: the dual solution  $\pi_t(\omega_t^l)$  and the primal one  $Q_t^l(x_{t-1}^g, \omega_t^l)$  of the
       linear sub-problem  $[AP_{t,l}^{n,g}]$ 
10:       $iStep = iStep + 1$ ,
11:    end for
12:    StOpt Compute the  $g^{th}$  new Benders cut at time  $t$  at iteration  $n$ :  $\alpha_t^j, \beta_t^j$ , for
     $j \in \{(n-1)G, (n-1)G + 1, \dots, nG\}$ 
13:  end for
14: end for
15: StOpt Save the cost backward  $z_n = Q_0$ 
```

- The `updateDates` function allows to update the data stored by the optimizer, fitting the times indicated as argument.

```
1
2  /// \brief update the optimizer for new date
3  ///      - In Backward mode, LP resolution achieved at date p_dateNext,
4  ///      starting with uncertainties given at date p_date and evolving to
  give uncertainty at date p_dateNext,
5  ///      - In Forward mode, LP resolution achieved at date p_date,
6  ///      and uncertainties evolve till date p_dateNext
7  ///      .
```

If your transition problem depends on the time, you should for instance store those arguments value. Following your needs you could also update data such as the average

demand at current and at next time step in a gas storage problem.

The `p_dateNext` argument is used as the current time step in the backward pass. Hence, you should store the values for both the arguments current and next time step.

- The `oneAdmissibleState` function give an admissible state (that means a state respecting all the constraints) for the time step given as an argument.

```
1 // \param p_date current date
```

- The `oneStepBackward` function allows to compute one step of the backward pass.

```
1 // \return a vector with the optimal value and the derivatives if the function
value with respect to each state
```

The first argument is the cuts already selected for the current time step. It is easy to handle them, just use the `getCutsAssociatedToAParticle` function as described in the examples that you can find in the test folder (`OptimizeReservoirWithInflowsSDDP.h` without regression or `OptimizeGasStorageSDDP.h` with regression). You will then have the needed cuts as an array `cuts` that you can link to the values described in the theoretical part at the time step t by $cuts(0, j) = \alpha_{t+1}^j$, $cuts(i, j) = \beta_{i-1, t+1}^j$, $j \in \{1, \dots, G, \dots, (n+1)G\}$, $i \in \{1, \dots, nb_{state}\}$.

You will have to add the cuts to your constraints by yourself, using this array and your solver functionalities.

Moreover, as an argument you have the object containing the state at the beginning of the time step `p_astate` (**have in mind that this argument is given as an Eigen array**), `p_particle` contains the random quantities in which the regression over the expectation of the value function will be based (the computational cost is high so have a look at the theoretical part to know when you really need to use this), finally the last argument is an integer giving in which scenario index the resolution will be done. The function returns a 1-dimensional array of size $nb_{state} + 1$ containing as a first argument the value of the objective function at the solution, and then for $i \in \{1, \dots, nb_{state}\}$ it contains the derivatives of the objective function compared to each of the i dimensions of the state (you have to find a way to have it by using the dual solution for instance).

- The `oneStepForward` function allows to compute one step of the forward pass.

```
1 // \param p_isimu number of teh simulation used
```

As you can see, the `oneStepForward` is quite similar to the `oneStepBackward`. A tip, used in the examples and that you should use, is to build a function generating and solving the linear problem $[AP_{t,g}^n]$ (for a given scenario g and a given time step t) which appears for both the forward and the backward pass. This function creating and generating the linear problem will be called in both our functions `oneStepForward` and `oneStepBackward`. Take care that in the forward pass the current time step is given through the function `updateDates(current date, next date)` by the argument `current date` while in the backward pass the current time is given through the argument `next date` (this is a requirement needed to compute the regressions as exposed in the

theoretical part). Finally note that the two previously described functions are `const` functions and you have to consider that during your implementation.

- The other functions that you have to implement are simple functions (accessors) easy to understand.

Implement your own Simulator class

This simulator should be the object that will allow you to build some random quantities following a desired law. It should be given as an argument of your optimizer. You can implement it by yourself, however a set of simulators (gaussian, AR1, MeanReverting,...) are given in the test folder you could directly use it if it fits your problem requirements.

A simulator for the regression based method

An implemented **Simulator** deriving from the `SimulatorSDDPBase` class needs to implement those functions:

- The `getNbSimul` function returns the number of simulations of random quantities used in regression part. It is the U hinted in the theoretical part.

```
1 virtual int getNbSimul() const = 0;
```

- The `getNbSample` function returns the number of simulations of random quantities that are not used in the regression part. It is the G hinted in the theoretical part. For instance, in some instances we need a gaussian random quantity in view of computing the noise when we are in the “dependence of the random quantities” part.

```
1 virtual int getNbSample() const = 0;
```

- The `updateDateIndex` function is really similar to the optimizer one. However you just have one argument (the time step index) here. It is also here that you have to generate new random quantities for the resolution.

```
1 /// \param p_idateCurr index in date array
```

- The `getOneParticle` and the `getParticles` functions should return the quantities used in regression part.

```
1 /// \brief get current Markov state
```

```
1 /// \brief get current Markov state
```

- The two last functions `resetTime` and `updateSimulationNumberAndResetTime` are quite explicit.

A simulator for the tree approach

A simulator using tree should be derived from the class `SimulatorSDDPBaseTree`. As the class `SimulatorSDDPBaseTree` is derived from the `SimulatorSDDPBase` class all previously described methods have to be given.

Besides a gensers archive is used to load:

- The dates used for the simulator to estimate the set of possible states,
- At each date, a set of d dimensional points defining the set of discrete values of the state in the tree,
- At each date a two dimensional array giving the probability transition in the tree to go from a node i at the current date to a node j at the following date.

Then the simulator implemented should call the based constructor loading the archive:

```
1  /// \brief Get back the number of particles
2  virtual int getNbSimul() const
3  {
4      return 0;
5  }
6
7  /// \brief Get back the number of sample used (simulation at each time step , these
      simulations are independent of the state)
```

Then the user should have generated such an archive. An example using a trinomial tree method for an AR1 class is given in the c++ test cases in the simulator directory by the class `MeanRevertingSimulatorTree`.

The methods to implement necessary are the following one:

- The `getNodeAssociatedToSim` method give for a simulation identified by the particle number the node in the tree visited

- The `stepForward` method updates the simulation date index by one, and samples the nodes visited in forward resolution.

14.3.4 Set of parameters

Implementing some regression based method

The basic function `backwardForwardSDDP` should be called to use the SDDP part of the library with conditional cuts calculated by regressions. This function is templated by the regressor used:

- `LocalConstRegressionForSDDP` regressor permits to use a constant per mesh approximation of the SDDP cuts,

- `LocalLinearRegressionForSDDP` regressor permits to use a linear approximation per mesh of the SDDP cuts.

```

1 /// \brief Achieve forward and backward sweep by SDDP
2 /// \param p_optimizer defines the optimiser necessary to optimize a step for
   one simulation solving a LP
3 /// \param p_nbSimulCheckForSimu defines the number of simulations to check convergence
4 /// \param p_initialState initial state at the beginning of simulation
5 /// \param p_finalCut object of final cuts
6 /// \param p_dates vector of exercised dates, last date corresponds to the
   final cut object
7 /// \param p_meshForReg number of mesh for regression in each direction
8 /// \param p_nameRegressor name of the archive to store regressors
9 /// \param p_nameCut name of the archive to store cuts
10 /// \param p_nameVisitedStates name of the archive to store visited states
11 /// \param p_iter maximum iteration of SDDP, on return the number of
   iterations achieved
12 /// \param p_accuracy accuracy asked , on return estimation of accuracy
   achieved (expressed in %)
13 /// \param p_nStepConv every p_nStepConv convergence is checked
14 /// \param p_stringStream dump all print messages
15 /// \param p_bPrintTime if true print time at each backward and forward step
16 /// \return backward and forward valorization
17 template< class LocalRegressionForSDDP>
18 std::pair<double, double> backwardForwardSDDP(std::shared_ptr<OptimizerSDDPBase> &
   p_optimizer,
19     const int &p_nbSimulCheckForSimu,
20     const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_initialState,
21     const SDDPFinalCut &p_finalCut,
22     const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_dates,
23     const Eigen::ArrayXi &p_meshForReg,
24     const std::string &p_nameRegressor,
25     const std::string &p_nameCut,
26     const std::string &p_nameVisitedStates,

```

Most of the arguments are pretty clear (You can see examples in `test/c++/functional`). The strings correspond to names that will be given by the files which will store cuts, visited states or regressor data. `p_nbSimulCheckForSimu` corresponds to the number of simulations (number of forward pass called) when we have to check the convergence by comparing the outcome given by the forward pass and the one given by the backward pass. `p_nStepConv` indicates when the convergence is checked (each `p_nStepConv` iteration). `p_finalCut` corresponds to the cut used at the last time step: when the final value function is zero, the last cut is given by an all zero array of size $nb_{state} + 1$. `p_dates` is an array made up with all the time steps of the study period given as doubles, `p_iter` correspond to the maximum number of iterations. Finally, `p_stringStream` is an `ostringstream` in which the result of the optimization will be stored.

Implementing a tree based method

The basic function `backwardForwardSDDPTree` should be called to use the SDDP part of the library with conditional cuts calculated with trees.

```

1 /// \brief Achieve forward and backward sweep by SDDP with tree
2 /// \param p_optimizer defines the optimiser necessary to optimize a step for
   one simulation solving a LP
3 /// \param p_nbSimulCheckForSimu defines the number of simulations to check convergence
4 /// \param p_initialState initial state at the beginning of simulation
5 /// \param p_finalCut object of final cuts
6 /// \param p_dates vector of exercised dates, last date corresponds to the
   final cut object

```

```

7 /// \param p_nameCut          name of the archive to store cuts
8 /// \param p_nameVisitedStates name of the archive to store visited states
9 /// \param p_iter            maximum iteration of SDDP, on return the number of
    iterations achieved
10 /// \param p_accuracy        accuracy asked , on return estimation of accuracy
    achieved (expressed in %)
11 /// \param p_nStepConv       every p_nStepConv convergence is checked
12 /// \param p_stringStream    dump all print messages
13 /// \param p_bPrintTime      if true print time at each backward and forward step
14 /// \return backward and forward valorization
15 std::pair<double, double> backwardForwardSDDPTree(std::shared_ptr<OptimizerSDDPBase> &
    p_optimizer,
16     const int &p_nbSimulCheckForSimu,
17     const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_initialState,
18     const SDDPFinalCutTree &p_finalCut,
19     const Eigen::ArrayXd &p_dates,
20     const std::string &p_nameCut,
21     const std::string &p_nameVisitedStates,
22     int &p_iter,
23     double &p_accuracy,
24     const int &p_nStepConv,
25     std::ostream &p_stringStream,
26     bool p_bPrintTime = false)

```

14.3.5 The black box

The algorithms described above are applied. As said before the user controls the implementation of the business side of the problem (transition problem). But in the library a few things are managed automatically and the user has to be aware of:

- The **Parallelization** during the problem resolution is managed automatically. During compilation, if the compiler detects an MPI (Message Passing Interface) library problem resolution will be achieved in a parallelized manner.
- The **cut management**. All the cuts added at each iteration are currently serialized and stored in an archive initialized by the user. No cuts are pruned. In the future one can consider to work on cuts management [39].
- A **double stopping criterion** is barely used by the library: a convergence test and a maximal number of iterations. If one of the two criteria goes over the thresholds defined by the user resolution stops automatically. Once again further work could be considered on that topic.

14.3.6 Outputs

The outputs of the SDDP library are not currently defined. Thus during the resolution of a SDDP problem only the number of iterations, the evolution of the backward and forward costs and of the convergence criterion are logged.

Yet while iterating backward and forward pass the value of the Bellman functions and the related Benders cuts , the different states visited during the forward pass and the costs evolution are stored at each time of the time horizon. These information are helpful for the

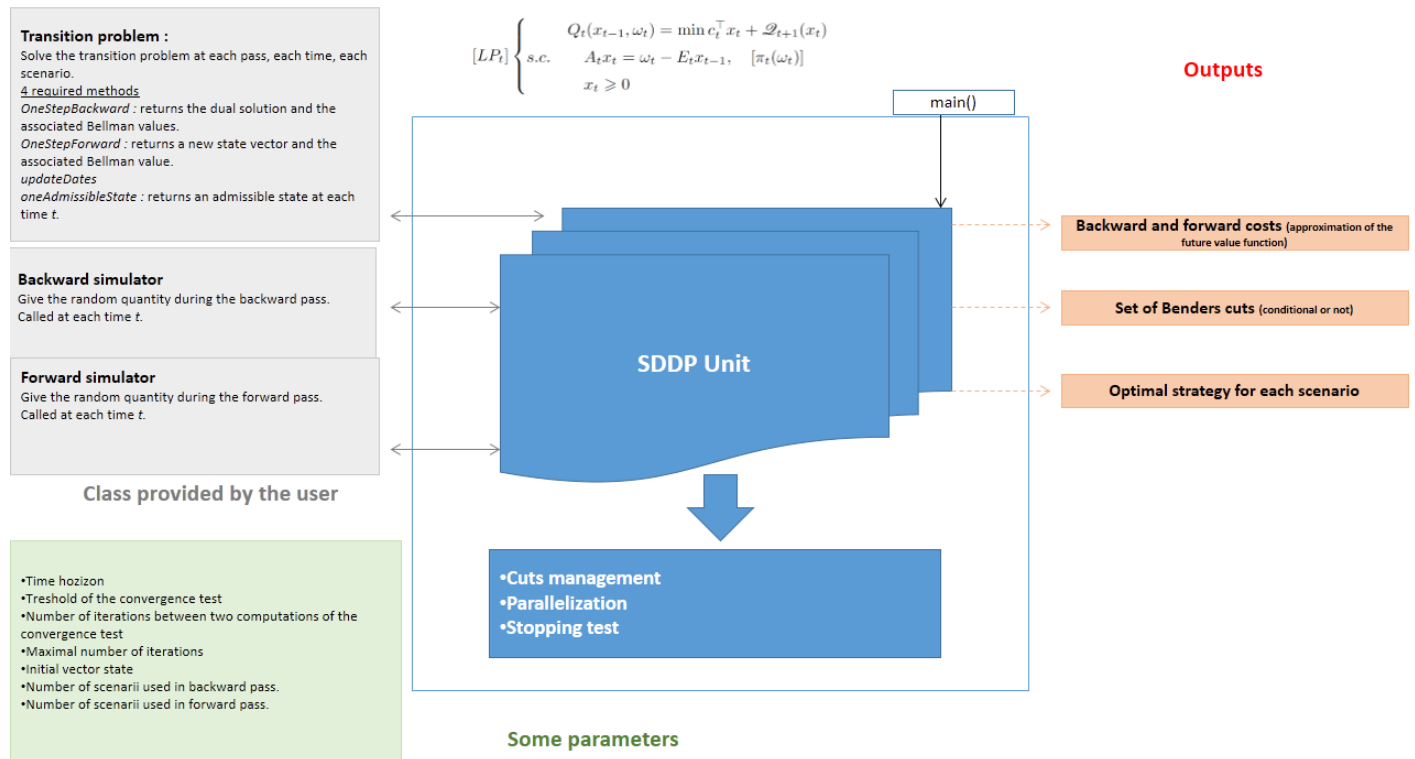


Figure 14.1: Current architecture of the generic SDDP unit

users and easy to catch.

Once the convergence is achieved, the user should rerun some simulations adding some flag to store the results needed by the application (distribution cost etc.): these results will be post-processed by the user.

14.4 Python API (only for regression based methods)

A high level Python mapping is also available in the SDDP part. The backward-forward C++ function is exposed in Python by the SDDP module `StOptSDDP`. In this mapping only the linear per mesh regressor is used.

```
1 import StOptSDDP
2 dir(StOptSDDP)
```

that should give

```
['OptimizerSDDPBase', 'SDDPFinalCut', 'SimulatorSDDPBase', '__doc__', '__file__', '__name__', '__package__', 'backwardForwardSDDP']
```

The `backwardForwardSDDP` realizes the forward backward SDDP sweep giving a SDDP optimizer and a SDDP uncertainty simulator. The initial final cuts for the last time steps are provided by the `SDDPFinalCut` object.

To realize the mapping of SDDP optimizers and simulators written in C++ it is necessary

to create a Boost Python wrapper. In order to expose the C++ optimizer class `OptimizeDemandSDDP` used in the test case `testDemandSDDP.cpp`, the following wrapper can be found in

`StOpt/test/c++/python/Pybind11SDDPOptimizers.cpp`

```

1 // Copyright (C) 2019 EDF
2 // All Rights Reserved
3 // This code is published under the GNU Lesser General Public License (GNU LGPL)
4 #include <pybind11/pybind11.h>
5 #include <pybind11/eigen.h>
6 #include <pybind11/stl_bind.h>
7 #include <pybind11/stl.h>
8 #include "StOpt/core/grids/OneDimRegularSpaceGrid.h"
9 #include "StOpt/core/grids/OneDimData.h"
10 #include "StOpt/sddp/OptimizerSDDPBase.h"
11 #include "test/c++/tools/sddp/OptimizeDemandSDDP.h"
12 #include "test/c++/tools/simulators/SimulatorGaussianSDDP.h"
13 #include "test/c++/python/FutureCurveWrap.h"
14
15 /** \file Pybind11SDDPOptimizers.cpp
16 *  \brief permits to map Optimizers for SDDP
17 *  \author Xavier Warin
18 */
19
20
21 /// \wrapper for Optimizer for demand test case in SDDP
22 class OptimizeDemandSDDPWrap : public OptimizeDemandSDDP<SimulatorGaussianSDDP>
23 {
24 public :
25
26     /// \brief Constructor
27     /// \param p_sigD volatility for demand
28     /// \param p_kappaD AR coefficient for demand
29     /// \param p_timeDAverage average demand
30     /// \param p_spot Spot price
31     /// \param p_simulatorBackward backward simulator
32     /// \param p_simulatorForward Forward simulator
33     OptimizeDemandSDDPWrap(const double &p_sigD, const double &p_kappaD,
34                             const FutureCurve &p_timeDAverage,
35                             const double &p_spot,
36                             const std::shared_ptr<SimulatorGaussianSDDP> &
37                                 p_simulatorBackward,
38                             const std::shared_ptr<SimulatorGaussianSDDP> &p_simulatorForward
39                                 ):
40         OptimizeDemandSDDP(p_sigD, p_kappaD,
41                             std::make_shared< StOpt::OneDimData< StOpt::
42                                 OneDimRegularSpaceGrid, double> >(static_cast<StOpt::
43                                 OneDimData< StOpt::OneDimRegularSpaceGrid, double> >(
44                                 p_timeDAverage)),
45                             p_spot, p_simulatorBackward, p_simulatorForward) { }
46 };
47
48 namespace py = pybind11;
49
50 PYBIND11_MODULE(SDDPOptimizers, m)
51 {
52
53     py::class_<OptimizeDemandSDDPWrap, std::shared_ptr<OptimizeDemandSDDPWrap>, StOpt::
54         OptimizerSDDPBase >(m, "OptimizeDemandSDDP")
55         .def(py::init< const double &, const double &, const FutureCurve &,
56             const double &,
57             const std::shared_ptr<SimulatorGaussianSDDP> &,
58             const std::shared_ptr<SimulatorGaussianSDDP> &>())
59         .def("getSimulatorBackward", &OptimizeDemandSDDP<SimulatorGaussianSDDP>::

```

```

    getSimulatorBackward)
56 .def("getSimulatorForward", &OptimizeDemandSDDP<SimulatorGaussianSDDP>::
    getSimulatorForward)
57 .def("oneAdmissibleState", &OptimizeDemandSDDP<SimulatorGaussianSDDP>::
    oneAdmissibleState)
58 ;
59 }

```

The wrapper used to expose the SDDP simulator is given in

StOpt/test/c++/python/Pybind11Simulators.cpp

Then it is possible to use the mapping to write a Python version of testDemandSDDP.cpp

```

1 # Copyright (C) 2016 EDF
2 # All Rights Reserved
3 # This code is published under the GNU Lesser General Public License (GNU LGPL)
4 import StOptGrids
5 import StOptSDDP
6 import StOptGlobal
7 import Utils
8 import SDDPSimulators as sim
9 import SDDPOptimizers as opt
10 import numpy as NP
11 import unittest
12 import math
13 import imp
14 import sddp.backwardForwardSDDP as bfSDDP # import of the function written in python
15
16 # unittest equivalent of testDemandSDDP : here MPI version
17 # High level python interface : at level of the backwardForwardSDDP c++ file
18 #####
19 def demandSDDPFunc(p_sigD, p_sampleOptim, p_sampleCheckSimul):
20
21     maturity = 40
22     nstep = 40;
23
24     # optimizer parameters
25     kappaD = 0.2; # mean reverting coef of demand
26     spot = 3 ; # spot price
27
28     # define a a time grid
29     timeGrid = StOptGrids.OneDimRegularSpaceGrid(0., maturity / nstep, nstep)
30
31     # periodicity factor
32     iPeriod = 52;
33     # average demande values
34     demValues = []
35
36     for i in list(range(nstep + 1)) :
37         demValues.append(2. + 0.4 * math.cos((math.pi * i * iPeriod) / nstep))
38
39     # define average demand
40     demGrid = Utils.FutureCurve(timeGrid, demValues)
41
42     initialState = demGrid.get(0.)*NP.ones(1)
43
44     finCut = StOptSDDP.SDDPFinalCut(NP.zeros((2,1)))
45
46     # here cuts are not conditional to an uncertainty
47     nbMesh = NP.array([],NP.int32)
48     nbUncertainties = 1;
49
50     # backward simulator
51     backwardSimulator = sim.SimulatorGaussianSDDP(nbUncertainties, p_sampleOptim)
52     # forward simulator
53     forwardSimulator = sim.SimulatorGaussianSDDP(nbUncertainties)
54
55     # Create the optimizer

```

```

56     optimizer = opt.OptimizeDemandSDDP(p_sigD, kappaD, demGrid, spot,
    backwardSimulator, forwardSimulator)
57
58     # optimisation dates
59     dates = NP.linspace( 0., maturity, nstep + 1);
60
61     # names for archive
62     nameRegressor = "RegressorDemand";
63     nameCut = "CutDemand";
64     nameVisitedStates = "VisitedStateDemand";
65
66     # precision parameter
67     nIterMax = 40
68     accuracyClose = 1.
69     accuracy = accuracyClose / 100.
70     nstepIterations = 4; # check for convergence between nstepIterations step
71
72     values = StOptSDDP.backwardForwardSDDP(optimizer, p_sampleCheckSimul, initialState
    , finCut, dates, nbMesh, nameRegressor, nameCut, nameVisitedStates, nIterMax,
    accuracy, nstepIterations);
73
74
75     print("Values " , values)
76     return values
77
78
79 # unittest equivalent of testDemandSDDP : here low interface python version
80 # Low level python interface : use backwardForwardSDDP.py
81 #####
82 def demandSDDPFuncLowLevel(p_sigD, p_sampleOptim ,p_sampleCheckSimul):
83
84     maturity = 40
85     nstep = 40;
86
87     # optimizer parameters
88     kappaD = 0.2; # mean reverting coef of demand
89     spot = 3 ; # spot price
90
91     # define a a time grid
92     timeGrid = StOptGrids.OneDimRegularSpaceGrid(0., maturity / nstep, nstep)
93
94
95     # periodicity factor
96     iPeriod = 52;
97     # average demande values
98     demValues = []
99
100    for i in list(range(nstep + 1)) :
101        demValues.append(2. + 0.4 * math.cos((math.pi * i * iPeriod) / nstep))
102
103    # define average demand
104    demGrid =Utils.FutureCurve(timeGrid, demValues)
105
106    initialState = demGrid.get(0.)*NP.ones(1)
107
108    finCut = StOptSDDP.SDDPFinalCut(NP.zeros((2,1)))
109
110    # here cuts are not conditional to an uncertainty
111    nbMesh = NP.array([],NP.int32)
112    nbUncertainties = 1;
113
114    # backward simulator
115    backwardSimulator = sim.SimulatorGaussianSDDP(nbUncertainties,p_sampleOptim)
116    # forward simulator
117    forwardSimulator = sim.SimulatorGaussianSDDP(nbUncertainties)
118
119    # Create the optimizer
120    optimizer = opt.OptimizeDemandSDDP(p_sigD, kappaD, demGrid, spot,
    backwardSimulator, forwardSimulator)
121

```

```

122     # optimisation dates
123     dates = NP.linspace( 0., maturity, nstep + 1);
124
125     # names for archive
126     nameRegressor = "RegressorDemand";
127     nameCut = "CutDemand";
128     nameVisitedStates = "VisitedStateDemand";
129
130     # precision parameter
131     nIterMax = 40
132     accuracyClose = 1.
133     accuracy = accuracyClose / 100.
134     nstepIterations = 4; # check for convergence between nstepIterations step
135
136     values = bfSDDP.backwardForwardSDDP(optimizer, p_sampleCheckSimul, initialState,
137                                         finCut, dates, nbMesh, nameRegressor,
138                                         nameCut, nameVisitedStates, nIterMax,
139                                         accuracy, nstepIterations);
140
141     return values
142
143 class testDemandSDDP(unittest.TestCase):
144     def testDemandSDDP1D(self):
145         try:
146             imp.find_module('mpi4py')
147             found = True
148         except:
149             print("Not parallel module found ")
150             found = False
151
152         if found :
153             from mpi4py import MPI
154             world = MPI.COMM_WORLD
155
156             sigD = 0.6 ;
157             sampleOptim = 500;
158             sampleCheckSimul = 500;
159
160             values = demandSDDPFunc(sigD, sampleOptim ,sampleCheckSimul)
161
162             if (world.rank==0):
163                 print("Values is ",values)
164
165     def testDemandSDDP1DLowLevel(self):
166         sigD = 0.6 ;
167         sampleOptim = 500;
168         sampleCheckSimul = 500;
169         demandSDDPFuncLowLevel(sigD, sampleOptim ,sampleCheckSimul)
170
171
172 if __name__ == '__main__':
173     unittest.main()

```


Part VII

Nesting Monte Carlo for general non linear PDEs

The method described is has been studied in [53], [52] and is using some ideas in [23], [51].

Our goal is to solve the general full non linear equation

$$\begin{aligned} (-\partial_t u - \mathcal{L}u)(t, x) &= f(t, x, u(t, x), Du(t, x), D^2u(t, x)), \\ u_T &= g, \quad t < T, \quad x \in \mathbb{R}^d, \end{aligned} \tag{14.23}$$

with

$$\mathcal{L}u(t, x) := \mu Du(t, x) + \frac{1}{2} \sigma \sigma^\top : D^2u(t, x)$$

so that \mathcal{L} is the generator associated to

$$X_t = x + \mu t + \sigma dW_t,$$

with $\mu \in \mathbb{R}^d$, and $\sigma \in \mathbb{M}^d$ is some constant matrix.

In the whole article, ρ is the density of a general random variable following a gamma law so that

$$\rho(x) = \lambda^\alpha x^{\alpha-1} \frac{e^{-\lambda x}}{\Gamma(\alpha)}, \quad 1 \geq \alpha > 0. \tag{14.24}$$

The associated cumulative distribution function is

$$F(x) = \frac{\gamma(\alpha, \lambda x)}{\Gamma(\alpha)}$$

where $\gamma(s, x) = \int_0^x t^{s-1} e^{-t} dt$ is the incomplete gamma function and $\Gamma(s) = \int_0^\infty t^{s-1} e^{-t} dt$ is the gamma function.

The methodology follows the ideas of [53] and [51].

We suppose here that σ is non degenerated so that σ^{-1} exists.

Let set $p \in \mathbb{N}^+$. For $(N_0, \dots, N_{p-1}) \in \mathbb{N}^p$, we introduce the sets of i-tuple, $Q_i = \{k = (k_1, \dots, k_i)\}$ for $i \in \{1, \dots, p\}$ where all components $k_j \in [1, N_{j-1}]$. Besides we define $Q^p = \cup_{i=1}^p Q_i$.

We construct the sets Q_i^o for $i = 1, \dots, p$, such that

$$Q_1^o = Q_1$$

and the set Q_i^o for $i > 1$ are defined by recurrence:

$$Q_{i+1}^o = \{(k_1, \dots, k_i, k_{i+1}) / (k_1, \dots, k_i) \in Q_i^o, k_{i+1} \in \{1, \dots, N_{i+1}, 1_1, \dots, (N_{i+1})_1, 1_2, \dots, (N_{i+1})_2\}\}$$

so that to a particle noted $(k_1, \dots, k_i) \in Q_i^o$ such that $k_i \in \mathbb{N}$, we associate two fictitious particles noted $k^1 = (k_1, \dots, k_{i-1}, (k_i)_1)$ and $k^2 = (k_1, \dots, k_{i-1}, (k_i)_2)$.

To a particle $k = (k_1, \dots, k_i) \in Q_i^o$ we associate its original particle $o(k) \in Q_i$ such that $o(k) = (\hat{k}_1, \dots, \hat{k}_i)$ where $\hat{k}_j = l$ if $k_j = l, l_1$ or l_2 .

For $k = (k_1, \dots, k_i) \in Q_i^o$ we introduce the set of its non fictitious sons

$$\tilde{Q}(k) = \{l = (k_1, \dots, k_i, m) / m \in \{1, \dots, N_i\}\} \subset Q_{i+1}^o,$$

and the set of all sons

$$\hat{Q}(k) = \{l = (k_1, \dots, k_i, m)/m \in \{1, \dots, N_i, 1_1, \dots, (N_i)_1, 1_2, \dots, (N_i)_2\}\} \subset Q_{i+1}^o.$$

By convention $\tilde{Q}(\emptyset) = \{l = (m)/m \in \{1, \dots, N_0\}\} = Q_1$. Reciprocally the ancestor k of a particle \tilde{k} in $\tilde{Q}(k)$ is noted \tilde{k}^- .

We define the order of a particle $k \in Q_i^o$, $i \geq 0$, by the function κ :

$$\begin{aligned} \kappa(k) &= 0 \text{ for } k_i \in \mathbb{N}, \\ \kappa(k) &= 1 \text{ for } k_i = l_1, l \in \mathbb{N} \\ \kappa(k) &= 2 \text{ for } k_i = l_2, l \in \mathbb{N} \end{aligned}$$

We define the sequence τ_k of switching increments i.i.d. random variables with density ρ for $k \in Q^p$. The switching dates are defined as:

$$\begin{cases} T_{(j)} &= \tau_{(j)} \wedge T, j \in \{1, \dots, N_0\} \\ T_{\tilde{k}} &= (T_k + \tau_{\tilde{k}}) \wedge T, k = (k_1, \dots, k_i) \in Q_i, \tilde{k} \in \tilde{Q}(k) \end{cases} \quad (14.25)$$

By convention $T_k = T_{o(k)}$ and $\tau_k = \tau_{o(k)}$. For $k = (k_1, \dots, k_i) \in Q_i^o$ and $\tilde{k} = (k_1, \dots, k_i, k_{i+1}) \in \hat{Q}(k)$ we define the following trajectories:

$$W_s^{\tilde{k}} := W_{T_k}^k + \mathbf{1}_{\kappa(\tilde{k})=0} \bar{W}_{s-T_k}^{o(\tilde{k})} - \mathbf{1}_{\kappa(\tilde{k})=1} \bar{W}_{s-T_k}^{o(\tilde{k})}, \quad \text{and} \quad (14.26)$$

$$X_s^{\tilde{k}} := x + \mu s + \sigma W_s^{\tilde{k}}, \quad \forall s \in [T_k, T_{\tilde{k}}], \quad (14.27)$$

where the \bar{W}^k for k in Q^p are independent d -dimensional Brownian motions, independent of the $(\tau_k)_{k \in Q^p}$.

In order to understand what these different trajectories represent, suppose that $d = 1$, $\mu = 0$, $\sigma = 1$ and let us consider the original particle $k = (1, 1, 1)$ such that $T_{(1,1,1)} = T$.

Following equation (14.26),

$$\begin{aligned} X_T^{(1,1,1)} &= \bar{W}_{T(1)}^{(1)} + \bar{W}_{T(1,1)-T(1)}^{(1,1)} + \bar{W}_{T-T(1,1)}^{(1,1,1)} \\ X_T^{(1_1,1,1)} &= -\bar{W}_{T(1)}^{(1)} + \bar{W}_{T(1,1)-T(1)}^{(1,1)} + \bar{W}_{T-T(1,1)}^{(1,1,1)} \\ X_T^{(1,1_1,1)} &= \bar{W}_{T(1)}^{(1)} - \bar{W}_{T(1,1)-T(1)}^{(1,1)} + \bar{W}_{T-T(1,1)}^{(1,1,1)} \\ X_T^{(1_2,1_1,1)} &= -\bar{W}_{T(1,1)-T(1)}^{(1,1)} + \bar{W}_{T-T(1,1)}^{(1,1,1)} \\ &\dots \end{aligned}$$

such that all particles are generated from the \bar{W}^k used to define $X_T^{(1,1,1)}$.

Using the previous definitions, we consider the estimator defined by:

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l}
 \bar{u}_\emptyset^p = \frac{1}{N_0} \sum_{j=1}^{N_0} \phi(0, T_{(j)}, X_{T_{(j)}}^{(j)}, \bar{u}_{(j)}^p, D\bar{u}_{(j)}^p, D^2\bar{u}_{(j)}^p), \\
 \bar{u}_k^p = \frac{1}{N_i} \sum_{\tilde{k} \in \tilde{Q}(k)} \frac{1}{2} (\phi(T_k, T_{\tilde{k}}, X_{T_{\tilde{k}}}^{\tilde{k}}, \bar{u}_{\tilde{k}}^p, D\bar{u}_{\tilde{k}}^p, D^2\bar{u}_{\tilde{k}}^p) + \\
 \quad \phi(T_k, T_{\tilde{k}}, X_{T_{\tilde{k}}}^{\tilde{k}^1}, \bar{u}_{\tilde{k}^1}^p, D\bar{u}_{\tilde{k}^1}^p, D^2\bar{u}_{\tilde{k}^1}^p)), \quad \text{for } k = (k_1, \dots, k_i) \in Q_i^o, 0 < i < p, \\
 D\bar{u}_k^p = \frac{1}{N_i} \sum_{\tilde{k} \in \tilde{Q}(k)} \mathbb{V}^{\tilde{k}} \frac{1}{2} (\phi(T_k, T_{\tilde{k}}, X_{T_{\tilde{k}}}^{\tilde{k}}, \bar{u}_{\tilde{k}}^p, D\bar{u}_{\tilde{k}}^p, D^2\bar{u}_{\tilde{k}}^p) - \\
 \quad \phi(T_k, T_{\tilde{k}}, X_{T_{\tilde{k}}}^{\tilde{k}^1}, \bar{u}_{\tilde{k}^1}^p, D\bar{u}_{\tilde{k}^1}^p, D^2\bar{u}_{\tilde{k}^1}^p)), \quad \text{for } k = (k_1, \dots, k_i) \in Q_i^o, 0 < i < p, \\
 D^2\bar{u}_k^p = \frac{1}{N_i} \sum_{\tilde{k} \in \tilde{Q}(k)} \mathbb{W}^{\tilde{k}} \frac{1}{2} (\phi(T_k, T_{\tilde{k}}, X_{T_{\tilde{k}}}^{\tilde{k}}, \bar{u}_{\tilde{k}}^p, D\bar{u}_{\tilde{k}}^p, D^2\bar{u}_{\tilde{k}}^p) + \\
 \quad \phi(T_k, T_{\tilde{k}}, X_{T_{\tilde{k}}}^{\tilde{k}^1}, \bar{u}_{\tilde{k}^1}^p, D\bar{u}_{\tilde{k}^1}^p, D^2\bar{u}_{\tilde{k}^1}^p) - \\
 \quad 2\phi(T_k, T_{\tilde{k}}, X_{T_{\tilde{k}}}^{\tilde{k}^2}, \bar{u}_{\tilde{k}^2}^p, D\bar{u}_{\tilde{k}^2}^p, D^2\bar{u}_{\tilde{k}^2}^p)), \quad \text{for } k = (k_1, \dots, k_i) \in Q_i^o, 0 < i < p, \\
 \bar{u}_k^p = g(X_{T_k}^k), \quad \text{for } k \in Q_p^o, \\
 D\bar{u}_k^p = Dg(X_{T_k}^k), \quad \text{for } \tilde{k} \in Q_p^o, \\
 D^2\bar{u}_k^p = D^2g(X_{T_k}^k), \quad \text{for } \tilde{k} \in Q_p^o
 \end{array} \right.$$

(14.28)

where ϕ is defined by:

$$\phi(s, t, x, y, z, \theta) := \frac{\mathbf{1}_{\{t \geq T\}}}{\bar{F}(T-s)} g(x) + \frac{\mathbf{1}_{\{t < T\}}}{\rho(t-s)} f(t, x, y, z, \theta). \quad (14.29)$$

and

$$\mathbb{V}^k = \sigma^{-\top} \frac{\bar{W}_{T_k - T_{k-}}^k}{T_k - T_{k-}}$$

,

$$\mathbb{W}^k = (\sigma^\top)^{-1} \frac{\bar{W}_{T_k - T_{k-}}^k (\bar{W}_{T_k - T_{k-}}^k)^\top - (T_k - T_{k-}) I_d}{(T_k - T_{k-})^2} \sigma^{-1} \quad (14.30)$$

As explained before, the u and Du term in f are treated as explained in [53] and only the D^2u treatment is the novelty of this scheme.

Remark 34 *In practice, we just have the g value at the terminal date T and we want to apply the scheme even if the derivatives of the final solution is not defined. We can close the system for k in Q_p^o replacing ϕ by g and taking some value for N_{p+1} :*

$$\begin{aligned} \bar{u}_k^p &= \frac{1}{N_{p+1}} \sum_{\tilde{k} \in \tilde{Q}(k)} \frac{1}{2} (g(X_{T_{\tilde{k}}}^{\tilde{k}}) + g(X_{T_{\tilde{k}}}^{\tilde{k}^1})), \\ D\bar{u}_k^p &= \frac{1}{N_{p+1}} \sum_{\tilde{k} \in \tilde{Q}(k)} \mathbb{V}^{\tilde{k}} \frac{1}{2} (g(X_{T_{\tilde{k}}}^{\tilde{k}}) - g(X_{T_{\tilde{k}}}^{\tilde{k}^1})), \\ D^2\bar{u}_k^p &= \frac{1}{N_{p+1}} \sum_{\tilde{k} \in \tilde{Q}(k)} \mathbb{W}^{\tilde{k}} \frac{1}{2} (g(X_{T_{\tilde{k}}}^{\tilde{k}}) + g(X_{T_{\tilde{k}}}^{\tilde{k}^1}) - 2g(X_{T_{\tilde{k}}}^{\tilde{k}^2})) \end{aligned}$$

Remark 35 *In the case where the coefficient are not constant, some Euler scheme can be added as explained in [53].*

An effective algorithm for this scheme is given these two functions:

Algorithm 20 Outer Monte Carlo algorithm (V generates unit Gaussian RV, \tilde{V} generates RV with gamma law density)

- 1: **procedure** PDEEVAL($\mu, \sigma, g, f, T, p, x_0, \{N_0, \dots, N_{p+1}\}, V, \tilde{V}$)
 - 2: $u_M = 0$
 - 3: $x(0, :) = x_0(:)$ $\triangleright x$ is a matrix of size $1 \times n$
 - 4: **for** $i = 1, N_0$ **do**
 - 5: $(u, Du, D^2u) = \text{EvalUDUD2U}(x_0, \mu, \sigma, g, T, V, \tilde{V}, p, 1, 0, 0)$
 - 6: $u_M = u_M + u(0)$
 - 7: **end for**
 - 8: **return** $\frac{u_M}{N_0}$
 - 9: **end procedure**
-

Algorithm 21 Inner Monte Carlo algorithm where t is the current time, x the array of particles positions of size $m \times d$, and l the nesting level.

```

1: procedure EVALUDUD2U( $x, \mu, \sigma, g, T, V, \tilde{V}, p, m, t, l$ )
2:    $\tau = \min(\tilde{V}(), T - t)$ , ▷ Sample the time step
3:    $G = V()$  ▷ Sample the  $n$  dimensional Gaussian vector
4:    $xS(1 : m, :) = x(:) + \mu\tau + \sigma G\sqrt{\tau}$ 
5:    $xS(m + 1 : 2m, :) = x(:) + \mu\tau$ 
6:    $xS(2m + 1 : 3m, :) = x(:) + \mu\tau - \sigma G\sqrt{\tau}$ 
7:    $tS = t + \tau$  ▷ New date
8:   if  $tS \geq T$  or  $l = p$  then
9:      $g_1 = g(xS(1 : m, :)); g_2 = (xS(m + 1 : 2m, :)); g_3 = g(xS(2m + 1 : 3m, :))$ 
10:     $u(:) = \frac{1}{2}(g_1 + g_3)$ 
11:     $Du(:, :) = \frac{1}{2}(g_1 - g_3) \sigma^{-\top} G$ 
12:     $D^2u(:, :, :) = \frac{1}{2}(g_1 + g_3 - 2g_2)\sigma^{-\top} \frac{GG^{\top} - \mathbf{I}_d}{\tau} \sigma^{-1}$ 
13:    if  $l \neq p$  then
14:       $(u(:), Du(:, :), D^2u(:, :, :)) / = \frac{1}{F(\tau)}$ 
15:    end if
16:  else
17:     $y(:) = 0; z(:, :) = 0; \theta(:, :, :) = 0$ 
18:    for  $j = 1, N_{l+1}$  do
19:       $(y, z, \theta) + = \text{EvalUDUD2U}(xS, \mu, \sigma, g, T, V, \tilde{V}, p, 3m, tS, l + 1)$ 
20:    end for
21:     $(y, z, \theta) / = N_{l+1}$ 
22:    for  $q = 1, m$  do
23:       $f_1 = f(tS, xS(q), y(q), z(q, :), \theta(q, :, :))$ 
24:       $f_2 = f(tS, xS(m + q), y(m + q), z(m + q, :), \theta(m + q, :, :))$ 
25:       $f_3 = f(tS, xS(2m + q), y(2m + q), z(2m + q, :), \theta(2m + q, :, :))$ 
26:       $u(i) = \frac{1}{2}(f_1 + f_3)$ 
27:       $Du(i, :) = \frac{1}{2}(f_1 - f_3)\sigma^{-\top} G$ 
28:       $D^2u(i, :, :) = \frac{1}{2}(f_1 + f_3 - 2f_2)\sigma^{-\top} \frac{GG^{\top} - \mathbf{I}_d}{\tau} \sigma^{-1}$ 
29:    end for
30:  end if
31: return  $(u, Du, D^2u)$ 
32: end procedure

```

Part VIII

Some test cases description

Chapter 15

Some test cases description in C++

In this part, we describe the functional test cases of the library. The c++ version of these test cases can be found in `test/c++/functional` while their python equivalent (when existing) can be found in `test/python/functional`. We describe here in details the c++ test cases.

15.1 American option

The library gives some test cases for the Bermudean option problem ([8] for details on the Bermudean option problem). All Bermudean test cases use a basket option payoff. The reference for the converged methods can be found in [8].

15.1.1 testAmerican

The test case in this file permits to test during the Dynamic Programming resolution different regressors:

- either using some local functions basis with support of same size:
 - Either using a constant per mesh representation of the function (`LocalSameSizeConstRegression` regressor)
 - Either using a linear per mesh representation of the function (`LocalSameSizeLinearRegression` regressor)
- either using some function basis with adaptive support ([8])
 - Either using a constant per mesh representation of the function (`LocalConstRegression` regressor)
 - Either using a linear per mesh representation of the function (`LocalLinearRegression` regressor)
- Either using global polynomial regressor:
 - Either using Hermite polynomials,
 - Either using Canonical polynomials (monomes),

- Either using Tchebychev polynomials.
- Either using sparse regressor,
- Either using kernel regressors:
 - either using constant kernel regressor,
 - either using linear kernel regressor.

testAmericanLinearBasket1D

Test 1D problem with `LocalLinearRegression` regressor.

testAmericanConstBasket1D

Test 1D problem with `LocalConstRegression` regressor.

testAmericanSameSizeLinearBasket1D

Test 1D problem with `LocalSameSizeLinearRegression` regressor.

testAmericanSameSizeConstBasket1D

Test 1D problem with `LocalSameSizeConstRegression` regressor.

testAmericanGlobalBasket1D

Test 1D problem with global Hermite, Canonical and Tchebychev regressor.

testAmericanGridKernelConstBasket1D

Test 1D problem with classical kernel regression

testAmericanGridKernelLinearBasket1D

Test 1D problem with linear kernel regression

testAmericanLinearBasket2D

Test 2D problem with `LocalLinearRegression` regressor.

testAmericanConstBasket2D

Test 2D problem with `LocalConstRegression` regressor.

testAmericanSameSizeLinearBasket2D

Test 2D problem with `LocalSameSizeLinearRegression` regressor.

testAmericanSameSizeConstBasket2D

Test 2D problem with `LocalSameSizeConstRegression` regressor.

testAmericanGlobalBasket2D

Test 2D problem with global Hermite, Canonical and Tchebychev regressor.

testAmericanGridKernelConstBasket2D

Test 2D problem with classical kernel regression

testAmericanGridKernelLinearBasket1D

Test 2D problem with linear kernel regression

testAmericanBasket3D

Test 3D problem with `LocalLinearRegression` regressor.

testAmericanGlobalBasket3D

Test 3D problem with global Hermite, Canonical and Tchebychev regressor.

testAmericanGridKernelLinearBasket3D

Test 3D problem with linear kernel regression.

testAmericanBasket4D

Test 4D problem with `LocalLinearRegression` regressor.

15.1.2 testAmericanConvex

Three test cases with basket American options are implemented trying to keep convexity of the solution

testAmericanLinearConvexBasket1D

Linear adapted regression in 1D preserving the convexity at each time step.

testAmericanLinearConvexBasket2D

Linear adapted regression in 2D trying to preserve the convexity at each time step.

testAmericanLinearConvexBasket3D

Linear adapted regression in 3D trying to preserve the convexity at each time step.

15.1.3 testAmericanForSparse

This test case is here to test sparse grid regressors (see section 3.3). As described before we can use a linear, quadratic or cubic representation on each cell. The reference is the same as in the testAmerican subsection so linked to a Bermudean basket option.

testAmericanSparseBasket1D

Use sparse grids in 1D (so equivalent to full grid) for linear, quadratic or cubic representation.

testAmericanSparseBasket2D

Use sparse grids in 2D for linear, quadratic or cubic representation.

testAmericanSparseBasket3D

Use sparse grids in 3D for linear, quadratic or cubic representation.

testAmericanSparseBasket4D

Use sparse grids in 4D for linear, quadratic or cubic representation.

15.1.4 testAmericanOptionCorrel

Same case as before but with correlations between assets. Permits to test that rotation due to the PCA analysis works correctly.

testAmericCorrel

Check in 2D that

- Local Constant per mesh regression with and without rotation give the same result,
- Local Linear per mesh regression with and without rotation give the same result,
- Global regression with and without rotation give the same result.

15.1.5 testAmericanOptionTree

Simple test case in 1D, to test the tree method on American options. An Ornstein–Uhlenbeck process using a near to zero mean reverting parameter is used to be near the BS model. The OU model is approximated by a trinomial tree.

15.2 testSwingOption

The swing option problem is the generalization of the American option using a Black Scholes model for the underlying asset: out of a set of `nStep` dates (chosen equal to 20 here) we can choose N dates (N equal to three) to exercise the option. At each exercise date t , we get the pay-off $(S_t - K)^+$ where S_t is the value of the underlying asset at date t . See [26] for description of the swing problem and the backward resolution techniques. Due to classical results on the Snell envelop for European payoff, the analytical value of this problem is the sum of the N payoff at the N last dates where we can exercise (recall that the value of an American call is the value of the European one). The Markov state of the problem at a given date t is given by the value of the underlying (Markov) and the number of exercises already achieved at date t . This test case can be run in parallel with MPI. In all test cases, we use a `LocalLinearRegression` to evaluate the conditional expectations used during the Dynamic Programming approach.

testSwingOptionInOptimization

After having calculated the analytical solution for this problem,

- a first resolution is provided using the `resolutionSwing` function. For this simple problem, only a regressor is necessary to decide if we exercise at the current date or not.
- a second resolution is provided in the `resolutionSwingContinuation` function using the `Continuation` object (see chapter 6) permitting to store continuation values for a value of the underlying and for a stock level. This example is provide here to show how to use this object on a simple test case. This approach is here not optimal because getting the continuation value for an asset value and a stock level (only discrete here) means some unnecessary interpolation on the stock grids (here we choose a `RegularSpaceGrid` to describe the stock level and interpolate linearly between the stock grids). In the case of swing with varying quantities to exercise [26] or the gas storage problem, this object is very useful,
- A last resolution is provided using the general framework described and the `DynamicProgrammingByRegressionDist` function described in subsection 9.2.2. Once again the framework is necessary for this simple test case, but it shows that it can be used even for some very simple cases.

15.2.1 testSwingOption2D

Here we suppose that we have two similar swing options to price and we solve the problem ignoring that the stocks are independent: this means that we solve the problem on a two dimensional grid (for the stocks) instead of two times the same problem on a grid with one stock.

- we begin by an evaluation of the solution for a single swing with the `resolutionSwing` function giving a value A .

- then we solve the 2 dimensional (in stock) problem giving a value B with our framework with the `DynamicProgrammingByRegressionDist` function.

Then we check that $B = 2A$.

15.2.2 `testSwingOption3`

We do the same as previously but the management of three similar swing options is realized by solving as a three dimensional stock problem.

15.2.3 `testSwingOptimSimu / testSwingOptimSimuMpi`

This test case takes the problem described in section 15.2, solves it using the framework 9.2.2. Once the optimization using regression (`LocalLinearRegression` regressor) is achieved, a simulation part is used using the previously calculated Bellman values. We check the the values obtained in optimization and simulation are close. The two test case files (`testSwingOptimSimu/testSwingOptimSimuMpi`) use the two versions of MPI parallelization distributing or not the data on the processors.

15.2.4 `testSwingOptimSimuWithHedge`

The test case takes the problem described in section 15.2, solves it using regression (`LocalLinearRegression` regressor) while calculating the optimal hedge by the conditional tangent method as explained in [47]. After optimization, a simulation part implement the optimal control and the optimal hedge associated. We check:

- That values in optimization and simulation are close
- That the hedge simulated has an average nearly equal to zero,
- That the hedged swing simulations give a standard deviation reduced compared to the non hedged option value obtained by simulation without hedge.

This test case shows are that the multiple regimes introduced in the framework 9.2.2 can be used to calculate and store the optimal hedge. This is achieved by the creation of a dedicated optimizer `OptimizeSwingWithHedge`.

15.2.5 `testSwingOptimSimuND / testSwingOptimSimuNDMpi`

The test case takes the problem described in section 15.2, suppose that we have two similar options to valuate and that we ignore that the options are independent giving a problem to solve with two stocks managed jointly as in subsection 15.2.1. After optimizing the problem using regression (`LocalLinearRegression` regressor) we simulate the optimal control for this two dimensional problem and check that values in optimization and simulation are close. In `testSwingOptimSimuND` Mpi parallelization, if activated, only parallelize the calculation, while in `testSwingOptimSimuNDMpi` the data are also distributed on processors. In the latter, two options are tested,

- in `testSwingOptionOptim2DSimuDistOneFile` the Bellman values are distributed on the different processors but before being dumped they are recombine to give a single file for simulation.
- in `testSwingOptionOptim2DSimuDistMultipleFile` the Bellman values are distributed on the different processors but each processor dumps its own Bellman Values. During the simulation, each processor rereads its own Bellman values.

In the same problem in high dimension may be only feasible with the second approach.

15.3 Gas Storage

15.3.1 `testGasStorage` / `testGasStorageMpi`

The model used is a mean reverting model similar to the one described in [47]. We keep only one factor in equation (8) in [47]. The problem consists in maximizing the gain from a gas storage by the methodology described in [47]. All test cases are composed of three parts:

- an optimization is realized by regression (`LocalLinearRegression` regressor),
- a first simulation of the optimal control using the continuation values stored during the optimization part,
- a second simulation directly using the optimal controls stored during the optimization part.

We check that the three previously calculated values are close.

Using dynamic programming method, we need to interpolate into the stock grid to get the Bellman values at one stock point. Generally a simple linear interpolator is used (giving a monotone scheme). As explicated in [49], it is possible to use higher order schemes still being monotone. We test different interpolators. In all test case we use a `LocalLinearRegression` to evaluate the conditional expectations. The MPI version permits to test the distribution of the data when using parallelization.

`testSimpleStorage`

We use a classical regular grid with equally spaces points to discretize the stock of gas and a linear interpolator to interpolate in the stock.

`testSimpleStorageLegendreLinear`

We use a Legendre grid with linear interpolation, so the result should be the same as above.

`testSimpleStorageLegendreQuadratic`

We use a quadratic interpolator for the stock level.

testSimpleStorageLegendreCubic

We use a cubic interpolator for the stock level.

testSimpleStorageSparse

We use a sparse grid interpolator (equivalent to a full grid interpolator because it is a one dimensional problem). We only test the sparse grid with a linear interpolator.

15.3.2 testGasStorageCut / testGasStorageCutMpi

We take the previous gas storage problem and solve the transition problem without discretizing the command by using a LP solver (see section 9.2.3) The test cases are composed of an optimization part followed by a simulation part comparing the results obtained.

testSimpleStorageCut

Test case without mpi distribution of the stocks points. A simple Regular grid object is used and conditional cuts are calculated using Local Linear Regressions.

testSimpleStorageCutDist

Test using MPI distribution. In all cases a Local Linear Regressor is used. One file is used to store the conditional cuts.

- A first case uses a Regular grid,
- A second case used a RegularLegendre grid.

testSimpleStorageMultipleFileCutDist

Test using MPI distribution. A Local Linear Regressor is used for cuts and a Regular grid is used. Bender cuts are locally stored by each processor.

15.3.3 testGasStorageTree/testGasStorageTreeMpi

Optimize a storage for gas price modeled by an HJM model approximated by a tree. The grids are simple regular grids. In MPI, Bellman values are either stored in one file or multiple files.

15.3.4 testGasStorageTreeCut/testGasStorageTreeCutMpi

Gas storage is optimized and simulated using cuts and tree for uncertainties. Gas price modeled by an HJM model approximated by a trinomial tree The grids are simple regular grids. In MPI, Bellman values are either stored in one file or multiple files.

15.3.5 testGasStorageKernel

The model used is a mean reverting model similar to the one described in [47]. We keep only one factor in equation (8) in [47]. The problem consists in maximizing the gain from a gas storage by the methodology described in [47]. The specificity here is that a kernel regression method is used.

testSimpleStorageKernel)

Use the linear kernel regression method to solve the Gas Storage problem using the Epanechnikov kernel.

15.3.6 testGasStorageLaplacianLinearKernel

The model used is a mean reverting model similar to the one described in [47]. We keep only one factor in equation (8) in [47]. The problem consists in maximizing the gain from a gas storage by the methodology described in [47]. The specificity here is that a Laplacian kernel regression method is used.

testSimpleStorageLaplacianLinearKernel

Use the linear kernel regression method to solve the Gas Storage problem using the Laplacian kernel using the divide and conquer method.

15.3.7 testGasStorageLaplacianConstKernel

The model used is a mean reverting model similar to the one described in [47]. We keep only one factor in equation (8) in [47]. The problem consists in maximizing the gain from a gas storage by the methodology described in [47]. The specificity here is that a Laplacian kernel regression method is used.

testSimpleStorageLaplacianConstKernel

Use the constant kernel regression method to solve the Gas Storage problem using the Laplacian kernel using the divide and conquer method.

15.3.8 testGasStorageLaplacianGridKernel

The model used is a mean reverting model similar to the one described in [47]. We keep only one factor in equation (8) in [47]. The problem consists in maximizing the gain from a gas storage by the methodology described in [47]. The specificity here is that a Laplacian kernel regression method is used.

testSimpleStorageLaplacianGridKernel

Use the constant kernel regression method to solve the Gas Storage problem using the Laplacian kernel using the fast summation method.

15.3.9 testGasStorageVaryingCavity

The stochastic model is the same as in section 15.3.1. As previously, all test cases are composed of three parts:

- an optimization is realized by regression (`LocalLinearRegression` regressor),
- a first simulation of the optimal control using the continuation values stored during the optimization part,
- a second simulation directly using the optimal controls stored during the optimization part.

We check that the three previously calculated values are close on this test case where the grid describing the gas storage constraint is time varying. This permits to check the splitting of the grids during parallelization.

15.3.10 testGasStorageSwitchingCostMpi

The test case is similar to the one in section 15.3.1 (so using regression methods): we added some extra cost when switching from each regime to the other. The extra cost results in the fact that the Markov state is composed of the asset price, the stock level and the current regime we are (the latter is not present in other test case on gas storage). This test case shows that our framework permits to solve regime switching problems. As previously all test cases are composed of three parts:

- an optimization is realized by regression (`LocalLinearRegression` regressor),
- a first simulation of the optimal control using the continuation values stored during the optimization part,
- a second simulation directly using the optimal controls stored during the optimization part.

We check that the three previously calculated values are close.

15.3.11 testGasStorageSDDP

The modelization of the asset is similar to the other test case. We suppose that we have N similar independent storages. So solving the problem with N stocks should give N times the value of one stock.

- First the value of the storage is calculated by dynamic programming giving value A ,
- then the SDDP method (chapter 14) is used to value the problem giving the B value. The Benders cuts have to be done conditionally to the price level.

We check that B is close to NA .

testSimpleStorageSDDP1D

Test the case $N = 1$.

testSimpleStorageSDDP2D

Test the case $N = 2$.

testSimpleStorageSDDP10D

Test the case $N = 10$.

15.3.12 testGasStorageSDDPTree

testSimpleStorageDeterministicCutTree

The volatility is set to zero to get a deterministic problem.

- First by Dynamic Programming, the optimal control is calculated and tested in simulation.
- Then backward part of SDDP and forward part are tested using a grid of point for the storage

testSimpleStorageCutTree

In stochastic, the backward and forward resolution of the SDDP solver with tree are tested using points defined on a grid. Convergence is checked by comparing results coming from a DP solver with regressions.

testSimpleStorageSDDPTree1D1Step

In stochastic, the global SDDP solver iterating forward and backward is used to valuate the gas storage. Comparison with dynamic programming methods with regressions is achieved.

15.4 testLake / testLakeMpi

This is the case of a reservoir with inflows following an AR1 model. We can withdraw water from the reservoir (maximal withdrawal rate given) to produce energy by selling it at a given price (taken equal to 1 by unit volume). We want to maximize the expected earnings obtained by an optimal management of the lake. The problem permits to show how some stochastic inflows can be taken into account with dynamic programming with regression (`LocalLinearRegression` regressor used).

The test case is compose of three parts:

- an optimization is realized by regression (`LocalLinearRegression` regressor),
- a first simulation of the optimal control using the continuation values stored during the optimization part,

- a second simulation directly using the optimal controls stored during the optimization part.

We check that the three previously calculated values are close.

15.5 testOptionNIGL2

In this test case we suppose that the log of an asset value follows an NIG process [3]. We want to price a call option supposing that we use the mean variance criterion using the algorithm developed in chapter 11.

First an optimization is achieved then in a simulation part the optimal hedging strategy is tested.

15.6 testDemandSDDP

This test case is the most simple using the SDDP method. We suppose that we have a demand following an AR 1 model

$$D^{n+1} = k(D^n - D) + \sigma_d g + kD,$$

where D is the average demand, σ_d the standard deviation of the demand on one time step, k the mean reverting coefficient, $D^0 = D$, and g a unit centered Gaussian variable. We have to satisfy the demand by buying energy at a price P . We want to calculate the following expected value

$$\begin{aligned} V &= P\mathbb{E} \left[\sum_{i=0}^N D_i \right] \\ &= (N + 1)D_0P \end{aligned}$$

This can be done (artificially) using SDDP.

testDemandSDDP1DDeterministic

It takes $\sigma_d = 0$.

testDemandSDDP1D

It solves the stochastic problem.

15.7 Reservoir variations with SDDP

15.7.1 testReservoirWithInflowsSDDP

For this SDDP test case, we suppose that we dispose of N similar independent reservoirs with inflows given at each time time by independent centered Gaussian variables with standard

deviation σ_i . We suppose that we have to satisfy at M dates a demand given by independent centered Gaussian variables with standard deviation σ_d . In order to satisfy the demand, we can buy some water with quantity q_t at a deterministic price S_t or withdraw water from the reservoir at a pace lower than a withdrawal rate. Under the demand constraint, we want to minimize:

$$\mathbb{E} \left[\sum_{i=0}^M q_t S_t \right]$$

Each time we check that forward and backward methods converge to the same value. Because of the independence of uncertainties the dimension of the Markov state is equal to N .

testSimpleStorageWithInflowsSDDP1DDeterminist

$\sigma_i = 0$ for inflows and $\sigma_d = 0$. for demand. N taken equal to 1.

testSimpleStorageWithInflowsSDDP2DDeterminist

$\sigma_i = 0$ for inflows and $\sigma_d = 0$. for demand. N taken equal to 2.

testSimpleStorageWithInflowsSDDP5DDeterminist

$\sigma_i = 0$ for inflows and $\sigma_d = 0$. for demand. N taken equal to 5.

testSimpleStorageWithInflowsSDDP1D

$\sigma_i = 0.6$, $\sigma_d = 0.8$ for demand. $N = 1$

testSimpleStorageWithInflowsSDDP2D

$\sigma_i = 0.6$ for inflows, $\sigma_d = 0.8$ for demand. $N = 2$

testSimpleStorageWithInflowsSDDPD

$\sigma_i = 0.6$ for inflows, $\sigma_d = 0.8$ for demand. $N = 5$.

15.7.2 testStorageWithInflowsSDDP

For this SDDP test case, we suppose that we dispose of N similar independent reservoirs with inflows following an AR1 model:

$$X^{n+1} = k(X^n - X) + \sigma g + X,$$

with $X^0 = X$, σ the standard deviation associated, g some unit centered Gaussian variable. We suppose that we have to satisfy at M dates a demand following an AR1 process too. In order to satisfy the demand, we can buy some water with quantity q_t at a deterministic

price S_t or withdraw water from the reservoir at a pace lower than a withdrawal rate. Under the demand constraint, we want to minimize:

$$\mathbb{E} \left[\sum_{i=0}^M q_t S_t \right]$$

Each time we check that forward and backward methods converge to the same value. Because of the structure of the uncertainties the dimension of the Markov state is equal to $2N + 1$ (N storage, N inflows, and demand).

testSimpleStorageWithInflowsSDDP1DDeterministic

All parameters σ are set to 0. $N = 1$.

testSimpleStorageWithInflowsSDDP2DDeterministic

All parameters σ are set to 0. $N = 2$.

testSimpleStorageWithInflowsSDDP5DDeterministic

All parameters σ are set to 0. $N = 5$.

testSimpleStorageWithInflowsSDDP10DDeterministic

All parameters σ are set to 0. $N = 10$.

testSimpleStorageWithInflowsSDDP1D

$\sigma = 0.3$ for inflows, $\sigma = 0.4$ for demand. $N = 1$.

testSimpleStorageWithInflowsSDDP5D

$\sigma = 0.3$ for inflows, $\sigma = 0.4$ for demand. $N = 5$.

15.7.3 testStorageWithInflowsAndMarketSDDP

This is the same problem as 15.7.2, but the price S_t follow an AR 1 model. We use a SDDP approach to solve this problem. Because of the price dependencies, the SDDP cut have to be done conditionally to the price level.

testSimpleStorageWithInflowsAndMarketSDDP1DDeterministic

All volatilities set to 0. $N = 1$.

testSimpleStorageWithInflowsAndMarketSDDP2DDeterministic

All volatilities set to 0. $N = 2$.

testSimpleStorageWithInflowsAndMarketSDDP5DDeterministic

All volatilities set to 0. $N = 5$.

testSimpleStorageWithInflowsAndMarketSDDP10DDeterministic

All volatilities set to 0. $N = 10$.

testSimpleStorageWithInflowsAndMarketSDDP1D

$\sigma = 0.3$ for inflows, $\sigma = 0.4$ for demand, $\sigma = 0.6$ for the spot price. $N = 1$.

testSimpleStorageWithInflowsAndMarketSDDP5D

$\sigma = 0.3$ for inflows, $\sigma = 0.4$ for demand, $\sigma = 0.6$ for the spot price. $N = 5$.

15.8 Semi-Lagrangian

15.8.1 testSemiLagrangCase1/testSemiLagrangCase1

Test Semi-Lagrangian deterministic methods for HJB equation. This corresponds to the second test case without control in [49] (2 dimensional test case).

TestSemiLagrang1Lin

Test the Semi-Lagrangian method with the linear interpolator.

TestSemiLagrang1Quad

Test the Semi-Lagrangian method with the quadratic interpolator.

TestSemiLagrang1Cubic

Test the Semi-Lagrangian method with the cubic interpolator.

TestSemiLagrang1SparseQuad

Test the sparse grid interpolator with a quadratic interpolation.

TestSemiLagrang1SparseQuadAdapt

Test the sparse grid interpolator with a quadratic interpolation and some adaptation in the meshing.

15.8.2 testSemiLagrangCase2/testSemiLagrangCase2

Test Semi-Lagrangian deterministic methods for HJB equation. This corresponds to the first case without control in [49] (2 dimensional test case).

TestSemiLagrang2Lin

Test the Semi-Lagrangian method with the linear interpolator.

TestSemiLagrang2Quad

Test the Semi-Lagrangian method with the quadratic interpolator.

TestSemiLagrang2Cubic

Test the Semi-Lagrangian method with the cubic interpolator.

TestSemiLagrang2SparseQuad

Test the sparse grid interpolator with a quadratic interpolation.

15.8.3 testSemiLagrangCase2/testSemiLagrangCase2

Test Semi-Lagrangian deterministic methods for HJB equation. This corresponds to the stochastic target test case 5.3.4 in [49].

TestSemiLagrang3Lin

Test the Semi-Lagrangian method with the linear interpolator.

TestSemiLagrang3Quad

Test the Semi-Lagrangian method with the quadratic interpolator.

TestSemiLagrang3Cubic

Test the Semi-Lagrangian method with the cubic interpolator.

15.9 Non emissive test case

15.9.1 testDPNonEmissive

Solve the problem described in part V by dynamic programming and regression.

- first an optimization is realized,
- the an simulation part permit to test the controls obtained.

15.9.2 testSLNonEmissive

Solve the problem described in part V by the Semi-Lagrangian method.

- first an optimization is realized,
- the an simulation part permit to test the controls obtained.

15.10 Nesting for Non Linear PDE's

15.10.1 Some HJB test

The control problem where \mathcal{A} is the set of adapted integrable processes.

$$dX = 2\sqrt{\theta}\alpha dt + \sqrt{2}dW_t,$$
$$V = \inf_{\alpha \in \mathcal{A}} E\left[\int_0^T |\alpha_s|^2 dt + g(X_T)\right]$$

The HJB equation corresponding

$$(-\partial_t u - \mathcal{L}u)(t, x) = f(Du(t, x))$$

$$\mathcal{L}u(t, x) := \mu Du(t, x) + \frac{1}{2}\sigma\sigma^\top : D^2u(t, x), \quad (15.1)$$

$$f(z) = -\theta\|z\|_2^2 \quad (15.2)$$

such that a solution is

$$u(t, x) = -\frac{1}{\theta} \log(\mathbb{E}[e^{-\theta g(x + \sqrt{2}W_{T-t})}]). \quad (15.3)$$

We use the nesting method with $\mu = 0$, $\sigma = \sqrt{2}I_d$. These test case are located in the `test/c++/unit/branching` directory.

testHJCCConst

In this test case, we use a special resolution function supposing that the parameters of the PDE are constant: this permits us to precalculate the inverse of some matrices.

testHJCEXact

We test here the special case where the SDE can be exactly simulated with a scheme

$$X_{t+dt} = A(t, dt)X_t + B(t, dt) + C(t, dt)g$$

with g Gaussian centered unit vector.

testHJBEuler

We use a resolution function supposing that the SDE is discretized by an Euler scheme.

15.10.2 Some Toy example: testUD2UTou

We want to solve:

$$(-\partial_t u - \mathcal{L}u)(t, x) = f(u, Du(t, x), D^2u(t, x))$$

with

$$\begin{aligned}\mu &= \frac{\mu_0}{d} \mathbf{1}_d, \\ \sigma &= \frac{\sigma_0}{\sqrt{d}} \mathbf{I}_d, \\ f(t, x, y, z, \theta) &= \cos\left(\sum_{i=1}^d x_i\right) \left(\alpha + \frac{1}{2}\sigma_0^2\right) e^{\alpha(T-t)} + \sin\left(\sum_{i=1}^d x_i\right) \mu_0 e^{\alpha(T-t)} + a\sqrt{d} \cos\left(\sum_{i=1}^d x_i\right)^2 e^{2\alpha(T-t)} \\ &\quad + \frac{a}{\sqrt{d}} \left(-e^{2\alpha(T-t)}\right) \vee \left(e^{2\alpha(T-t)} \wedge \left(y \sum_{i=1}^d \theta_{i,i}\right)\right),\end{aligned}$$

with a solution

$$u(t, x) = e^{\alpha(T-t)} \cos\left(\sum_{i=1}^d x_i\right)$$

15.10.3 Some Portfolio optimization

We assume that we dispose of $d = 4$ securities all of them being defined by a Heston model:

$$\begin{aligned}dS_t^i &= \mu^i S_t^i dt + \sqrt{Y_t^i} S_t^i dW_t^{(2i-1)} \\ dY_t^i &= k^i (m^i - Y_t^i) dt + c^i \sqrt{Y_t^i} dW_t^{(2i)},\end{aligned}$$

where $W = (W^{(1)}, \dots, W^{(2d)})$ is a Brownian motion in \mathbb{R}^{2d} .

The non-risky asset S^0 has a 0 return so $dS_t^0 = 0$, $t \in [0, 1]$.

The investor chooses an adapted process $\{\kappa_t, t \in [0, T]\}$ with values in \mathbb{R}^n , where κ_t^i is the amount he decides to invest into asset i .

The portfolio dynamic is given by:

$$dX_t^\kappa = \kappa_t \cdot \frac{dS_t}{S_t} + (X_t^\kappa - \kappa_t \cdot \mathbf{1}) \frac{dS_t^0}{S_t^0} = \kappa_t \cdot \frac{dS_t}{S_t}.$$

Let \mathcal{A} be the collection of all adapted processes κ with values in \mathbb{R}^d and which are integrable with respect to S . Given an absolute risk aversion coefficient $\eta > 0$, the portfolio optimization problem is defined by:

$$v_0 := \sup_{\kappa \in \mathcal{A}} \mathbb{E} [-\exp(-\eta X_T^\kappa)]. \quad (15.4)$$

The problem doesn't depend on the s^i . As in [54], we can guess that the solution can be expressed as

$$v(t, x, y^1, \dots, y^d) = e^{-\eta x} u(y^1, \dots, y^d)$$

and using Feynman Kac it is easy to see that then a general solution can be written

$$v(t, x, y) = -e^{-\eta x} \mathbb{E} \left[\prod_{i=1}^d \exp \left(-\frac{1}{2} \int_t^T \frac{(\mu^i)^2}{\tilde{Y}_s^i} ds \right) \right] \quad (15.5)$$

with

$$\tilde{Y}_t^i = y^i \quad \text{and} \quad d\tilde{Y}_t^i = k^i (m^i - \tilde{Y}_t^i) dt + c^i \sqrt{\tilde{Y}_t^i} dW_t^i,$$

where y^i corresponds to the initial value of the volatility at date 0 for asset i .

We suppose in our example that all assets have the same parameters that are equal to the parameters taken in the two dimensional case. We also suppose that the initial conditions are the same as before.

Choosing $\bar{\sigma} > 0$, we can write the problem as equation (14.23) in dimension $d + 1$ where

$$\mu = (0, k^1(m^1 - y^1), \dots, k^d(m^d - y^d))^T, \quad \sigma = \begin{pmatrix} \bar{\sigma} & 0 & \cdots & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & c\sqrt{m^1} & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & \cdots & \ddots & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & \cdots & \cdots & \ddots & 0 \\ 0 & \cdots & \cdots & 0 & c\sqrt{m^d} \end{pmatrix}$$

always with the same terminal condition

$$g(x) = -e^{-\eta x}$$

and

$$f(x, y, z, \theta) = -\frac{1}{2}\bar{\sigma}^2\theta_{11} + \frac{1}{2}\sum_{i=1}^d (c^i)^2((y^i)^2 - m^i)\theta_{i+1, i+1} - \sum_{i=1}^d \frac{\mu^i z_1}{2y^i\theta_{11}}. \quad (15.6)$$

In order to have f Lipschitz, we truncate the control limiting the amount invested by taking

$$f_M(y, z, \theta) = -\frac{1}{2}\bar{\sigma}^2\theta_{11} + \frac{1}{2}\sum_{i=1}^d (c^i)^2((y^i)^2 - m^i)\theta_{2,2} + \sup_{\substack{\eta = (\eta^1, \dots, \eta^d) \\ 0 \leq \eta^i \leq M, i = 1, d}} \sum_{i=1}^d \left(\frac{1}{2}(\eta^i)^2 y^i \theta_{11} + (\eta^i) \mu^i z_1 \right).$$

testPortfolioExact

The Ornstein–Uhlenbeck process used as a driving process is simulated exactly.

testPortfolioEuler

The Ornstein–Uhlenbeck process used as a driving process is simulated using an Euler scheme.

Chapter 16

Some python test cases description

This part is devoted to some test cases only available in python. These examples uses the low level python interface.

16.1 Microgrid Management

16.1.1 testMicrogridBangBang

A microgrid is a collection of renewable energy sources, a diesel generator, and a battery for energy storage. The objective is to match the residual demand (difference between the demand of electricity and supply from renewables) while minimizing the total expected cost of running the microgrid. In particular a penalty is assessed for insufficient supply that leads to blackouts. The setup is similar to the one described in [[31], Section 7]. We take the diesel generator as the only control d_t ; output/input from/into the battery is then a function of the residual demand X_t (exogenous stochastic process), inventory level of the battery I_t , and d_t . The diesel generator operates under two regimes: OFF and ON. When it is OFF it does not supply power $d_t = 0$, however when it is ON the power output is a deterministic function of the state $d_t = d(X_t, I_t)$. As a result, the problem is a standard stochastic control model with switching-type bang-bang control.

We parameterize the algorithm to easily switch between multiple approximation schemes for the conditional expectation at the core of the Dynamic Programming equation. Particularly the following schemes are implemented:

- Regularly spaced grid for I_t and local polynomial basis in X_t for each level of the grid.
- Adaptive piecewise-defined polynomial basis in -2D for (X_t, I_t) .
- Global 2D polynomial basis on (X_t, I_t) .
- Bivariate Kernel regression on (X_t, I_t) .

16.1.2 testMicrogrid

We extend the previous example to include the recent work [1] where the action space for the control is $d_t \in \{0\} \cup [1, 10]$ kW, rather than being bang-bang. As a result, the optimal

control is chosen in two steps: first the controller picks the regime: ON or OFF; if ON, she then decides the optimal, continuous level of the diesel output. Due to the additional flexibility available to the controller compared to the previous example, we expect to observe lower cost compared to Section 16.1.1. The user can switch between this and the previous setting by changing the parameter `controlType` in the `parameters.py` file.

16.2 Dynamic Emulation Algorithm (DEA)

16.2.1 testMicrogridDEA

In this section we discuss the implementation of the Dynamic Emulation Algorithm developed in [31]. In that paper the authors reformulate the stochastic control problem as an “iterative sequence of machine learning tasks”. The philosophy of DEA is to combine together Regression Monte Carlo (RMC) with Design of Experiments. The algorithm has the following properties:

- The learning for the continuation value function at each step in the backward-iteration of the Dynamic Programming Equation is completely modularized. As a result, the user can seamlessly switch between different regression schemes (for example: adaptive local polynomial basis in -2D or -1D, multivariate kernel regression, etc.) across different time-steps;
- The empirical approximation uses distinct designs \mathcal{D}_t at each t ; thus the user can have design sites independently chosen for different t 's, which also eliminates the requirement to store the full history of the simulated paths of (X_t) . One-step paths can now replace the full history. In Figure 16.1 we present examples of two possible designs we use in the implementation. The image in the left panel represents a space-filling design using a Sobol sequence in -2D. This design is appropriate for a bivariate regression over (X_t, I_t) . On the right, we present another space-filling design in -1D with a regularly spaced grid in I_t (y-axis) and a -1D Sobol sequence in X_t (x-axis). In [31] the authors discuss several further designs which can be easily implemented.
- Batched designs, i.e. a partially nested scheme that generates multiple X_t -paths from the same unique design site, can be accommodated.
- Simulation budget (i.e. the size of \mathcal{D}_t) can vary through the time-steps and need not be fixed as in standard RMC.

Several different experiments have confirmed the significant effect of the design \mathcal{D}_t on the performance of the RMC algorithms. DEA allows us to test for this effect by allowing the user to easily specify \mathcal{D}_t . The structure of this library allows for easy implementation of such modular algorithms. As a proof of concept, we re-implement the microgrid example of Section 16.1.1 with the following specifications:

- The 10 time-steps (25% of the total of 40 time-steps) closest to maturity use adaptive local polynomial basis in -1D with gridded design similar to the Figure 16.1b. Moreover, for these t 's we used $|\mathcal{D}_t| = 22,000 = N_t$ unique design sites;

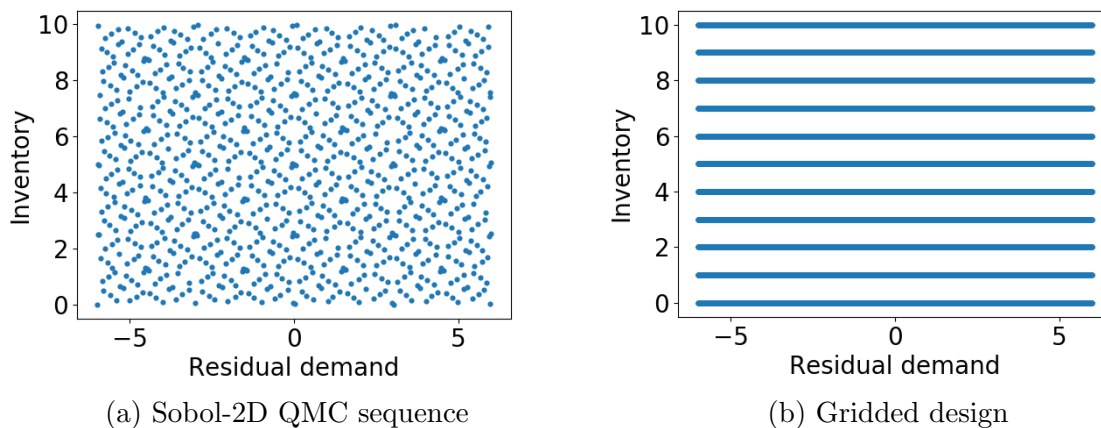


Figure 16.1: Illustration of two simulation designs. In both panels the X_t -coordinate is on the x-axis and I_t on the y-axis.

- The other 30 steps (first 75%) use design sites allocated according to Sobol-2D as in figure 16.1a with a global polynomial basis regression scheme. For these, we build a batched design of 1000 unique sites, each replicated 10 times for a total simulation budget of $N_t = 1000 \times 10 = 10^4$.

Bibliography

- [1] Clemence Alasseur, Alessandro Balata, Sahar Ben Aziza, Aditya Maheshwari, Peter Tankov, and Xavier Warin. Regression monte carlo for microgrid management. arXiv preprint arXiv:1802.10352, 2018.
- [2] Mejdî Azaïez, Monique Dauge, and Yvon Maday. Méthodes spectrales et des éléments spectraux. 1993.
- [3] Ole E Barndorff-Nielsen. Processes of normal inverse gaussian type. Finance and stochastics, 2(1):41–68, 1997.
- [4] Christian Bender and Robert Denk. A forward scheme for backward sdes. Stochastic processes and their applications, 117(12):1793–1812, 2007.
- [5] JF Benders. Partitioning procedures for solving mixed-variables programming problems. Computational Management Science, 2(1):3–19, 2005.
- [6] J. L. Bentley. Multidimensional divide-and-conquer. Communications of the ACM, 23(4):214–229, 1980.
- [7] Eric Beutner. Mean–variance hedging under transaction costs. Mathematical Methods of Operations Research, 65(3):539–557, 2007.
- [8] Bruno Bouchard, Xiaolu Tan, Xavier Warin, and Yiyi Zou. Numerical approximation of bsdes using local polynomial drivers and branching processes. Monte Carlo Methods and Applications, 23(4):241–263, 2017.
- [9] Bruno Bouchard and Xavier Warin. Monte-carlo valuation of american options: facts and new algorithms to improve existing methods. In Numerical methods in finance, pages 215–255. Springer, 2012.
- [10] Hans-Joachim Bungartz. Dünne Gitter und deren Anwendung bei der adaptiven Lösung der dreidimensionalen Poisson-Gleichung. Technische Universität München, 1992.
- [11] Hans-Joachim Bungartz. Concepts for higher order finite elements on sparse grids. In Houston Journal of Mathematics: Proceedings of the 3rd Int. Conf. on Spectral and High Order Methods, Houston, pages 159–170, 1996.
- [12] Hans-Joachim Bungartz. A multigrid algorithm for higher order finite elements on sparse grids. Electronic Transactions on Numerical Analysis, 6:63–77, 1997.

- [13] Hans-Joachim Bungartz and Michael Griebel. Sparse grids. Acta numerica, 13:147–269, 2004.
- [14] Fabio Camilli and Maurizio Falcone. An approximation scheme for the optimal control of diffusion processes. ESAIM: Mathematical Modelling and Numerical Analysis, 29(1):97–122, 1995.
- [15] Robert P Feinerman and Donald J Newman. Polynomial approximation. 1974.
- [16] Wendell H Fleming and Halil Mete Soner. Controlled Markov processes and viscosity solutions, volume 25. Springer Science & Business Media, 2006.
- [17] Thomas Gerstner and Michael Griebel. Dimension–adaptive tensor–product quadrature. Computing, 71(1):65–87, 2003.
- [18] Anders Gjelsvik, Michael M Belsnes, and Arne Haugstad. An algorithm for stochastic medium-term hydrothermal scheduling under spot price uncertainty. In Proceedings of 13th Power Systems Computation Conference, 1999.
- [19] Emmanuel Gobet, Jean-Philippe Lemor, Xavier Warin, et al. A regression-based monte carlo method to solve backward stochastic differential equations. The Annals of Applied Probability, 15(3):2172–2202, 2005.
- [20] Michael Griebel. Adaptive sparse grid multilevel methods for elliptic pdes based on finite differences. Computing, 61(2):151–179, 1998.
- [21] Michael Griebel. Sparse grids and related approximation schemes for higher dimensional problems. Citeseer, 2005.
- [22] Holger Heitsch and Werner Römisch. Scenario reduction algorithms in stochastic programming. Computational optimization and applications, 24(2-3):187–206, 2003.
- [23] Pierre Henry-Labordere, Nadia Oudjane, Xiaolu Tan, Nizar Touzi, and Xavier Warin. Branching diffusion representation of semilinear pdes and monte carlo approximation. arXiv preprint arXiv:1603.01727, 2016.
- [24] John C Hull. Options futures and other derivatives. Pearson Education India, 2003.
- [25] Hitoshi Ishii and Pierre-Luis Lions. Viscosity solutions of fully nonlinear second-order elliptic partial differential equations. Journal of Differential equations, 83(1):26–78, 1990.
- [26] Patrick Jaillet, Ehud I Ronn, and Stathis Tompaidis. Valuation of commodity-based swing options. Management science, 50(7):909–921, 2004.
- [27] John D Jakeman and Stephen G Roberts. Local and dimension adaptive sparse grid interpolation and quadrature. arXiv preprint arXiv:1110.0010, 2011.
- [28] Ali Koc and Soumyadip Ghosh. Optimal scenario tree reductions for the stochastic unit commitment problem. In Proceedings of the Winter Simulation Conference, page 10. Winter Simulation Conference, 2012.

- [29] Nicolas Langrené and Xavier Warin. Fast and stable multivariate kernel density estimation by fast sum updating. arXiv preprint arXiv:1712.00993, 2017.
- [30] Nicolas Langrené and Xavier Warin. Fast multivariate empirical cumulative distribution function with connection to kernel density estimation. arXiv preprint arXiv:2005.03246, 2020.
- [31] Michael Ludkovski and Aditya Maheshwari. Simulation methods for stochastic storage problems: A statistical learning perspective. arXiv preprint arXiv:1803.11309, 2018.
- [32] Xiang Ma and Nicholas Zabaras. An adaptive hierarchical sparse grid collocation algorithm for the solution of stochastic differential equations. Journal of Computational Physics, 228(8):3084–3113, 2009.
- [33] Alessandro Magnani and Stephen P Boyd. Convex piecewise-linear fitting. Optimization and Engineering, 10(1):1–17, 2009.
- [34] Constantinos Makassikis, Stéphane Vialle, and Xavier Warin. Large scale distribution of stochastic control algorithms for gas storage valuation. In Parallel and Distributed Processing, 2008. IPDPS 2008. IEEE International Symposium on, pages 1–8. IEEE, 2008.
- [35] M Motoczyński. Multidimensional variance-optimal hedging in discrete-time model - a general approach. Mathematical Finance, 10(2):243–257, 2000.
- [36] Rémi Munos and Hasnaa Zidani. Consistency of a simple multidimensional scheme for hamilton–jacobi–bellman equations. Comptes Rendus Mathématique, 340(7):499–502, 2005.
- [37] Mario Pereira, Nora Campodonico, and Rafael Kelman. Application of stochastic dual dp and extensions to hydrothermal scheduling. Online Rep., <http://www.psr-inc.com.br/reports.asp>, PSRI Technical Rep, 12:99, 1999.
- [38] Mario VF Pereira and Leontina MVG Pinto. Multi-stage stochastic optimization applied to energy planning. Mathematical programming, 52(1-3):359–375, 1991.
- [39] Laurent Pfeiffer, Romain Apparigliato, and Sophie Auchapt. Two methods of pruning Benders’ cuts and their application to the management of a gas portfolio. PhD thesis, INRIA, 2012.
- [40] Dirk Michael Pflüger. Spatially adaptive sparse grids for high-dimensional problems. PhD thesis, Technische Universität München, 2010.
- [41] Alfio Maria Quarteroni, Riccardo Sacco, and Fausto Saleri. Méthodes numériques pour le calcul scientifique: programmes en MATLAB. Springer Science & Business Media, 2000.
- [42] Martin Schweizer. Variance-optimal hedging in discrete time. Mathematics of Operations Research, 20(1):1–32, 1995.

- [43] David W Scott. Multivariate density estimation: theory, practice, and visualization. John Wiley & Sons, 2015.
- [44] Paolo M Soardi. Serie di Fourier in piu variabili, volume 26. Pitagora, 1984.
- [45] Stéphane Vialle, Xavier Warin, Constantinos Makassikis, and Patrick Mercier. Stochastic control optimization & simulation applied to energy management: From 1-d to nd problem distributions, on clusters, supercomputers and grids. In Grid@ Mons conference, 2008.
- [46] MP Wand. Fast computation of multivariate kernel estimators. Journal of Computational and Graphical Statistics, 3(4):433–445, 1994.
- [47] Xavier Warin. Gas storage hedging. In Numerical Methods in Finance, pages 421–445. Springer, 2012.
- [48] Xavier Warin. Adaptive sparse grids for time dependent hamilton-jacobi-bellman equations in stochastic control. arXiv preprint arXiv:1408.4267, 2014.
- [49] Xavier Warin. Some non-monotone schemes for time dependent hamilton–jacobi–bellman equations in stochastic control. Journal of Scientific Computing, 66(3):1122–1147, 2016.
- [50] Xavier Warin. Variance optimal hedging with application to electricity markets. arXiv preprint arXiv:1711.03733, 2017.
- [51] Xavier Warin. Variations on branching methods for non linear pdes. arXiv preprint arXiv:1701.07660, 2017.
- [52] Xavier Warin. Monte carlo for high-dimensional degenerated semi linear and full non linear pdes. arXiv preprint arXiv:1805.05078, 2018.
- [53] Xavier Warin. Nesting monte carlo for high-dimensional non linear pdes. arXiv preprint arXiv:1804.08432, 2018.
- [54] Thaleia Zariphopoulou. A solution approach to valuation with unhedgeable risks. Finance and stochastics, 5(1):61–82, 2001.